

## POS System and Inventory Management



User guide

Last updated: March 2024

# Content

## 1. Getting Started

1.1 How to Get Started with Loyverse POS	9
1.2 Setting Up Your Shop in Loyverse Back Office	10
1.2.1 Store Information	11
1.3 How to Add Items and Categories in Loyverse POS	13
1.3.1 Adding items	13
1.3.2 Adding Categories	14
1.4 How to Add Items in the Loyverse Back Office	15
1.5 How to Configure Taxes in Loyverse	19
1.5.1 How to Configure Taxes in the Back Office	19
1.5.2 How to Set Up Taxes in POS	21
1.6 How to Create and Configure Discounts	24
1.6.1 Discount set up in the Back Office	24
1.6.2 Discount set up in the mobile application	25
1.7 How to Make Sales	26
2. Sales	
2.1. How to Amongo Cole Concernin Low wards DOC	01
2.1 How to Arrange Sale Screen in Loyverse POS	31
2.1.1 Organizing of Items	31
2.1.2 Organizing Pages	33
2.2 How to Change Home Sale Screen Layout	35
2.2.1 Sale screen item layout for tablets	35

36

37

40

45 47

47

48

49

51

51

51

52

53

54

54

55

- 2.2.1 Sale screen item layout for tablets 2.2.2 Sale screen item layout for smartphones
- 2.3 How to Apply Discounts During a Sale
- 2.4 How to Sell Items Using Barcode Scanners
- 2.5 How to Scan Barcodes with Embedded Weight

2.6 Paraadaa Saanning by Puilt in Daviaa Comer	
2.6 Barcodes Scanning by Built-in Device Camer	d
2.6.1 Selling Items	
2.6.2 Adding Barcodes to Items	

- 2.7 How to Sell Items by Weight
- 2.8 How to sell liquids
  - 2.8.1 Through selling by weight option
  - 2.8.2 Selling like composite item
- 2.9 How to Split Payment with Loyverse POS
- 2.10 Open Tickets
  - 2.10.1 Settings
  - 2.10.2 Open ticket creation
  - 2.10.3 Searching and editing
  - 2.10.4 Assigning and Removal
- 2.11 How to Merge Open Tickets with Loyverse POS
  - 2.11.1 Merging tickets in the open tickets list. 2.11.2 Merging tickets in the sale screen

2.13 Open Tickets Synchronization592.14 How to Use Predefined Open Tickets to Name Tables602.14.1 Configuration602.14.2 Creating Open Tickets612.14.3 Editing Open Tickets622.15 How to Print Bill642.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.12 How to Split an Open Ticket with Loyverse POS	57
2.14 How to Use Predefined Open Tickets to Name Tables602.14.1 Configuration602.14.2 Creating Open Tickets612.14.3 Editing Open Tickets622.15 How to Print Bill642.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78		
2.14.2 Creating Open Tickets612.14.3 Editing Open Tickets622.15 How to Print Bill642.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.14 How to Use Predefined Open Tickets to Name Tables	
2.14.3 Editing Open Tickets622.15 How to Print Bill642.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.14.1 Configuration	60
2.15 How to Print Bill642.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.14.2 Creating Open Tickets	61
2.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers652.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.14.3 Editing Open Tickets	62
2.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier652.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.15 How to Print Bill	64
2.16.2 Sales and reports662.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.16 How to Set Up and Apply the Modifiers	65
2.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS672.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier	65
2.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS692.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.16.2 Sales and reports	66
2.19 Dining Options742.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS	67
2.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options742.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.18 Shift Management in Loyverse POS	69
2.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale752.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.19 Dining Options	74
2.20 Negative Stock Alerts772.21 Receipts List in the POS78	2.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options	74
2.21 Receipts List in the POS 78	2.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale	75
	2.20 Negative Stock Alerts	77
2.22 Offline Use of Lovverse POS 80	2.21 Receipts List in the POS	78
	2.22 Offline Use of Loyverse POS	80

### 3. Items

3.1 Working with the Items List in the POS	83
3.2 How to Add Barcodes to Items	85
3.2.1 How to add item barcode in the Back Office	85
3.2.2 How to add barcodes using Loyverse POS app	86
3.3 How to Use Variants of Items	86
3.3.1 Creation and set-up of Variants	86
3.3.2 Variants at Sale and Report	89
3.3.3 Export-Import of Variants	90
3.4 How to Create a Composite Item	90
3.5 Notification About Low Stock	93
3.6 Exporting and Importing Items	95
3.6.1 Features of different types of items	96
3.6.2 Import of items	97
3.6.3 The meaning of columns	99

## 4. Advanced Inventory

4.1 What is Advanced Inventory Management	101
4.2 How to Work with Purchase Orders and Suppliers	103
4.2.1 Suppliers	103
4.2.2 Making purchase orders	105
4.2.3 Actions with the purchase order	108
4.3 Autofill of the Items in the Purchase Order	110
4.4 How to Work with Additional Costs in the Purchase Orders	111
4.5 How to Work with Transfer Orders	114
4.6 How to Work with Stock Adjustments	117
4.7 How to Work with Inventory Count	120
4.8 How to Work with Production	124
4.9 How to Print Labels for Items	129
4.10 What is Inventory History	132
4.11 What is Inventory Valuation Report	134
4.12 How to Order Items by Boxes, and then Sell them by the Piece	135

## 5. Employees

E 1 Housto Add on Employee in Louiseree	100
5.1 How to Add an Employee in Loyverse	139
5.2 How to Manage Access Rights of Employees	142
5.2.1 POS access rights	143
5.2.2 Back Office access rights	144
5.3 How to Give Employees Access to Login into Loyverse POS through E-mail	146
5.3.1 Make access rights for group	146
5.3.2 Assign employee to the group	147
5.3.3 Creating password by employee	148
5.3.4 Login into Loyverse POS	149
5.4 How to Switch User Account to Different Employee in the Opened Loyverse POS	150
5.5 Using Time Clock to Track Employees Hours	151
5.5.1 Configuration	151
5.5.2 Using at POS	151
5.5.3 Reports at the Back Office	153
5.6 How to Manage PIN Code Access	155
5.6.1 How to find and change the PIN	155
5.6.2 How to remove the PIN	157

### 6. Customers

6.1 How to Set Up a Customer Loyalty Program	159
6.2 How to Sign Up a Customer in Loyverse POS	160
6.3 How to Redeem Customer Points for a Discount	162
6.4 How to Send E-mail with Receipt to Client in Loyverse POS	164
6.5 Information about the Customer and Comments in the Receipt	165
6.6 Customer Identification by Phone Number	168
6.7 How to Work with Customer Base in the Back office	170
6.8 Purchase History of a Registered Customer in the POS	172
6.9 Importing and Exporting Customers	174
6.10 How to Add the Customer to the Receipt by Scanning a Barcode	176
6.11 How to See the Purchase History of Registered Customers at the Back Office	180
6.12 How to Delete Customers from the Base	183
6.13 Customer Display System Configuration Guide	184
6.13.1 Install Loyverse CDS app	184
6.13.2 Activate option for using CDS	185
6.13.3 Pair customer display with Loyverse POS	185
6.14 How Loyverse CDS Customer Display Works	188

## 7. Reports

7.1 Sales Summary Report in the Back Office	191
7.2 Sales by Item Report in the Back Office	194
7.3 Sales Report by Category	197
7.4 Receipts Section in the Reports in the Back Office	199
7.5 How to Cancel Receipts in Loyverse Back Office	201
7.6 Shift Report with Sales Summary at the POS	204
7.7 How to Work with Shift History in the POS	206
7.8 How Taxes are Calculated	207
7.8.1 Calculation of 'added to the price' tax	207
7.8.2 Calculation of 'included in the price' tax	208
7.8.3 Application of several taxes at the same time	209

7.9 How to Export Data from Reports and Open in Excel	211
7.10 How to Export Data from Reports and Open in LibreOffice Calc or OpenOffice Calc	213
7.11 How to Open CSV File in Google Sheets	215
7.12 Using Loyverse Dashboard	218
7.12.1 Stock Alerts	221
7.13 How to Connect Apps from the Marketplace to Loyverse	224
7.14 How to Create Tokens for API	227
7.15 How to See the Purchase History of Registered Customers at the Back Office	229

## 8. Settings

8.1 Configuring Payment Types in Loyverse POS	233
8.2 How to Create, Activate, Deactivate and Delete POS	236
8.2.1 How to Create new POS	236
8.2.2 How to Activate POS	237
8.2.3 How to Deactivate POS	238
8.2.4 How to delete POS	239
8.3 How to Create and Manage Multiple Stores under One Account	240
8.3.1 Adding a new store	240
8.3.2 Items management	241
8.3.3 Employee management	241
8.3.4 Sales reports	242
8.3.5 Customers	242
8.4 How to Add Logo to the Receipts	243
8.5 How to Sign out from Loyverse POS	245
8.6 How to Exit from Back Office	247
8.7 How to Set the Currency	248
8.8 How to Work with Cash Rounding	250
8.9 How to Change/Recover Your Password for the Back Office	254
8.10 How to Apply Taxes Depending on the Dining Options	258
8.11 How to Change Language	261
8.11.1 Changing Language in Loyverse POS app	261
8.11.2 Setting Language in the Back office	262
8.11.3 Receipt Language	262
8.12 How to Use Add-on Services of Loyverse POS	263
8.12.1 Trial period	263
8.12.2 Subscription to Employee management	265
8.12.3 Subscription for Advanced inventory	266
8.12.4 Subscription for Integrations	267
8.12.5 Adding payment method	268
8.12.6 Payments for subscriptions	269
8.12.7 Unsubscribing	270
8.13 How to Manage Account Settings in the Back Office	272
8.14 How to Increase the Font Size on Android Devices	273
8.15 How to Delete Loyverse Account	275
8.15.1 Deleting account at Loyverse POS app	275
8.15.2 Deleting account at the Back office	276
8.16 How to Export Data from Loyverse Account	278
8.16.1 Exporting Items List	278
8.16.2 Exporting Customers List	278
8.16.3 Exporting Receipts List	279
8.16.4 Exporting Reports	280
8.16.5 Exporting Reports and Documents of the Advanced Inventory	281

## 9. Hardware

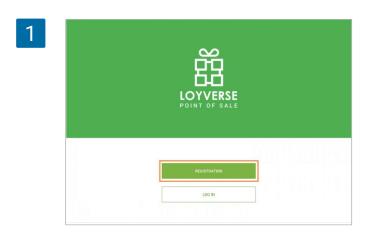
9.1.1 Supported Printers for Android	004
	284
9.1.2 Supported Printers for iOS	285
9.2 How to Set Up an Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS	285
9.3 How to Set Up Bluetooth Receipt Printer with Loyverse POS	289
9.4 How to Set Up a USB Printer with an iOS Device	292
9.5 How to Set Up a USB Printer with an Android Device	296
9.6 How to Set Up Other Printers in Loyverse POS on Android	299
9.7 How to Set Up Other Printers in Loyverse POS on iOS	303
9.8 Using Kitchen Printers with Loyverse POS	306
9.8.1 Configuring Loyverse Back Office	306
9.8.2 Setting Up the Loyverse POS App	308
9.9 Troubleshooting When Setting Up an Ethernet Printer	311
Testing hardware issues	311
Network related issues	311
9.10 Connecting Built-in Printers on Sunmi Devices	314
9.11 How to Set Up Kitchen Printer for Each Kitchen Station	317
9.12 How to Set Up Multiple Kitchen Stations to Share One Printer	319
9.13 How to Connect Kitchen Printer Bell (Buzzer)	321
9.14 Supported Barcode Scanners	323
9.15 How to Connect a USB Barcode Scanner to an Android Device	323
9.16 How to Setup Motorola CS3070 (Bluetooth) Barcode Scanner	324
9.17 Socket 7Qi/7Ci (Bluetooth) Barcode Scanner Setup	325
9.17.1 Connecting scanner to Android Mobile Device	325
9.17.2 Connecting scanner to Apple iOS device	326
9.18 Supported Cash Drawers	327
9.19 How to Connect a Cash Drawer	327
9.19.1 How to open cash drawer without making a sale	329
9.20 How to Use Loyverse KDS Kitchen Display	330
9.21 Kitchen Display System Configuration Guide	332
9.21.1 Install Loyverse KDS app	332
9.21.2 Specify a device name	332
9.21.3 Configure Loyverse KDS app	333
9.21.4 Create a printer group	334
9.21.5 Pair kitchen display with Loyverse POS	335
9.22 Troubleshooting When Working with KDS	338
9.22.1 Separate Router	338
9.22.2 Assign a static IP address to the kitchen display tablet	338
10. Payment	
10.1 How to Work with Credit Card Payments	341
10.2 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and SumUp	343
10.2.1 Connecting Card Reader	343
10.2.1.1 Creating a payment type	343
10.2.1.2 Connecting with iOS devices	345
10.2.1.3 Connecting with Android devices	347
10.2.2 Processing Payments	349
10.2.2.1 Payment	349
10.2.2.2 Refund	351
10.2.2.3 Reports	352

10.3 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and PayPal Zettle	352
10.3.1 Connecting the Card Reader	353
10.3.2 Processing Payments	358
10.3.2.1 Payment	358
10.3.2.2 Refund	360
10.3.2.3 Reports	362
10.4 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Yoco	363
10.4.1 Connecting the Card Reader	363
10.4.2 Processing Payments	366
10.4.3 Reports	369
10.5 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Tyro	370
10.5.1 Connecting Tyro Terminal	370
10.5.2 Processing Payments	373
10.6 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Smartpay	377
10.6.1 Connecting the terminal	377
10.6.2 Processing Payments	379
10.7 How to Add Tips to Payments Made through Card Readers	384
10.7.1 Setting up tips in the Back Office	384
10.7.2 Selecting Tips during Payments	386
10.7.3 Tips on the customer display	387
10.7.4 Tips at Reports	389

# 1. Getting Started



## 1.1 How to Get Started with Loyverse POS



Download and install Loyverse POS from the <u>Play Market</u> or <u>App Store</u>. To use Loyverse POS, you'll need to have at least Android 5.0+ or iOS 12.0+.

**Note:** The same Loyverse POS app can work in different types of business: <u>retail</u>, <u>grocery stores</u>, <u>boutiques</u>, <u>restaurants</u>, <u>cafes</u>, <u>bars</u>, and many others. There are various settings at the Back office that allow adjusting the Loyverse POS to your needs.

When you run the application, you will see the welcoming screen. If you have not yet <u>registered on the website</u>, you can register now by tapping on the 'Registration' button.

Create your account by filling in the simple registration form.

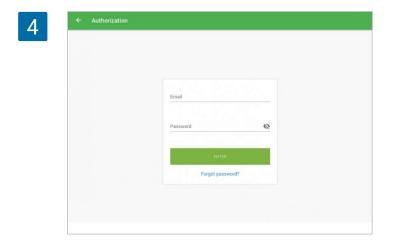


**Go to your email inbox** – you should have received a letter from Loyverse. Please open it and confirm your email address by following the link included in the letter.

Tap 'Login' button to enter the app.

3

2



Log in procedure:

- Enter the email address you used during registration.
- Enter your password.
- Press the 'Enter' button. You have successfully entered Loyverse POS.

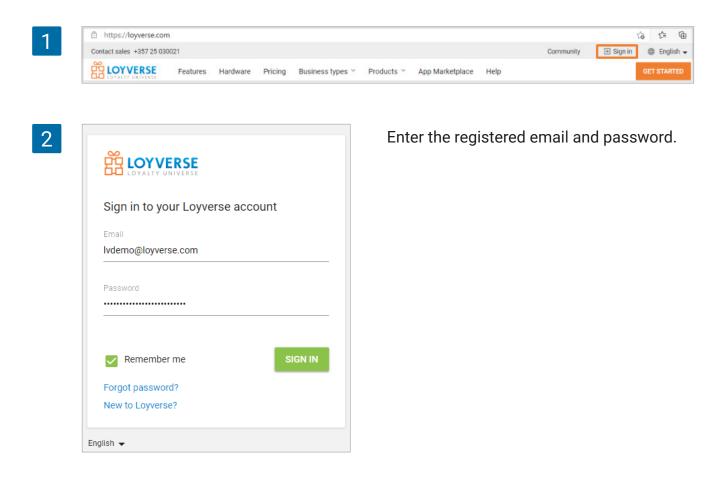
## 1.2 Setting Up Your Shop in Loyverse Back Office

The Back Office is your web-based office, working in synchronization with the Loyverse POS App

Once you have installed the Loyverse POS app, the next step is to go to your shop settings in the <u>Back Office</u>.

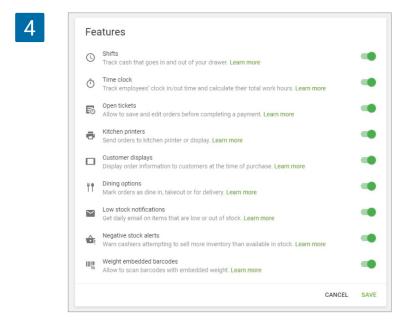
Google Chrome is the recommended browser for using Back Office.

You can login to the Back Office from the Loyverse home page by clicking 'SIGN IN'.



0	Settings	Features	
LL 0	System settings		
÷	Features	Shifts Track cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more	
	Billing & subscriptions	Time clock Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn more	
*	Payment types	Open tickets     Allow to save and edit orders before completing a payment. Learn more	
-	Loyalty	<ul> <li>Kitchen printers</li> </ul>	
	Taxes	Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more Customer displays	
*	Receipt	Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more	
0	Open tickets	Dining options. Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more	•
0	Kitchen printers	Get daily email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more	
	Dining options	Regative stock alerts Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn more	
0	Stores Store & POS settings	Weight embedded barcodes Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more	•

Click on the Settings icon on the left menu to go to the System settings.

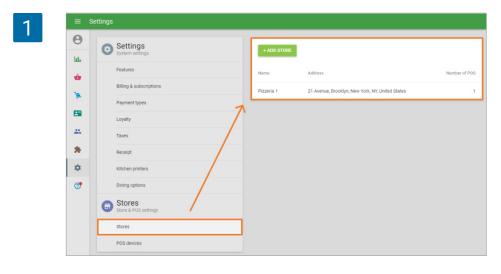


In the 'Features' section, you can switch on parameters such as 'Shifts', 'Time clock', 'Open tickets', 'Kitchen printers', 'Customer displays', 'Dining options', 'Low stock notifications, 'Negative stock alerts', 'Weight embedded barcodes'.

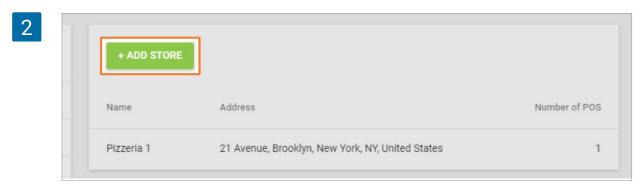
Once the profile settings are complete, press 'Save'.

#### 1.2.1 Store Information

When you click 'Stores' in the Settings, you can enter your shop's address, description, and phone number.



If you have more than one store, you can add them too.



If you have more than one register, you can add a register in 'POS devices' under the 'Stores' section as well. Remember to click 'Save'.

3	■ POS devices					
	Θ	0	Settings System settings	+ ADD POS		
	ht.	ľ	System settings Features	Name Name	Status	
	ŵ		Billing & subscriptions	- POS 1	Activated	
	A		Payment types			
			Loyalty	<b>N</b>		
	-		Taxes			
	*		Receipt			
	۰		Kitchen printers			
	7		Dining options			
		0	Stores Store & POS settings			
			Stores			
			POS devices			
4						
			+ ADD POS			
		Ľ	TADD FOO			
		ſ	Name		Status	
			Hame			
		(	POS-1		Activated	

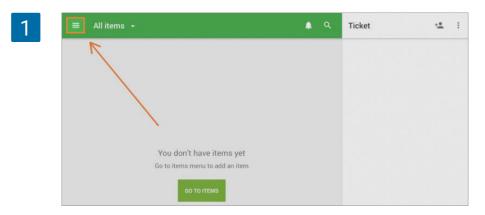
After you finish setting up your shop in the Back Office, you can go to the Loyverse POS App to add products, make sales, and continue your business momentum!

### 1.3 How to Add Items and Categories in Loyverse POS

#### 1.3.1 Adding items

It's quick and simple to add items and categories in the Loyverse POS right from your smartphone or tablet.

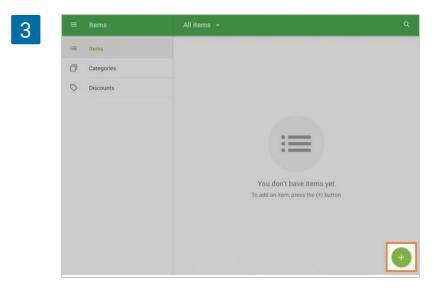
Once you are logged in, press the  $\equiv$  (menu) button at the top left corner.



#### Next, select the 'Items' menu.

2	Owner POS 1 TES			٠	۹	Ticket	÷ <b>.</b>	:
	ŵ	Sales						
		Receipts						
	:=	Items						
	\$	Settings						
	<b>ц</b> #	Back office Apps Help	t have items yet menu to add an item о то глемs					

Then tap the  $\oplus$  (add) button at the bottom right corner.



_	Name		
	Cheesecake		
	Category		
	No category		·
	Sold by 💿 Each 🔿 Weight		
	Price		
	12.00	Cost	
	Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale		
	SKU		
	10000	Barcode	

In the 'Create item' page, you can add details such as the 'Item name', 'Price', 'Category', and other details such as the SKU and Barcode, if necessary.

You can pick a color and shape for the item icon or take/upload its picture to display it on the sales screen.

5	Representation on POS  Color O Image
	$\mathbf{\overline{\checkmark}}$

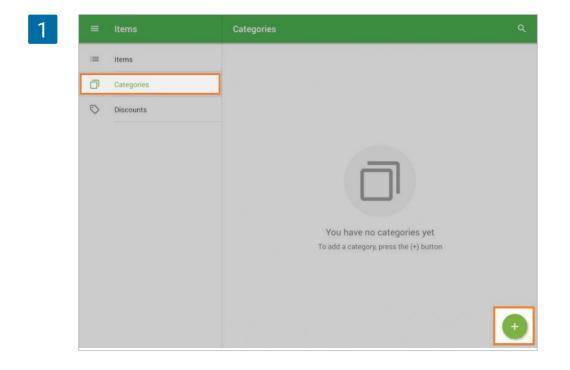
Don't forget to save changes.

#### 1.3.2 Adding Categories

When you sell different types of items, it is easier to categorize your items systematically.

You can add categories while adding the item, or you can go to the Categories page and follow these instructions:

In the 'Items' menu, tap the 'Categories' button. Tap the  $\oplus$  (add) button at the bottom right corner.



Specify the category name, select a category color, and press the save button.

El nombre de la categoría		
Desayuno		
Color de categoría		
	Color de categoría	Desayuno Color de categoría

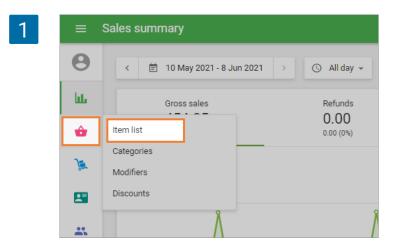
That's it - now you are ready to start selling!

You can excess extended item settings at your Back Office on the web.

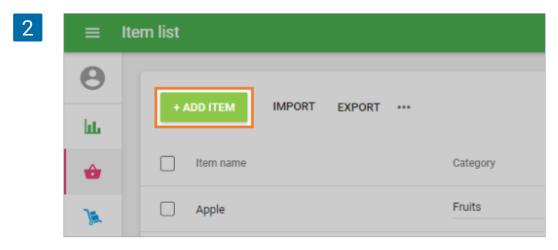
### 1.4 How to Add Items in the Loyverse Back Office

It's quick and simple to add items on the Loyverse POS on your mobile device. However, if you do this in the Back Office, you can have access to more features for the item.

Go to the 'Item list' menu.



In the Item list, click the 'Add item' button.



In the 'Create item' form, fill in the item 'Name' and choose the 'Category'.

3	≡	Create item
	Θ	
	հե	Name Cheesecake Category Sweets -
	ŵ	
	)	Description
	2	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume

You can also fill in the Description field that is used primarily for e-commerce and online ordering services connected with Loyverse. This field can also be extracted through Loyverse API.

**Note:** There is no such field in Loyverse POS. It is impossible to search for an item in the Loyverse POS app by text from the Description field.

If you deselect the checkbox 'The item is available for sale' it will not be seen in the items list in Loyverse POS on a mobile device. This usually needed for composite item's components. Whether an item is sold by piece (bottle, package, etc.) or by weight (pound, kilogram, etc.), it is determined by the 'Sold by' option.

uneesecake	Sweets	_
The item is available for sale		
	The item is available for sale	The item is available for sale

Fill in the 'Price' field with the selling price of your product. When you fill in the cost, later you can get useful reports about your profit, margin etc.

5		Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
	-	Price 7.00	Cost 4.00
	*	Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale SKU 10011	Barcode

The field SKU (Stock Keeping Unit) is required. It is filled in automatically. However, you can indicate your own SKU. The main requirement is that the number must not be repeated in other items and should not exceed 40 characters. You can use numbers and letters as well. <u>Fill in Barcode</u>, if necessary.

Price 7.00	Cost 4.00
Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	
SKU 10011	Barcode

In the inventory section, you can choose the options: 'Composite item' and 'Track stock'.



By enabling 'Track stock' you can add the quantity of your stock level and the quantity at which you will receive the <u>low stock notification</u>.

	*		
	*	Inventory	
:	•	Composite item ①	
	0	Track stock	
		In stock	Low stock 20
			Item quantity at which you will be notified about low stock

If you have <u>multiple stores</u>, you can manage the item parameters for each store, in the 'Stores' section: change the price, in-stock quantity, and quantity for low stock notification.

9	≡ c	≡ Create item								
	Θ	Stores								
	lu.									
	ŵ									
	7	Available	Store	Price	In stock	Low stock				
	8		Coffeshop	2.29	20	5				
	-20		The coffee	2.29	20	7				
	*									

In the 'Tax' section, you can choose the taxes for your item.

10	\$	Taxes	
	0	Sales tax (8.75 %)	

In the 'Modifiers' section, you can choose the modifiers for your item.

11 🗳	Modificadores	
*	Complementos para café Disponible en todas las tiendas	() <b>&gt;</b>
۵	Suplementos Disponible en todas las tiendas	
0	<b>Tamaño</b> Disponible en todas las tiendas	

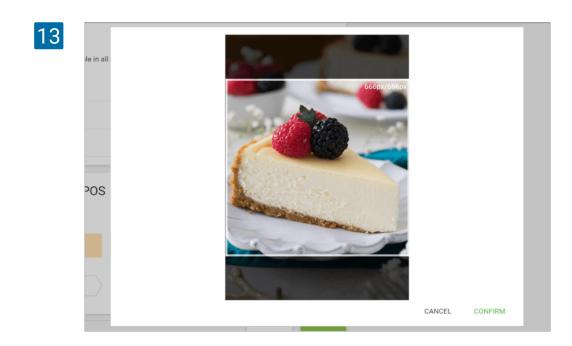
In the 'Representation on POS' section, you can pick a color and shape for the item icon or upload its' picture.

12	¢ ()	Representación en el TPV Color y forma	O Imagen
		$\mathbf{\nabla} \mathbf{O} \mathbf{O} \mathbf{O}$	

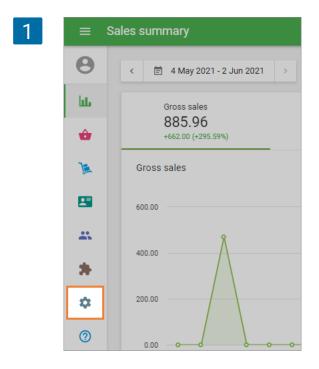
Don't forget to save changes.

Note

Loyverse uses only square images for item preview. If you upload an image with a different shape, you will have a dialog screen to crop the image to a square. Adjust the square to fit the portion of the image you wish to keep. Click the Confirm button.



#### 1.5.1 How to Configure Taxes in the Back Office



To configure taxes, you need first to sign in to the <u>Back Office</u>.

After signing in, go to Settings.

Then go to 'Taxes'.

2	)	Payment types
	2	Loyalty
	*	Taxes
	*	Receipt
	•	Open tickets

#### Then press 'ADD TAX'

3	
	Taxes
	Taxes may apply to specific items and be added when selling those.
	+ ADD TAX

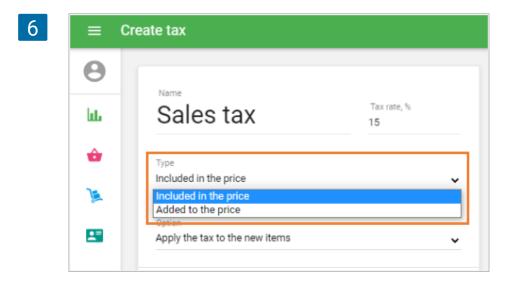
... and name the tax.

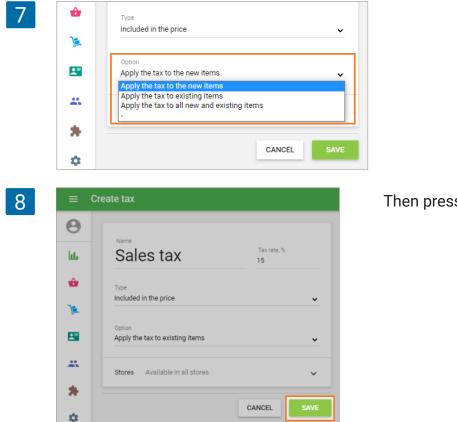
≡	Create tax	
Θ		
ht	Sales tax	
÷	Туре	
)a	Included in the price	~
	Option Apply the tax to the new items	~

#### Then input the tax rate

5	≡ C	reate tax	
	Θ		
	հե	Sales tax	Tax rate, % 15
	ŵ	Type	
	)a	Included in the price	~
	8	Option Apply the tax to the new items	~
	*	Stores Available in all stores	~
	*		

...and specify whether the tax should be included in the price, or if it will be added to the price at the counter..





Select the items to which this tax should apply.

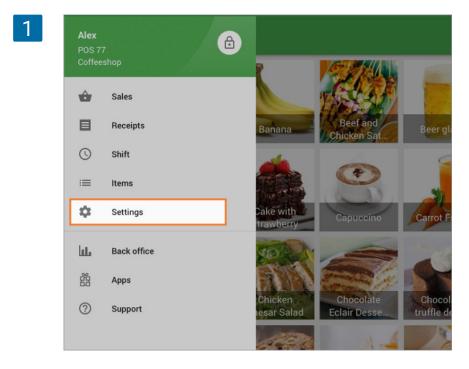
Then press 'Save'.

Now taxes are configured, they will be applied for each purchase.

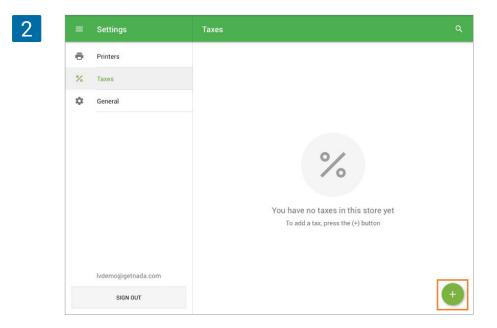
#### 1.5.2 How to Set Up Taxes in POS

You can set up and configure taxes in the Back Office.

To create taxes in the POS, go to the 'Taxes' section from the 'Settings' menu.



Create a tax by tapping on the '+' button.



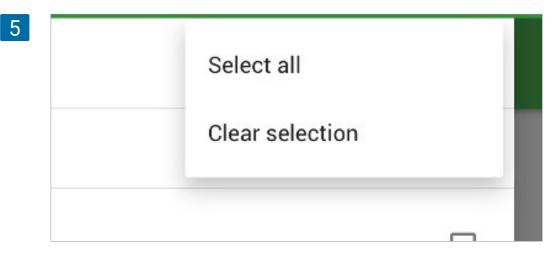
Name the tax, input the tax rate, and specify whether the tax should be 'included in the price' or 'added to the price'. Then tap 'Apply to items'.

Name	
VAT	
Tax rate, %	
20	
Туре	
Included in the price	*

Select items to which this tax will be applied.

4	÷	Create	×	Apply tax to items	SAVE	:	SAVE
			Q	Search			
				Apple juice			
				Cheasecake			
				Cofee			
				Rice			
				Теа			

You can 'Select all' items through the three dots menu.



Save your selection.

6	÷	Create	×	Apply tax to items	SAVE :	SAVE
			Q	Search		
				Apple juice	$\checkmark$	
				Cheasecake	<b>~</b>	
				Cofee		
				Rice		

Then save your tax.

Name	
VAT	
Tax rate, %	
20	
Туре	
Included in the price	*

From now on, the tax will be applied automatically during each purchase.

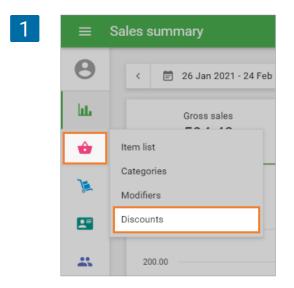
Note If you have multiple stores, the tax created in the POS will be available only in the store that the current POS belongs to. You can change the availability of this tax in the Back Office.

If you delete the tax in the POS, it will be deleted from the Back Office as well.

## 1.6 How to Create and Configure Discounts

You can create and configure discounts at the <u>Back Office</u> and on the mobile App.

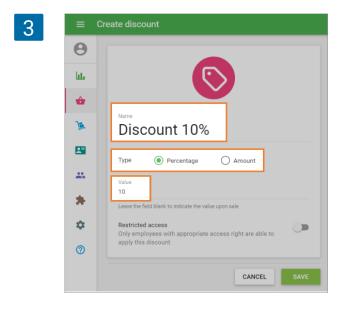
#### 1.6.1 Discount set up in the Back Office



Log in to the Back Office. In the 'Items' menu section, select 'Discounts'.

To create a discount, click on the '+ ADD DISCOUNT' button.

2	≡ D	iscounts
	Θ	
	ш	
	ŵ	
	)a	Discounts
		Discounts can be applied during sale.
	*	+ ADD DISCOUNT



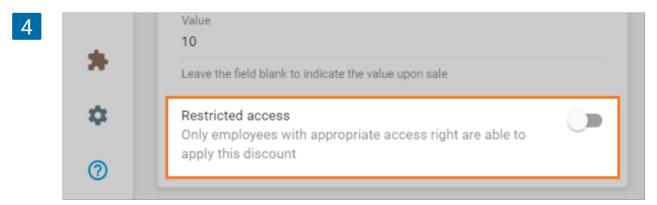
Fill in the 'Name' field. Then choose one of the two discount types: 'Percentage' or 'Amount'. The 'Percentage' discount can be applied to both the whole ticket or to individual items. The 'Amount' discount is applicable only to the whole ticket. Fill in the 'Value' field.

If you choose the 'Percent' type of discount, then the number in the 'Value' field will specify the percentage that will be deducted from the items' original price or the whole ticket. The value of a percentage discount cannot be less than 0.01% or more than 100%.

If you choose the 'Amount' type of discount, then the number in the 'Value' field will specify a discount amount that will be deducted from the total value.

It is not always necessary to fill in the 'Value' field. You may specify the value of a discount during the sale. But you can apply such a discount only to the whole ticket.

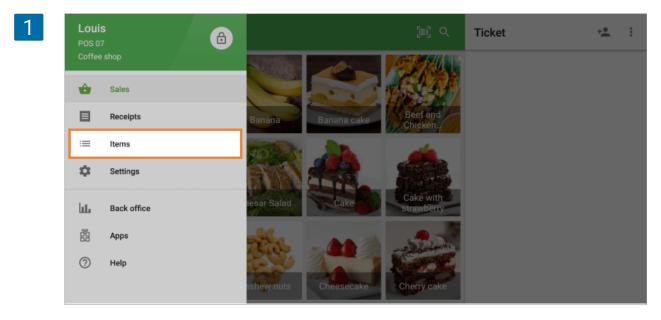
If the 'Restricted access' option is activated, then only the employees with the access right will be able to apply this discount.



Don't forget to save your changes.

#### 1.6.2 Discount set up in the mobile application

To create, view, edit or remove a discount, select the section 'Items' in the App's menu.



Go to the 'Discounts' section where you will see all the discounts created in the Back Office and the app itself. If you want to create more discounts, tap the '+' button at the bottom right corner.

2	■	Items	Discounts	٩
	=	Items	S Discount 10	10.00
Ċ		Categories	S Discount 10%	10%
ę	C	Discounts		

In the opened form, fill in the fields the same way as in the Back Office. Choose the discount type: percent – %, or amount –  $\Sigma$ .

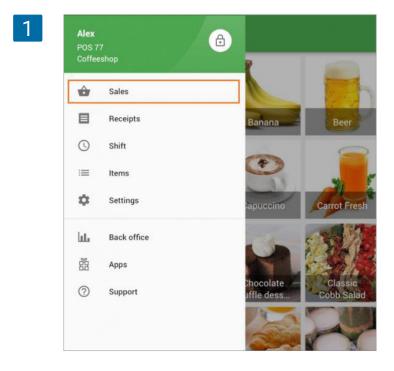
3	← Create dis	count			SAVE
		Name Discount 100 Value 100.00	%	Σ	
		Leave the field blank to indicate the value upon sale			

Don't forget to save changes.

Then, after you have created the discounts, you can apply them during the sale.

## 1.7 How to Make Sales

Launch your Loyverse POS app (Play Market or App Store) and go to the 'Sales' screen.



- 1. Tap on the item's image or icon on the sales screen to add the item to the ticket.
- 2. You can sort items by categories with the drop-down list 'All items'.
- **3**. You can also use the search bar to look up items.

4. It is easy to find items by pages at the bottom of the screen.

See <u>How to Arrange Sale Screen in Loyverse POS.</u>

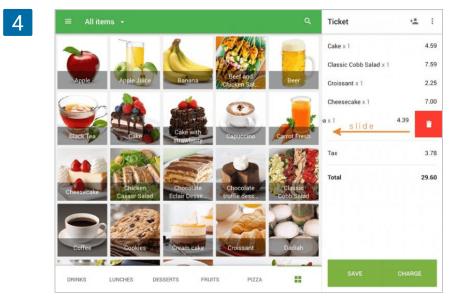


You can change the quantity of the items by tapping the item in the ticket.

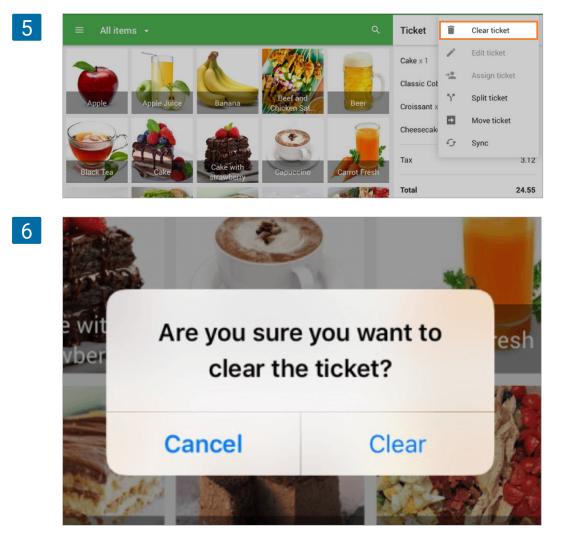
3

= All iter	× Croissant 2.25		SAVE	+ <b>±</b> :
-	Quantity			4.59
	—	1	+	7.59
Apple	Comment			2.25
( and	Enter comment		_	7.00
BlackTen	Discounts			4.39
	Discount 10% 10%	$\mathcal{D}$		3.78
10	Taxes			29.60
Cheesecake	Sales Tax 15%	added tax 10%	Q	
Coffee				

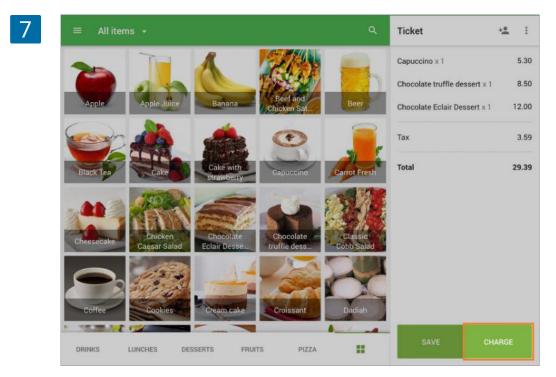
By sliding any selected item to the left, you can remove the item from the ticket.



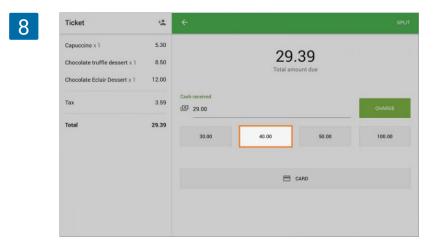
When you need to void a sale, tap the three dots menu (:) at the ticket header, then tap 'Clear ticket'.



Tap the 'Charge' button in the bottom right-hand corner to proceed to the sale registration.



At the following dialog window, you can choose a type of payment for the purchase. If it is a cash payment, you can tap on the suggested amount.



Or if you want to add a custom amount of cash received from the customer, enter the amount in the 'Cash received' and then tap 'Charge'.

9	Ticket	**				SPLIT
	Banana x 1.000 Green Apple x 1 Cookies x 2	2.19 3.59 11.38			5.65 amount due	
	Fruit Salad x 1 Tax (included)	8.49	Cash received			CHARGE
	5 C D					
	1 2	3 4	4 5	6 7	8 9	0 🗵
	@ #	\$	& *	( )		return
	#+= %	- +	=	1 ;	undo	ABC
						~

Once the payment is processed, you will see a window with a summary containing the total amount of sale and the change due.

Ticket	+ <u>*</u>		
Banana x 1.000	2.19		0.5
Green Apple × 1	3.59		.35
Cookies × 2	11.38	Total paid Tot	tal change
Fruit Salad x 1	8.49		
Tax (included)			
Total	25.65		
		Enter email	SEND RECEI
		V NEW SALE	

You can choose to email the receipt to your customer or move on to a new sale.

# 2. Sales



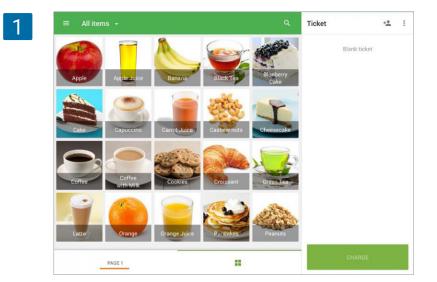
### 2.1 How to Arrange Sale Screen in Loyverse POS

You can arrange your items on the sales screen of Loyverse POS in a suitable way by creating new custom pages and organizing the items there.

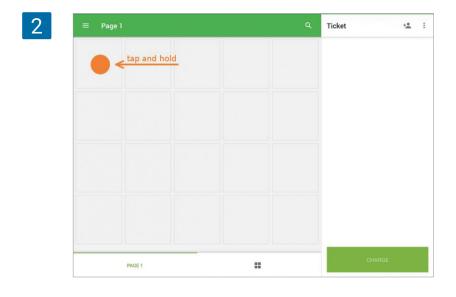
As a default, there is a page (marked by the grid icon) with all your items in an alphabetical order. You cannot change this page. However, you can organize the items on the custom pages.

#### 2.1.1 Organizing of Items

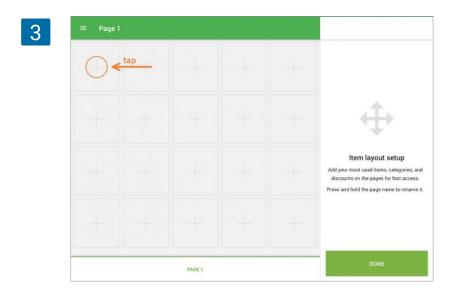
Open the sales screen on your POS. Go to the custom page 'Page 1'.



You will see a grid with empty squares. Tap and hold any square for a few seconds.



The screen will switch to the 'Item layout setup' mode. Tap any square containing the + sign.



The item list will open in a new screen.

≡ Page 1	× Add item to the page		
	ITEMS CATEGORIES DISCOUNTS	٩	
	Classic Cobb Salad	7.59	
	Coffee	4.00	
	Cookies	5.69	
	Croissant	2.25	2
	Dadiah	3.00	
	😇 Fancy Cake	4.69	setup
	Four Cheese Pizza	4.99	for fast access ame to rename
	Fried rice	12.12	
	💞 Fruit Salad	8.49	
	Gado-gado	4.44	
	😜 Green Apple	3.59	
	~		

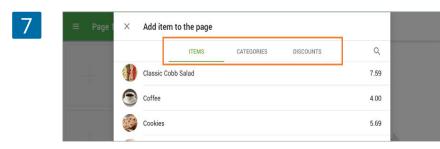
When you choose an item, it will fill the square.

5	≡ Page 1			
	× Coffee			
	+			÷
	+			Item layout setup Add your most used items, categories, and discounts on the pages for fast access. Press and hold the page name to rename it.
	+			
		PAGE 1	PAGE 2	DONE

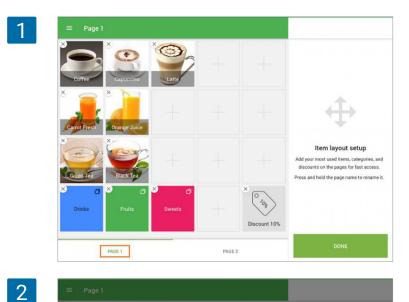
By dragging and dropping the item icon, you can move it to another square.



In the same way, you can add Categories and Discounts to the grid page.



#### 2.1.2 Organizing Pages



Edit page name

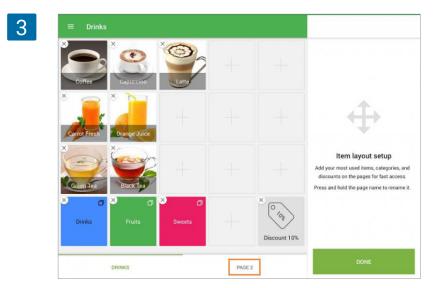
×

Drinks

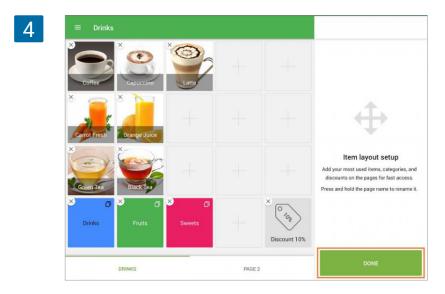
When you are in the setup mode, you can change the name of the page. Just tap and hold the page label for a few seconds.

The editing screen will open. Fill in the 'Page name' field and tap 'Save'.

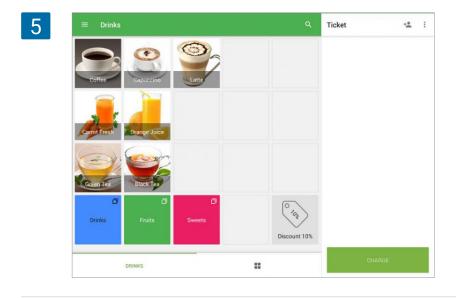
If you want to create another page, you can do it in the same way by tapping the next free page.



Tap 'Done' to save your layout. Pages without items will not be saved.



You will then be redirected to the sales screen. Just tap the items to add them to the ticket.



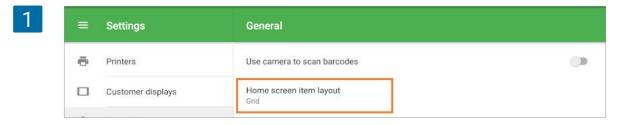
## 2.2 How to Change Home Sale Screen Layout

You can set your home sale screen layout either in a grid or list format. The feature allows you to find the desired items more conveniently and add them to the receipt.

#### 2.2.1 Sale screen item layout for tablets

By default, the home sale screen on tablets is set to the grid layout.

To change settings, go to "General" under the application settings and tap 'Home screen item layout'.



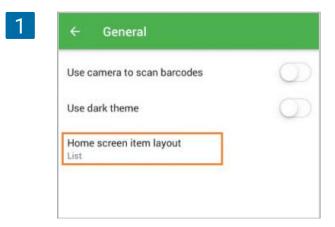
Choose the list option and save changes.

	- 193	6 - 1				-	-		-	10.44
	-	—	-	-		0-	-			
-		-	-				_	-	-	
-	-	-				1	-			
	-	-		-		0-		-		
-			-	- 1	-			'	-	-
		(	$\mathcal{D}$	Grid			(	) List		

In this case, all the items will be listed in one column. This mode is useful when you have long names for your items, or when you want to see the price of the items.

	+* :
<b>è</b> Apple 1.29	
Apple Juice 2.29	
Banana 3.00	
Sanana cake 12.00	
Beef and Chicken Satay 12.03	
Beer glass 6.00	
🥐 Berry cake 12.50	
Slack Tea 2.39	
Cake 4.59	
Cake with strawberry 14.00	

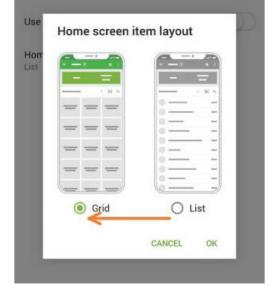
#### 2.2.2 Sale screen item layout for smartphones



By default, the home sale screen on smartphones is set to the list layout.

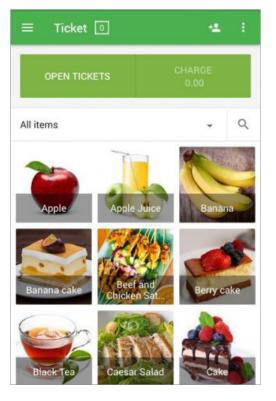
To set your smartphone to the grid layout, go to 'General' under the application settings, and tap 'Home screen item layout'

Choose the grid option and save changes.



3

2



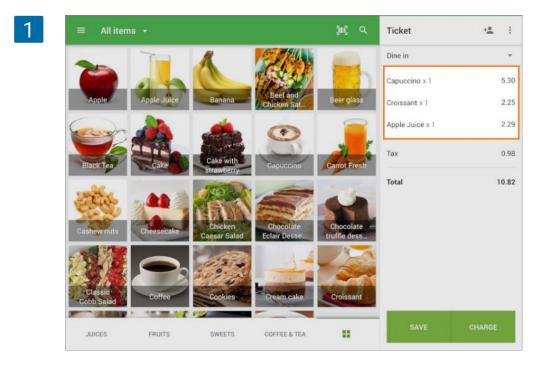
In this case, all the items on the sales screen are displayed in three columns. This mode is useful if you prefer to find items by its image or color.

# 2.3 How to Apply Discounts During a Sale

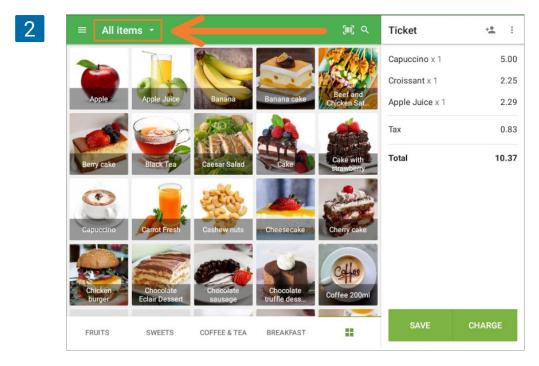
Before starting to use discounts during a sale, <u>create and configure</u> them in the <u>Back Office</u> or the mobile app (<u>Play Market</u> or <u>App Store</u>).

The 'Percentage' discounts can be applied to both the whole ticket and separate items. The 'Amount' discounts are applicable only to the whole ticket.

If you want to apply a discount to the whole ticket, first create the ticket by choosing items from the sale screen.



To apply a discount to the ticket, please click on the 'All items' line on the top left side of the sale screen.



In the drop-down menu, click on the 'Discounts'.



You will see the list of your previously created discounts

4	≡ Disco	unts -			<b>)</b> ) Q	Ticket	+ <b>e</b> :
4	Discount 10	Discount 10%	For employ	Happy hour	Variable	Capuccino x 1 Croissant x 1 Apple Juice x 1 Tax Total	5.00 2.25 2.29 0.83 10.37

Tap on the needed discount, and it will automatically be applied to the whole ticket.

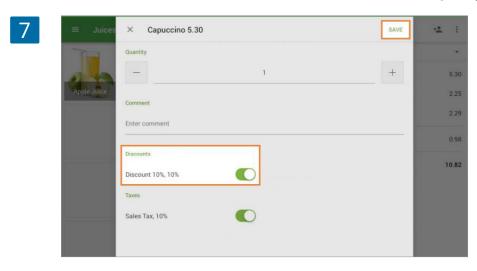
5	≡ Disco	unts -			ju) Q	Ticket	+ <u>•</u> :
	010,00	0100	O SDOS	0 750	0 %	Capuccino x 1	⊘ 5.00
	3.00	000	Colo Colo	0%	5	Croissant x 1	⊚ 2.25
	Discount 10	Discount 10%	For employ	Happy hour	Variable	Apple Juice x 1	⊘ 2.29
						Discounts	0.95
						Тах	0.75
						Total	9.34
	EDUITS	SWEETS	COFFEE & TEA	RREAKEAST		SAVE	CHARGE
	ERTITS	SWEETS	LTIERER X TEA	REFAREAST			

If you want to cancel it, tap the "Discount" line on the ticket. In the opened window, tap the trash icon.

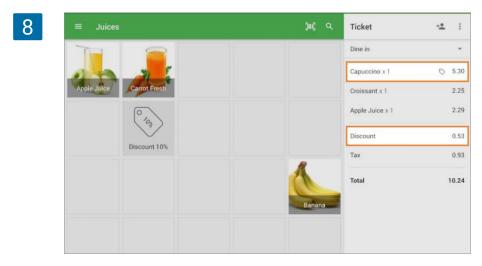


In order to apply a discount to a specific item, tap the item in the current ticket.

The window to edit items in the ticket will open. In the discounts section, you will see the available discounts. Switch on the desired one, and save changes by tapping the 'Save' button.



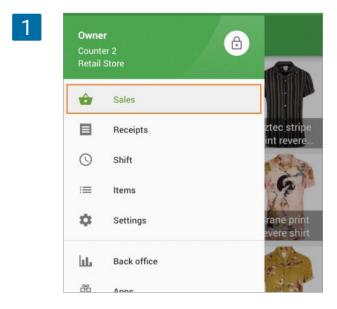
Afterward, the discount with its value will appear on the ticket, and the discount sign will appear next to the item.



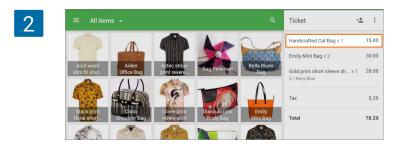
Now, you can continue the finalization of the sale as usual.

Note In case of applying multiple discounts (percentage, amount, and customer points), the system will automatically apply them in the order of lower to higher discount value. Barcode scanners can be used with Loyverse POS to quickly add items to a ticket. Before making sales, make sure that your scanner is paired with Loyverse POS and the <u>items have</u> <u>barcodes</u>.

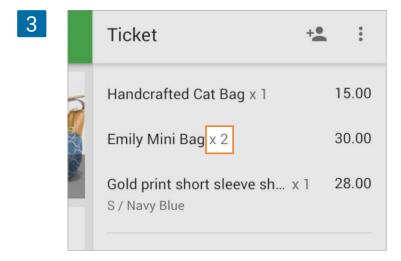
Launch your Loyverse POS app (Android, iOS) and go to the Sales screen, in the same way as when <u>selling without a scanner</u>.



When you scan your item's barcode with a scanner, this item will appear in your ticket.



If you scan the same barcode one more time, the number of items will increase by one.

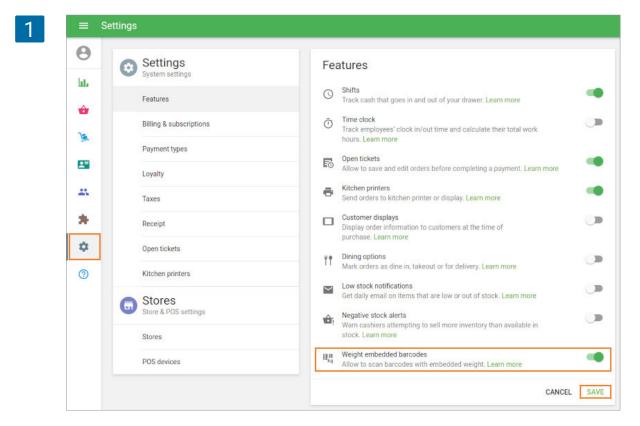


### 2.5 How to Scan Barcodes with Embedded Weight

The option allows you to scan barcodes containing the item SKU and its weight. When scanning such a barcode, the item is automatically added to the receipt with the indicated weight (quantity). The system allows the use of weighted barcodes in the following formats: EAN 13 and UPC-A.

To use this feature, log in to your Back Office, click on the Settings icon on the left menu bar to go to the System settings.

In the 'Features' section, switch on the parameter for 'Barcodes with embedded weight'. Click the 'Save' button.



At your POS, you can <u>sell items by scan barcodes</u> with embedded weight using the device camera or barcode scanner.

Barcodes with embedded weight format should follow the pattern:

#### YYCCCCCWWWWWX

**YY** - prefix, by which the system determines that it is a weight embedded barcode. It must be "20" or "02" for EAN 13 and "2" for UPC-A.

**CCCCC** - item SKU (note that it has to be programmed as five digits, for example "10010" or "00010").

**WWWWW** - weight (quantity) of item in grams. For example "01750" = 1.750kg **X** - barcode checksum

Samples of barcodes with embedded weight

EAN 13



UPC-A



Note

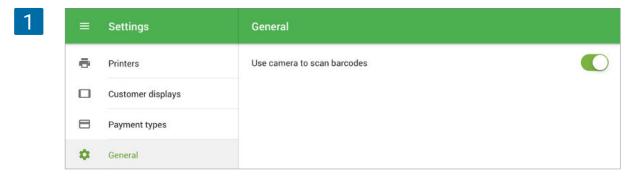
Items should have the <u>'sold by weight' option</u> on. Otherwise, you will receive an error message when scanning barcodes with embedded weight.

4	≡	Edit item	
	θ	Name	
	հե	Apple	Category Fruits •
	ŵ	Sold by O Each R Weight/Volume	
	)	Price	Average cost
	•=	2.00 Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	1.57 Value updates automatically when you receive inventory
	*	sкu 10073	Barcode
	\$		

# 2.6 Barcodes Scanning by Built-in Device Camera

The built-in rear camera of Mobile Device can be used to scan item barcodes during sale or when adding new items to the list.

First, you have to activate the option 'Use the camera to scan barcodes' on Loyverse POS app in the General Settings.

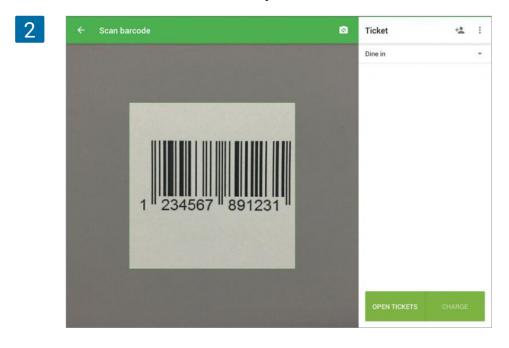


#### 2.6.1 Selling Items

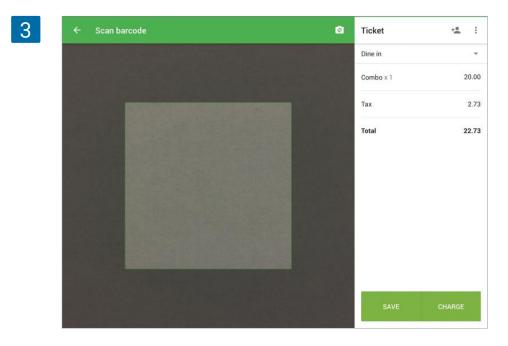
Before making sales, make sure that you have barcodes on the item's card. Launch your Loyverse POS app and go to the Sales screen, same as when selling without a scanner.Tap the button for scanning barcodes with the built-in camera.



Point the camera at the barcode of your item.



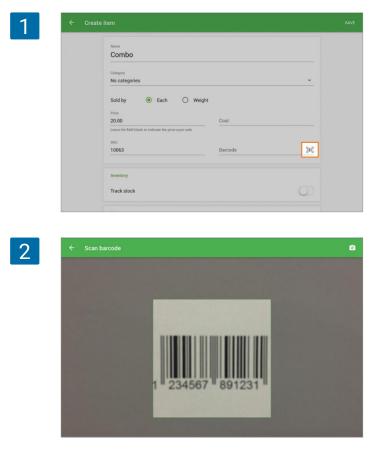
The camera will scan the barcode and the item will appear on the ticket list.



The screen with the camera will remain open, so you can scan another barcode, or edit items in the ticket, search for a client to add to the ticket, redeem customers points, save or merge open tickets.

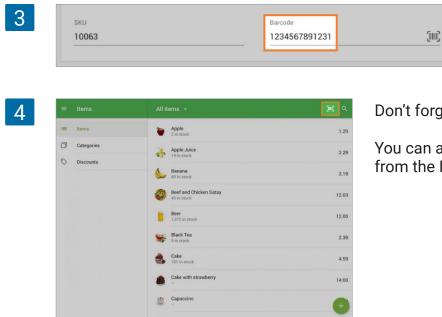
#### 2.6.2 Adding Barcodes to Items

In the Loyverse POS 'Items' menu, open the item for editing and tap the scan button near the Barcode field.



The screen with the camera will be activated, so point the camera at the barcode.

Once it is scanned, it will fill in the barcode number in the Barcode field.



Don't forget to save changes.

You can also activate the built-in camera from the Items list.

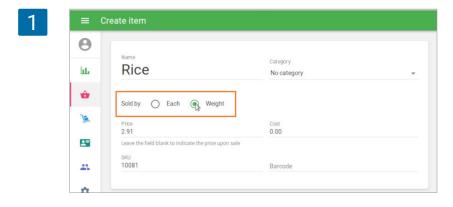
The screen with the camera will be activated, so point the camera at the barcode. If any item does not have this barcode, the new item will be created and opened for editing with the filled-in barcode. If there is already an item with this barcode, it will open for editing.

Note Loyverse POS with built-in camera can scan UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN-13, EAN-8, Code 39, Code 93, Code 128 barcodes and QR code as well.

# 2.7 How to Sell Items by Weight

Whether an item is sold by piece (bottle, pack, etc.) or by weight (pound, kilogram, etc.) is determined by the 'Sold by' option found in the item description. You can change this option both in the <u>Back Office</u> and the Loyverse POS app.

If you want to change the option from the Back Office, first log in to the Back Office, go to 'Item list', and open the existing item to edit or create a new item.



If you want to change the option from the Loyverse POS app, go to 'Items' section and tap the existing item to edit or create a new item.

Apple	
Арріе	
Category	
Fruits	-
Sold by O Each  Weight Price	Average cost
1.29	1.50
Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	Value updates automatically when you receive inventory
SKU	
10073	Barcode

In both cases, set the 'Sold by' option to 'Weight'. Enter the item price per one unit of weight, such as kilogram, pound, etc. Save your edits.

When you sell the item, a number pad will appear on the screen. Enter the actual weight of the item and tap 'OK'.

3 = AI	liter × Apple				• <b>±</b> :
20	Quantity			2.8	
Apple	1	2	3	Ø	
Beer glas	4	5	6	u	
Capucci	7	8	9	ОК	
Chicker Caesar Sa JUICES	·		D		снаябе

The item will be added to the ticket with the price for a unit of weight multiplied by the actual weight.



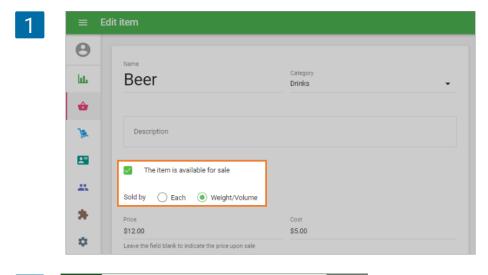
# 2.8 How to sell liquids

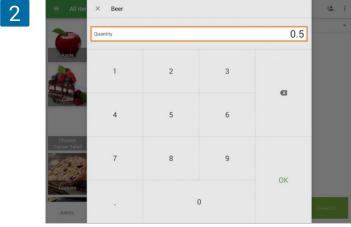
There are two approaches to sell liquids with Loyverse POS.

#### 2.8.1 Through selling by weight option

Open your liquid item for editing in the Back Office or Loyverse POS app. Assign the 'Sold by' option to 'Weight' (<u>How to Sell Items by Weight</u>).

Enter the item price per one liquid measure, for example per one liter (you may indicate the measure in the name of the item, for instance, 'Beer 1L'). Save your edits.





Now, during a sale of such item, a number pad will appear on the screen. Enter the amount in proportion to a liter for the item and tap 'OK'.

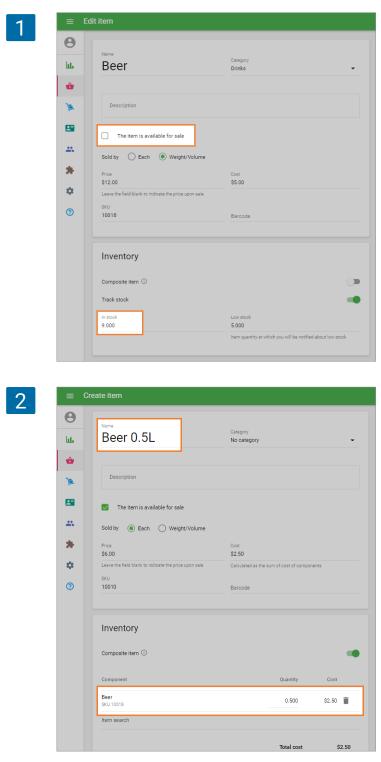
For example, you sell 500 ml of the liquid item, and your measure is a liter. Then you tap 0.5 in the Quantity field.

Then, your item will be added to the ticket with the price shown as the price for a liter multiplied by the actual selling portion. The sold amount will be deducted from the stock for this liquid item.



### 2.8.2 Selling like composite item

If you sell by a particular set of liquid volumes (for example, drinks in shots or pints), you can use composite items.



First, create the component of your liquid item in the 'Item list', and set the amount of stock.

If you don't want to sell this component besides as predefined sets of volumes, deselect the check-box 'The item is available for sale' so that it will not be shown in the items list during sales.

Then create your set of liquid volumes from this component item. Each composite item should have the quantity field filled in with the liquid volume.

For example, you are selling Beer by a volume of 500 ml. Create a composite item "Beer 0.5 L". Choose the component 'Beer', and set the appropriate quantity. In this case, it is 0.5 L.

Then, with every sale of predefined sets of volume items, the stock of the component of the liquid item will be deducted by the sold amount.

Sometimes, customers ask to split the total of the ticket into several partial payments. It is also possible to select a different payment type for each partial payment.

After adding items to the ticket, tap 'Charge'.





÷ <u>*</u>				
4.39				
4.59				
4.99	Cash received 35.18			CHARGE
5.30				
12.00	36.00	37.00	40.00	50.00
3.91				
35.18			CARD	
		E s	UMUP	
	4.39 4.59 5.30 12.00 3.91	4.39 4.59 4.99 ⓒ 35.18 5.30 12.00 36.00 3.91	4.39 335. Total am 4.59 Cash received 4.99 ⊡ 35.18 5.30 36.00 37.00 3.91 35.18 □	4.39     35.18       4.59     Cash received       4.99     ☑ 35.18       5.30     37.00       12.00     36.00       3.91       35.18

2

+

17.59

17.59

In the payment window, tap 'Split'.

Use '+' or '-' buttons to set up the
number of partial payments.

By default, the entire amount will be split evenly.

Select the payment type for each payment.

3

Ticket

Dine in

Cake x 1

Black Tea x 1

Carrot Fresh x 1

Capuccino x 1

Chocolate Eclair Dessert x 1

+•

4.39

4.59

4.99

5.30

12.00

Cash

÷.

Cash

Ticket	÷ <u>*</u>		Remaining 35.18			
Dine in				~		
Black Tea x 1 Honey	4.39			2 +		
Cake x 1	4.59					
Carrot Fresh x 1	4.99	ĩ	Cash		17.59 CH	HARGE
Capuccino x 1	5.30		Card			
		1			17.59	

If you need, enter a custom amount for each partial payment and accept the payments by tapping the 'Charge' button.



Ticket	÷ <u>*</u>		Remaining 3	35.18				
Dine in								
Black Tea x 1 Honey	4.39			(-)	2 Payments	(+)		
Cake x 1	4.59							
Carrot Fresh x 1	4.99	Î	Card	-			25.00	CHAR
Capuccino x 1	5.30							
Chocolate Eclair Dessert x 1	12.00	Î	Cash	•			10.18	CHARG
	3.91							

After charging, you can see that each payment has the word 'Paid' next to it. Then tap 'Done' to finalize the transaction.

Ticket	**	+	Remain	ing 0.00				
Dine in					_			
Black Tea x 1 Honey	4.39				Payments	(+)		
Cake x 1	4.59							
Carrot Fresh x 1	4.99	8	Card	-			25.00	Paid
Capuccino x 1	5.30							
Chocolate Eclair Dessert x 1	12.00	Ŧ	Cash	*			10.18	Paid
Tax	3.91							
					ACEPTAR			

You will also get separate receipts for each payment. Tap the 'New sale' button to go to the sell screen.

Dine in				
Black Tea × 1 Honey	4.39		35.18 Total paid	
Cake x 1	4.59			
Carrot Fresh x 1	4.99			
Capuccino x 1	5.30			
Chocolate Eclair Dessert x 1	12.00	Enter email		SEND RECEI
Tax	3.91			
Total	35.18			
			V NEW SALE	

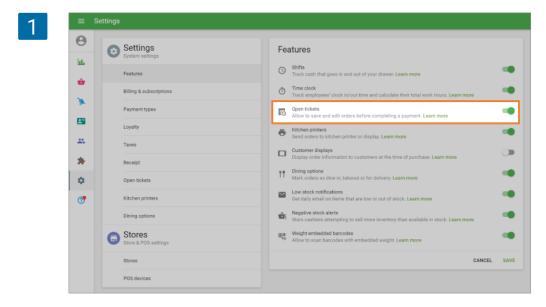
# 2.10 Open Tickets

'Open tickets' allow you to create, edit, and save an order, before completing a sale. This feature is usually used in <u>cafes</u> and <u>restaurants</u>, where the order and payment may be separate over an extended period of time.

'Open tickets' helps you to work with few orders simultaneously, edit, and close them during payment.

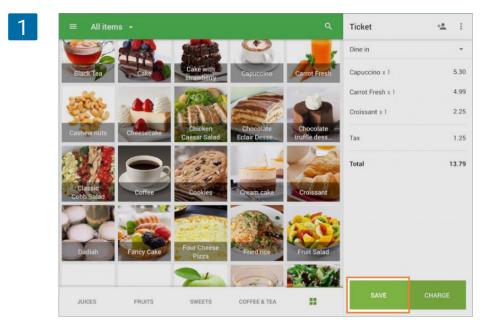
#### 2.10.1 Settings

In the Back Office, go to the 'Settings' menu, Features section, and activate the mode 'Open tickets'. Do not forget to save your changes.

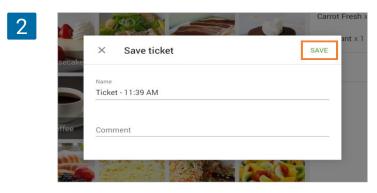


### 2.10.2 Open ticket creation

Once you have formed a ticket when selling through the mobile application, click on the 'Save' button.

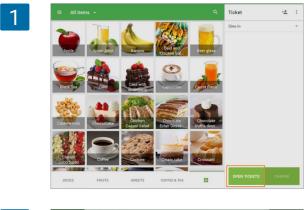


In the opened window, you can edit the name of the ticket (it will be generated automatically with reference to the current time) and add a comment to it. Click the 'Save' button to save the ticket.

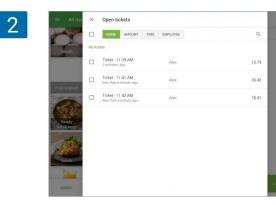


If you have the predefined ticket functionality on, you have to select one from the predefined ticket list. Afterward, the column with the ticket becomes clear, and you can work with other clients.

#### 2.10.3 Searching and editing



To edit or close the open ticket, click on the button 'Open tickets'.



In this menu, you will find the open tickets list, which can be sorted by name, amount, last modification time, and employees. If the ticket list is long, use the search bar.

3



To edit or close the ticket, find it in the list and click on it. Edit or close the ticket, then click 'Save' or 'Charge'.

If you need to edit the name of the ticket or the comment attached to it, tap 'Edit ticket' in the three-dot menu.

#### 2.10.4 Assigning and Removal

Employees whose 'Manage all open tickets' function is enabled can assign their tickets to each other.

In the open ticket list, check the necessary tickets and tap the icon at the upper right-hand corner of the screen.

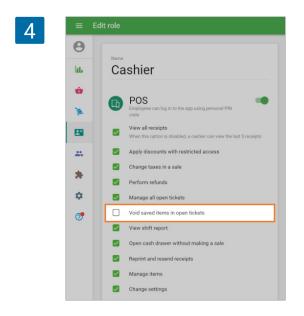
×	Open tickets		±. :
	NAME AMOUNT TIME EMPLOYEE	م	~
My tic	kets		
	Ticket - 11:39 AM Alex Alex	13.79	
	Ticket - 11:41 AM Alex	33.42	
	Ticket - 11:42 AM Alex Alex	78.41	
	My tick	NAME     AMOUNT     TIME     EMPLOYEE       My tickets       ✓     Ticket - 11:39 AM less than a minute ago     Alex       □     Ticket - 11:41 AM 1 minute ago     Alex	□       NAME       AMOUNT       TIME       EMPLOYEE       Q         My tickets       Image: Standard and Standard

Through search, choose the employee and click the 'Assign' button.

2	$\equiv$ All iter	÷	Assign ticket to	ASSIGN	÷ <u>*</u>	:
	-	Q	Search employee			•
		0	Alice			
	Apple	0	Joh			
	-	0	Joe			
	Berry cake	0	John			
		0	Kleiner Hansl			
	Сар	0	Alex			

To remove the ticket, select it and click the trash can icon.

3	$\equiv$ All iter	×	Open tickets			Î	大 📲	+2	:
	-		NAME AMOUNT	TIME	EMPLOYEE		Q		*
	Dadiah	My tick	kets						
	1		Ticket - 11:39 AM less than a minute ago		Alex		13.79		
	Fruit yoghurt		Ticket - 11:41 AM 1 minute ago		Alex		33.42		
	6		Ticket - 11:42 AM less than a minute ago		Alex		78.41		



If you want to forbid your cashiers from deleting saved open tickets or deleting items from them, you can restrict their access rights. To do this, go to the 'Access rights' menu in the Back Office and open the 'Cashier' user group for editing. Deselect 'Void saved items in open tickets' option.

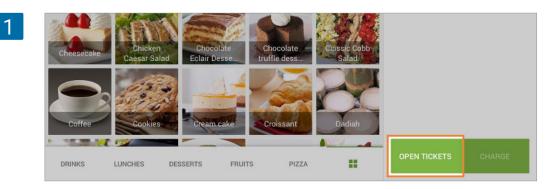
Don't forget to save changes.

# 2.11 How to Merge Open Tickets with Loyverse POS

Merging tickets allow the cashier to combine items into one ticket. Please make sure that the open ticket option is activated in the <u>Back Office</u>.

#### 2.11.1 Merging tickets in the open tickets list.

Go to open tickets list from the sale screen by clicking 'Open tickets'.



Mark the checkbox of the tickets you would like to merge, and then select the 'Merge' icon at the top right-hand corner.

2 = All iter	×	Open tickets			1 X 4	-1	÷
-		NAME AMOUNT	TIME	EMPLOYEE	٩		.*
	My tick	cets					
Apple		Ticket 1 1 minute ago		Alex	22.79		
		Ticket 2 less than a minute ago		Alex	37.55		
Blackfea		Ticket 3 less than a minute ago		Alex	23.25		

Select a name for the merged ticket and tap the 'Merge' button to save.

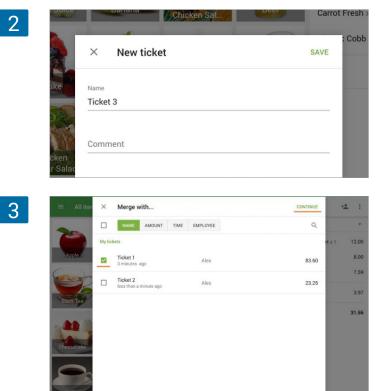


#### 2.11.2 Merging tickets in the sale screen



You can merge open ticket directly from the sale screen.

Tap the 'Merge ticket' button by tapping the three dots.



In the open window, you can edit the name and comment on the ticket. Tap 'Save' to go to the next step.

Select the ticket(s) you would like to merge your ticket with, and press 'Continue' at the top right-hand corner. Select a name for the merged ticket and tap 'Merge' to save.



Now you can find your new ticket in the open ticket list.

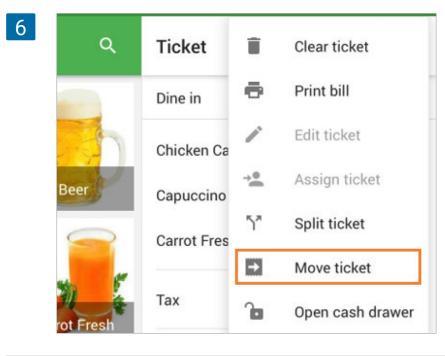
• All modifiers, comments, discounts, and taxes applied to separate items will move to the merged ticket together with their items.

Note

- •
- 'Percentage' and 'Amount' discounts applied to whole tickets will be applied to the merged ticket.

5		i 🖬 🗠 🔹	:
IME	EMPLOYEE	٩	*
	Alex	31.40	
	Alex	13.80	

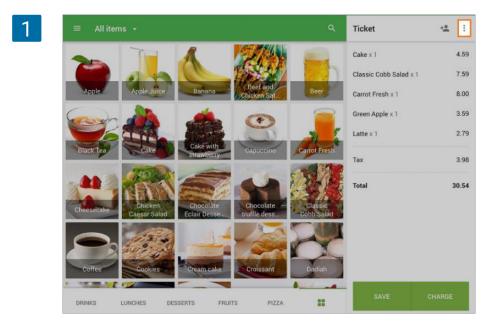
If you have the predefined tickets option on, instead of 'merge ticket', it will say 'Move ticket'. In the same way as merging, you can move your ticket to the other one.

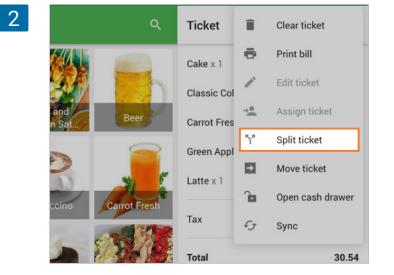


# 2.12 How to Split an Open Ticket with Loyverse POS

Splitting a ticket allows the cashier to separate its items into multiple new tickets. First, please be sure that the <u>open ticket</u> option is activated in the <u>Back Office</u>.

Once you have an open ticket when selling on the mobile application, click on the 'Split ticket' button by the three dots (:)





In the opened window, you can set the name and add comment of the ticket.

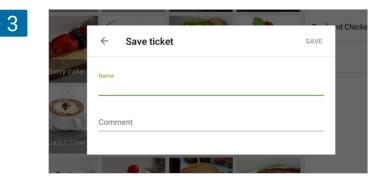


Table 1       Image: Second Seco	Cake       4.59         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Carrot Fresh       8.00         Green Apple       3.59         Late       2.79         Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         E       Split ticket         PRM7 ALL OLL       Split ticket         Table 1       Image: Split ticket         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Carrot Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Table 1       Image: Split ticket         PRM7 ALL OLL       Split ticket         Table 1       Image: Split ticket         Image: Split ticket       7.59         Cake       4.59         Image: Split ticket       2.79         Tax       1.89         Total       14.48         Tox       3.37	÷	Split ticket						PRINT ALL BILLS	SAVE	
□       Classic Cobb Salid       7.59         □       Carrot Fresh       8.00         □       Green Apple       3.59         □       Latte       2.79         □       Fruit Salid       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Classic Cobb Salid       7.59         □       Classic Apple       3.59         □       Carrot Fresh       8.00         □       Latte       2.79         Tax       3.37	Caract Fresh       8.00         Green Apple       3.59         Latte       2.79         Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       POINT ALL BLLS         Caract Fresh       8.00         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       POINT ALL BLLS         Septit ticket       POINT ALL BLLS         Caract Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Caract Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Table 1       © İ         Claract Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Total       14.48         Tax       3.37         Total       25.83         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE	Tabl	e 1	⊕ :	Table	1 - 1	⊕ :				
Carrot Fresh       8.00         Green Apple       3.59         Late       2.79         Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Table 1       © i         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Carrot Fresh       8.00         Late       2.79         Tax       3.37	Carrot Fresh       8.00         Green Apple       3.59         Latte       2.79         Tox       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Table 1       Image: Table 1 - 1       Image: Table 1 - 1         Classic Cobb Salad       7.69         Carcot Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Table 1       Image: Table 1 - 1       Image: Table 1 - 1         Classic Cobb Salad       7.69         Carcot Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Tax       3.37         Total       25.83         Move HERE       Move HERE		Cake	4.59							
Green Apple       3.59         Latre       2.79         Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Core HERE       MOVE HERE         Table 1       Image: Table 1 - 1       Image: Table	□       Green Apple       3.59         □       Latre       2.79         □       Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE		Classic Cobb Salad	7.59							
Latte       2.79         Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Table 1       Image: State Sta	□       Latte       2.79         □       Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         LOCE HORE       MORE HORE		Carrot Fresh	8.00							
Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Table 1       Image: Table 1 - 1       Ima	Fruit Salad       8.49         Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         C       Split ticket       PRINT ALL BULS       SA         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BULS       SA         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BULS       SA         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BULS       SA         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BULS       SA         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split Spl		Green Apple	3.59							
Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE         Correct Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Table 1       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       PRINT ALL BILLS       SAVE         Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       Image: Split ticket       SAVE       SAVE	Tax       5.26         Total       40.31         WOTE LESCE       WOTE HERE		Latte	2.79							
Total       40.31         MOVE HERE         MOVE HERE         Cassic Cobb Salad       7.59         Classic Cobb Salad       7.59         Case       4.59         Green Apple       3.59         Cartor Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79         Total       14.48         Tax       3.37	Total     40.31       MOVEHERE         C     Split ticket         Table 1     O       I     Table 1-1       I     Careen Apple       I     State       I     Tax       I     Total         Total         I             I <td< td=""><td></td><td>Fruit Salad</td><td>8.49</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>		Fruit Salad	8.49							
MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE       Table 1     ©     I       Classic Cobb Salad     7.59     Cake       Green Apple     3.59     Carrot Fresh     8.00       Latte     2.79     Tax     1.89       Fruit Salad     8.49     Total     14.48	MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE       C     Split ticket       PRINT ALLBULS     Q       Table 1     Image: Classic Cobb Salad     7.59       Classic Cobb Salad     7.59       Classic Cobb Salad     7.59       Classic Cobb Salad     7.59       Caroot Fresh     8.00       Latte     2.79       Tax     1.89       Tax     3.37       Total     25.83		Тах	5.26							
★ Split ticket       PHOT ALL DILLS       Same         Table 1 <ul> <li></li></ul>	C     Split ticket     PRICT ALL GULL     Split ticket       Table 1 <ul> <li>I</li> <li>Classic Cobb Salad</li> <li>759</li> <li>Cake</li> <li>459</li> <li>Carot Fresh</li> <li>8.00</li> </ul> Latte     2.79     Tax     1.89           Fruit Salad         8.49         Total         14.48           Tax         3.37         Total         25.83           MOVE HESE         MOVE HESE         MOVE HESE         MOVE HESE		Total	40.31							
Split ticket     PRINT ALL BILLS     BAX       Table 1     Image: Split ticket     Image:	C     Split ticket     PRINT ALL DRULS     Split ticket     Table 1     Image: Split ticket     Image: Split ticket										
Table 1     Image: Second	Table 1       Image: Table 1 - 1 <th -="" 1="" 1<="" <="" image:="" table="" td=""><td>C</td><td>MOVE HERE</td><td></td><td></td><td>MOVE HER</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></th>	<td>C</td> <td>MOVE HERE</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>MOVE HER</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	C	MOVE HERE			MOVE HER				
Classic Cobb Salad     7.59     Cake     4.59       Green Apple     3.59     Carot Fresh     8.00       Latte     2.79     Tax     1.89       Fruit Salad     8.49     Total     14.48       Tax     3.37     Tax     1.89	Classic Cobb Salad       7.59       Cake       4.59         Green Apple       3.59       Carrot Fresh       8.00         Latte       2.79       Tax       1.89         Fruit Salad       8.49       Total       14.48         Tax       3.37       Total       25.83         MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE       MOVE HERE	+	Split ticket						PRINT ALL BILLS	SAV	
Green Apple     3.59     Carrot Fresh     8.00       Latte     2.79     Tax     1.89       Fruit Salad     8.49     Total     14.48       Tax     3.37	Green Apple 3.59 Carrot Fresh 8.00 Latte 2.79 Tax 1.89 Fruit Salad 8.49 Tax 3.37 Total 25.83	Tabl	e 1	⊕ :	Table	1 - 1	<b>()</b>				
Latte         2.79         Tax         1.89           Fruit Salad         8.49         Total         14.48           Tax         3.37         1.89         14.48	Latte     2.79       Fruit Salad     8.49       Tax     3.37       Total     14.48		Classic Cobb Salad	7.59		Cake	4.59				
Fruit Salad         8.49         Total         14.48           Tax         3.37         14.48         14.48	Image: Work Heat       More Heat		Green Apple	3.59		Carrot Fresh	8.00				
Fruit Salad         8.49         Total         14.48           Tax         3.37	Fruit Salad     8.49       Tax     3.37       Total     25.83   Move Hanc Move Hanc		Latte	2.79		Tax	1.89				
Tax 3.37	Tax         3.37           Total         25.83           MOVE HERE         MOVE HERE		Fruit Salad	8.49		Total	14.48				
Total 25.83 MOVE HERE MOVE HERE	MOVE HERE			3.37							
MOVE HERE MOVE HERE	MOVE HERE MOVE HERE MOVE HERE MOVE HERE MOVE HERE MOVE HERE MOVE HERE		Total	25.83							
	Read room People		MOVE HERE			MOVE HERI					
Rendang DRINKS LUNCHES DESSERTS FRUITS PIZZA				DESSERTS	FRU	ITS PIZZ		OP		_	
	Note			DESSERTS	FRU	ITS PIZZ		OPI		_	

Now you'll see the 'Split ticket' screen with the original ticket on the left side and the new ticket on the right. Tap to select the items that you want to move and click the button 'Move here' on the new ticket.

Tap the ' $\oplus$ ' to add a new additional ticket, if needed. Newly split tickets are ordered numerically (1, 2, 3, etc.). You can create up to 20 tickets. Add items to each new ticket, then press the 'Save' button to save your tickets. Tickets without items will not be saved.

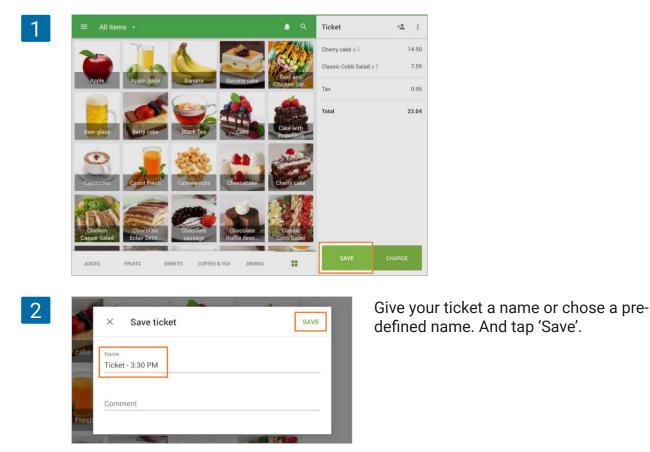
Now you can work with your split open tickets as usual. You can find new open tickets by clicking the 'Open tickets' button on the sale screen.

- All modifiers, comments, discounts, and taxes applied to each individual items will move to another ticket, together with their items.
- 'Percentage' discounts applied to the whole original ticket will be applied to all new tickets. You can move the 'Amount' discounts applied to the whole original ticket to any ticket, in the same way you move items.

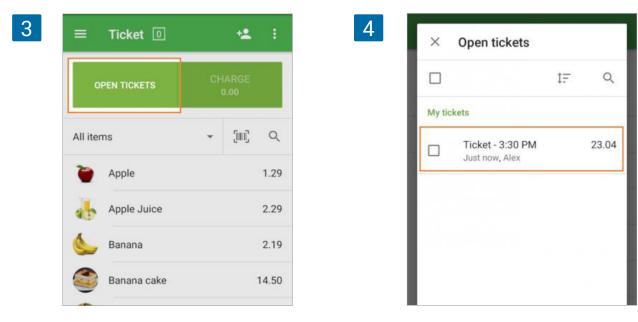
Table 1	⊕ :	Table 1 - 🔪 Edit ticke		
Classic Cobb Salad	7.59	🗆 Ca 👼 Print bill		
Green Apple	3.59	Carrot Fresh	8.00	
Latte	2.79	Тах	1.89	
Fruit Salad	8.49	Total	14.48	
Tax	3.37			
Total	25.83			

If you have a printer connected, at the 'Split ticket' screen, you can print a bill for each ticket or bills for all tickets. The 'Open tickets' option should be activated in your **Back Office** (see **Open Tickets** setup).

Add items to the ticket. Tap the 'Save' button to save the open ticket.

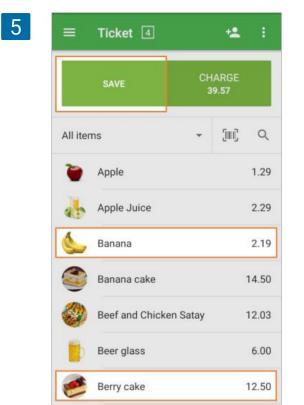


The list of open tickets can be seen on any POS device in the same shop and can be changed or closed.



Open the saved ticket on another device.

If necessary, you can add other items to the ticket.



Cherry cake x 1	14.5
Classic Cobb Salad x 1	7.5
Banana x 1	2.1
Berry cake x 1	12.5
Tax	2.7
Total	39.5
SAVE	CHARGE

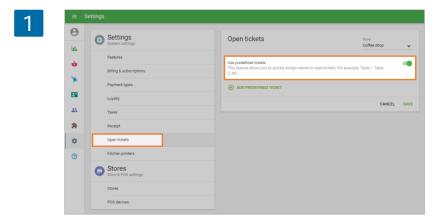
# 2.14 How to Use Predefined Open Tickets to Name Tables

This feature allows you to quickly assign names to open tickets. For example, Table 1, Table 2, etc.

Please be sure that the Open tickets option is activated in the Back Office.

### 2.14.1 Configuration

Login to the Back Office, click on the 'Open tickets' button in the Settings menu. Switch on the 'Use predefined tickets' slider.



Click on 'Charge' to complete the sale.

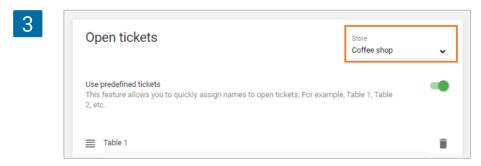
6

You can create a new open ticket by clicking on the 'Add predefined ticket' button and name it, for example, Table 1, Table 2, etc.

Open tickets	Store Coffee shop
Use predefined tickets This feature allows you to quickly assign nam 2, etc.	es to open tickets. For example, Table 1, Table
Table 1	
Table 2	
Table 3	
Table	
ADD PREDEFINED TICKET	

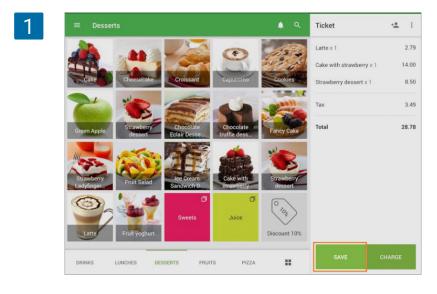
Don't forget to save changes.

If you have multiple stores, you can make a separate set of tickets for each one. To do this, choose the store from the drop-down list.



### 2.14.2 Creating Open Tickets

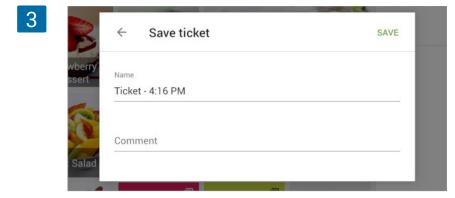
During sales, in the Loyverse POS app, when your ticket is formed, click on the 'Save' button.



On the next screen, you will see the list of predefined ticket names. If you choose one, the ticket will be saved with the chosen name. The list does not show already occupied predefined tickets.

2	≡ Desse	× Save ticket	*2. :
	Alla	Q. Search	2.79
	THE.	CUSTOM TICKET	14.00
	Cake	Table 1	8.50
	The	Table 2	3.49
	Green Apple	Table 3	28.78
		Table 4	
	133	Table 5	
	Strawberry Ladyfinger.		

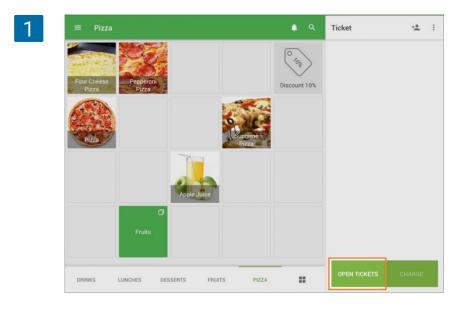
You can also choose 'Custom ticket' instead of predefined one; just fill in its Name and Comment fields and tap 'Save'.



### 2.14.3 Editing Open Tickets

You can edit, split, or move saved predefined open tickets.

Click on the button 'Open tickets' to access the list of active open tickets.



Split, or spl	3	۹	Table 1	Î	Void ticket		the t
Image: Second content of the second			Chocolate	ē	Print bill	sp	π, ο
Image: Solution of the same as regular ticket with Loyverse POS).         Solution of the same and regular ticket (How to Merge Open Ticket)		20		-	Edit ticket		
Image: Split ticket         Tax         Total         Open cash drawer         Sync         Image: Sync <td< th=""><td>Black</td><td>Tea</td><td></td><td>→<b>●</b></td><td>Assign ticket</td><td></td><td></td></td<>	Black	Tea		→ <b>●</b>	Assign ticket		
4       Move ticket         Image: Total       Open cash drawer         Image: Sync       Sync         Image: Sync       Save         Image: Sync <t< th=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>5*</td><td>Split ticket</td><td></td><td></td></t<>				5*	Split ticket		
4       Freesecoake       Sync         4       Freesecoake       Save         5       Sync       Save         1       Save       Save         1       Comment       Convert TO CUSTOM TICKET         1       Convert TO CUSTOM TICKET       Save         1       Convert TO CUSTOM TICKET       Save         1       Splitting predefined tickets works the same as regular         1       Splitting predefined tickets works the same as regular         1       Sut instead of merging ticket (How to Merge Open T			Tax		Move ticket		
4 The sync The sync The second	hees	ecake	Total	6	Open cash drawer		
Splitting predefined tickets works the same as regula Ticket with Loyverse POS). But instead of merging ticket (How to Merge Open T		-		£3	Sync		
		Comm	ent				
	Splitting p <u>Ticket wit</u> But instea tickets has tom one. (	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Choos	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic e your de	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke keť	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u>	<u>ge Ope</u> in mov id tap	en Ti ve yo 'Mo
	Splitting p <u>Ficket with</u> But instea ickets has com one. (	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Choos	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic ve your de	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke ket' estir	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u> option. You ca	ge Ope in mov nd tap	en Ti ve yo 'Mo
NAME AMOUNT TIME EMPLOYEE Q Tx1 12	Splitting p <u>Ticket wit</u> But instea tickets has tom one. (	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Choos	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic e your de	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke ket' estir	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u> option. You ca	ge Ope in mov nd tap	én Ti ve yc 'Mo
Apple AMOUNT TIME EMPLOYEE Q Tx1 12 Mytickets S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S	Splitting p <u>Ticket with</u> But instea tickets has tom one. ( 5	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Choos	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic e your de Move to	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke ket' estir	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u> option. You ca nation ticket ar	ge Ope in mov nd tap	én Ti ve yc 'Mo
NAME     AMOUNT     TIME     EMPLOYEE     Q     T x 1     12       Apple     O     Table 2     Alex     16.42     14.1     18       O     Table 3     Alex     16.42     15.77     4	Splitting p Ticket with But instea tickets has tom one. ( 5 5	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Choos liter ×	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic e your de Move to AMOUNT TIME Table 2 minute ago	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke ket' estir	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u> option. You ca nation ticket ar	n mov nd tap	én Ti ve yc 'Mo
NAME     AMOUNT     TIME     EMPLOYEE     Q     T.c.1     12       My tickets     O     Table 2     Alex     16.42     T.x.1     3       O     Table 3     Alex     15.77     4	Splitting p Ticket with But instea tickets has tom one. ( 5 5	redefi h Loyv d of n s the ' Chooss Iter ×	ned ticke verse PO nerging t Move tic te your de Move to Table 2 minute ago Table 3 minute ago	ets v <u>S</u> ). icke ket' estir	vorks the same t ( <u>How to Mer</u> option. You ca nation ticket ar	n mov nd tap	én Ti ve yc 'Mo

2

Open tickets

Table 1 less than a minute ago

Table 2

Table 3 less than a minute ago

NAME AMOUNT TIME EMPLOYEE

Alex

Alex

Alex

×

My tickets

Tap the ticket from the list to edit.

-

Q

33.06

16.42

15.77

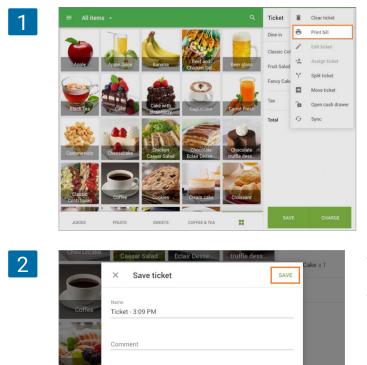
hree-dot menu, you can choose edit, move ticket.

> By editing, you can add or change the comment to the ticket or convert it to a custom one.

r open tickets (<u>How to Split an Open</u>

<u>ckets with Loyverse POS</u>), predefined our ticket to other predefined or a cus-∕e′.

The bill printing option works when the <u>'Open tickets'</u> function is activated in the Features section of Settings in the Back Office. Also, make sure the receipt printer is paired with your Loyverse POS (<u>How to Set Up Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS</u>).



While selling on the mobile application, once you have formed a ticket, in the top right corner, press the three dots and select the 'Print bill' button from the dropdown menu.

The system will allow you to edit the name of the ticket and add a comment. The bill will be printed after you tap the 'Save' button.

If you have the predefined ticket functionality on, you have to select one from the predefined ticket list. After this, the ticket will be saved with the chosen name, and the bill will be printed.



+ <u>*</u> :
 7.59
8.49
4.69
2.08
22.85

4

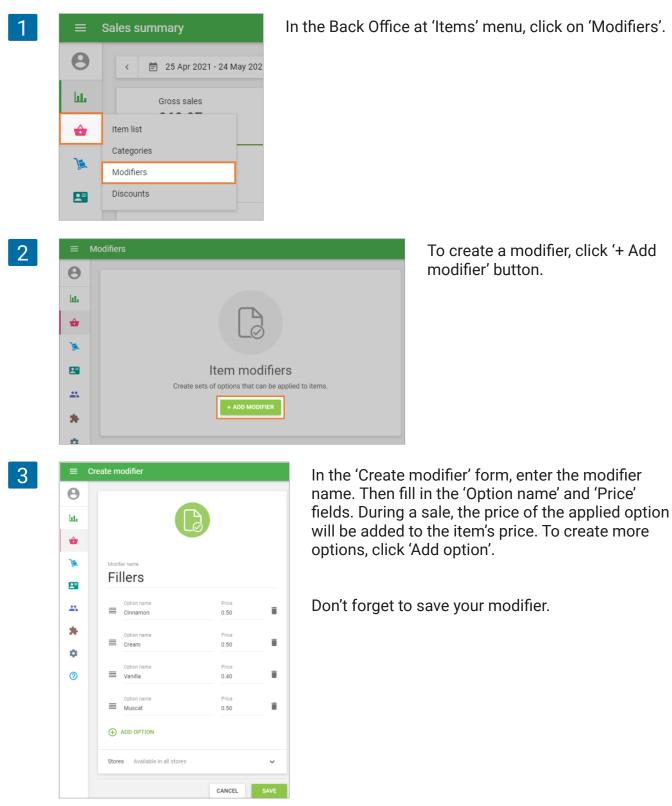
We Love Coffee	əll
BILL	
Order: Ticket - 3:09 PM Cashier: Louis POS: POS 07	
Classic Cobb Salad 1 x 7.59	7.59
Fruit Salad 1 x 8.49	8.49
Fancy Cake 1 x 4.69	4.69
Amount due	20.77
Eat in Tax, 10%	1.12

There are some differences between the look of the bill and the receipt:

- The Bill has the title BILL at the top, while the receipt does not have it
- The bill does not have a number, which is on the bottom of the receipt
- The bill has the "Amount due" line as a summarizing amount of items, while the receipt has "Total"
- The bill does not have the type of payment line as the receipt

The modifier is a set of options that can be applied to the items. They help to sell the same item with different options, such as fillings or toppings. With proper application, modifiers will simplify and accelerate the sales process, as well as provide information about which options are most often selected by clients.

#### 2.16.1 Creation and set-up of modifier



Now you have to assign modifiers to each item.

In the Back Office, go to the 'Item list' and open the necessary item to edit. Find the Modifiers section. Activate those modifiers which you want to apply to this item when selling.

4	Modifiers	
	Addon Available in all stores	
	Coffee addons Available in all stores	
	Fillers Available in all stores	•

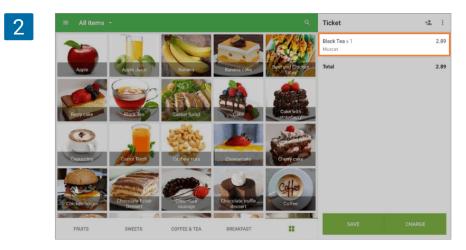
Click 'Save'.

#### 2.16.2 Sales and reports

When selling from your mobile application, select the item with the modifier. A dialog box will open. Choose the modifier you want to add to the item and tap 'Save'.

To	Fillers			
a	Cinnamon	0.50	Cream	0.50
Apple	Jd Vanilla	0.40	Muscat	0.50
1	Quantity			
Black			t.	+
	Comment			
Carrot	Fr Enter comment			
100	Discounts			

An item with the selected options will appear on the ticket.



Then continue all the same steps as in usual checkout process. Taxes and discounts on the goods are already calculated taking into account the modifiers added to them.

2	≡	≡ Sales by modifier								
3	Θ	< 🗄 25 Apr 2021 - 24 May 2021 > 🔘 All day	★ All stores      ★ All employees      ★	0000 0000 00000 0000 0.50 0.50 0.50 0.50						
	ш	EXPORT								
	ŵ	Modifier	Quantity sold	Gross sales						
	×	(b) Addon	1	0.50						
	-	Creem	1	0.50						
	45	Fillers	1	0.50						
	*	Muscat	1	0.50						
	۵		к <u>10 т</u>							

_ ■ №	lodifiers	
Θ	Store	
bb.	+ ADD MODIFIER All stores	~
ŵ	Modifier	
1	Creem	≡
<b>1</b>	Coffee addons Milk, Sugar, Cinamon	≡
*	Fillers     Cinnamon, Cream, Vanilla, Muscat	≡
	<ul> <li>Ø</li> <li>i⊥</li> <li>ŵ</li> <li>∞</li> <li>∞</li> </ul>	ADD MODIFIER     All stores     All stores     All stores     All stores

Modifiers do not have 'Track stock' option, but you can check the consumption of modifiers in the Report section. Reports about modifiers can be found in the Back Office at the 'Reports' menu and 'Sales by modifier' section.

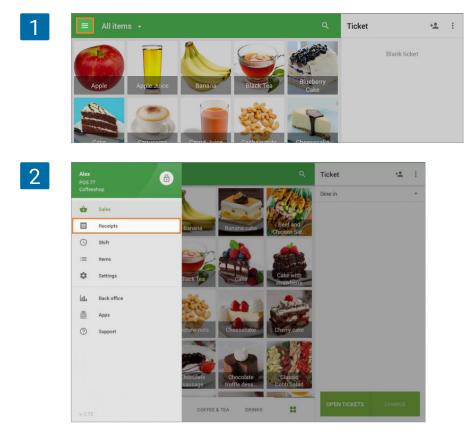
You can change the order of modifiers at the sale screen by clicking and dragging the four line pictogram in the Back Office.

#### Note

You can change the order of modifiers only when All stores are selected.

## 2.17 How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS

To issue a refund on the Loyverse POS app, go to the receipts list by tapping the 'Receipts' button in the POS menu.



4

5

6

C Enter rece				8.20		
aturday, 30 De a.20	#1-1008			Total		
- 11:33 AM			shier: Owner een Tea		2.50	
2.60 11:20 AM	#1-1007	1 x	2.50 anuts		2.50	
1.20 11:20 AM	#1-1006	1 x Blu	2.60 Jeberry Cake		3.10	
6.45	#1-1005	1 x	3.10		8.20	
riday, 29 Decer	nber 2017	Tol Ca	sh		8.20 10.00	
5.49 2:55 PM	#1-1004	12.	/30/17, 11:33	3 AM	#1-1008	
	Refund #1-1003					-
● 4.29	11003					
← Refun	d					
, nerun						
	Receipt #1-1008			Refund receipt		
	Tap items to refund	No. 10		Tap items to put back		
	Blueberry Cake x 1	3.10				
	Green Tea x 1 Peanuts x 1	2.50				
	Total	8.20	1			
		0.20	$\rightarrow$			
	Refund x 1 Total	8.20	÷	REFUND 2.60		
	ots	#1-1009			Refund #1-1008	REFUND
<b>≡ Recei</b> g Q. Enter rece	ipt number			2.60		
Q Enter rece aturday, 30 De				Total		
Q Enter rece		Ca	shier. Owner			
Q Enter rece aturday, 30 De #3 2.60	cember 2017 #1-1009	Pe	shier. Owner anuts 2.60		2.60	
Q         Enter rece           aturday, 30 De         2.60           11:36 AM         11:33 AM           2         2.60	cember 2017 #1-1009 Refund	Pe 1 x Tot	anuts 2.60 tal		2.60	
Q         Enter rece           aturday, 30 De           2           2           11:35 AM           2           8.20           11:33 AM           2           2           11:32 AM	#1-1009 #1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1007	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal			
Q         Enter rece           aturday, 30 De           aturday, 30 De           11:36 AM           2.60           11:33 AM           2.60           11:20 AM           11:20 AM	cember 2017 #1-1009 Refund #1-1008	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
Q         Enter rece           aturday, 30 De           2.60           11:35 AM           2.60           11:33 AM           2.60           11:20 AM           2.120	#1-1009 #1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1007	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
Q.         Enter rece           aturday, 30 De         2.60           2         2.60           11:36 AM         11:36 AM           2         8.20           11:33 AM         2.60           2         2.60           11:20 AM         11:20 AM           2         6.45	#1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1008 #1-1006 #1-1006	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
Q.         Enter recentation           attraction         2.60           11.35 AM         11.35 AM           attraction         2.60           11.20 AM         11.20 AM           attraction         1.20 AM           attraction         1.20 AM           attraction         1.20 AM	#1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1008 #1-1006 #1-1006	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
<ul> <li>Enterrecta</li> <li>Enterrecta</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.36 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.33 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.33 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.33 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.20 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.20 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.20 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>11.20 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> /ul>	eember 2017 #1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1006 #1-1006 #1-1005 mber 2017 #1-1004	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
<ul> <li>Enterrecta</li> <li>Enterecta</li></ul>	Ceember 2017 #1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1006 #1-1006 #1-1006 #1-1004 #1-1004 #1-1004	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	
<ul> <li>Enterrecta</li> <li>Enterrecta</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.36 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.33 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.133 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.133 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.134 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.134 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.135 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> <li>1.134 AM</li> <li>2.60</li> /ul>	eember 2017 #1-1009 #1-1008 #1-1007 #1-1006 #1-1006 mber 2017 #1-1004	Pe 1 x Tol Ca	anuts 2.60 tal sh		<b>2.60</b> 2.60	

From the list of receipts, choose the one that needs to be refunded. Then tap the 'Refund' button.

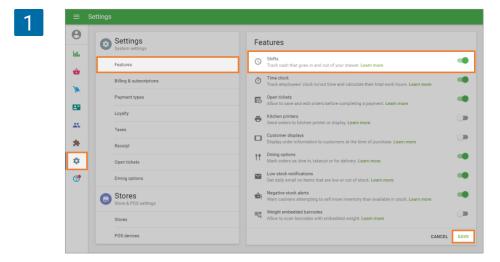
Tap the item to be refunded from the receipt on the left side, and it will appear on the 'Refund receipt' on the right.

Then tap the 'Refund' button at the bottom.

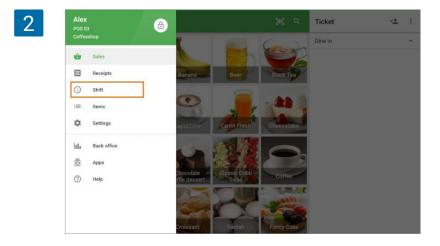
n the receipt list, the refunded receipts vill be marked in red text.

You can issue a refund only when the device is connected to the Internet. The stock of the refunded items will be increased by the quantity that has been refunded. You can process a refund of the receipts issued on other POS from the same store. In order to use the 'Shifts' feature, log in to your **Back Office** and go to the Settings.

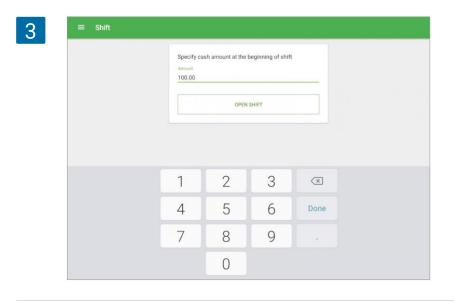
Switch on 'Shifts' option in the Features section. Click the 'Save' button.



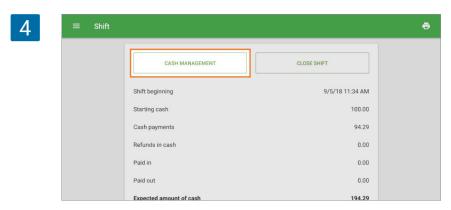
On the Loyverse POS app, go to the 'Shift' menu.



Specify the cash amount at the beginning of the shift and tap the 'Open shift' button.



For cash management during the shift, go to the 'Shift' menu and tap the 'Cash management' button.



Let's say we want to pay in one dollar into the cash drawer and later pay out two dollars.

Enter the amount and tap the 'Pay In' button if you put money into the cashier without a purchase.

5	← Cash management	
	Amount 1.00 Comment PAY IN PAY OUT	

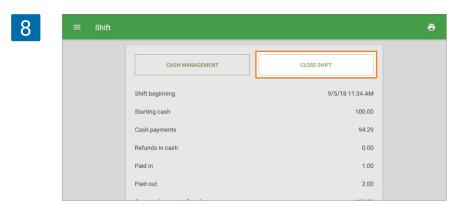
Tap the 'Pay Out' button if you want to take money out from the cashier.

6	← Cash management	
	Amount 2.00 Comment PAY IN PAY OUT	
	Pay in/Pay out	
	11:36 AM Alex 1.00	

All of the cash management histories will be recorded from the 'Pay in' and 'Pay Out' buttons.

Amount	
Comment	
PAY IN PAY OUT	
Pay in/Pay out	

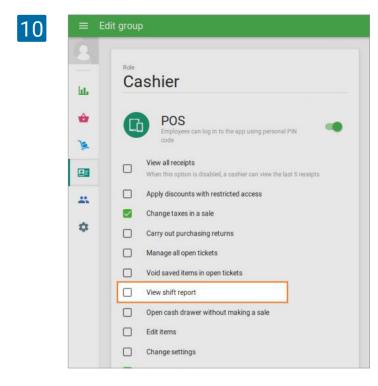
At the end of the day when you close the shift, go to the 'Shift' menu and tap the 'Close shift' button.



You can see a closed shift form. 'Expected amount of cash' is calculated from sales, refunds, and cash paid in/out during the shift. If you enter your 'Actual cash amount', you can see the difference between them. Tap 'Close shift' to finish the shift.

9	≡ Shift	× Close shift		Ð	e
		Expected cash amount	217.00		
		Actual cash amount	217.00		
		Difference	0.00		
		Print report			
		CLOSE SHIFT			

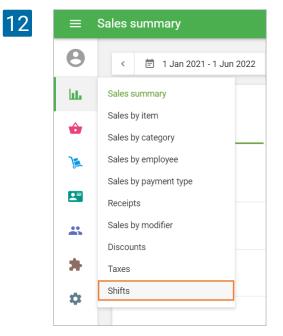
If you want to hide the 'Expected cash amount' from your cashiers, you can restrict their access rights. To do this, go to the 'Access rights' menu in the Back Office and open the 'Cashier' user group for editing. Deselect the 'View shift report' option.



Don't forget to save changes.

After that, when your cashiers are closing the shift, they can only see the field to enter the 'Actual cash amount.'





Shift reports you can find in the Reports menu of the Back office.

Each shift has a row with the name of the POS, Opening and Closing time, Expected cash amount, Actual cash amount, and the difference between Expected and Actual cash amount.

=	Shifts						
θ	< 📄 1 Jan 2021 - 20 Jun 2022	> All stores -					
hi.	EXPORT +						
ŵ	POS	Opening time	Closing time	Expected cash amount	Actual cash amount	Difference	
<u>}</u>	POS 1	27 May 2022, 10:59	27 May 2022, 11:00	\$700.00	\$12.34	-\$687.66	4
-	POS 1	27 May 2022, 10:57	27 May 2022, 10:59	\$114.34	\$34.44	-\$79.90	A
*	POS 1	5 May 2022, 15:40	27 May 2022, 10:57	\$5.00	\$123.45	\$118.45	A
*	POS 1	10 Dec 2021, 16:28	5 May 2022, 15:40	\$412.82	\$412.82	-	~
\$	POS	20 Jan 2022, 19:17	20 Jan 2022, 19:18	\$13.56	\$13.00	-\$0,56	A

By clicking on the shift row you see the detailed information about the specific shift.

≡ s	hifts				
Θ	< 🖹 1 Jan 2021 - 20 Jun	2022 > En All stores -			SHIFT REPORT
ht.	EXPORT 👻			Shift number: 4	
ŵ	POS	Opening time	Closing time	E: Store: Coffee Sh POS: POS 1	пор
٦.	POS 1	27 May 2022, 10:59	27 May 2022, 11:00	Shift opened: Al \$ Shift closed: Ali	
-	POS 1	27 May 2022, 10:57	27 May 2022, 10:59	\$ Cash drawer	
*	POS 1	5 May 2022, 15:40	27 May 2022, 10:57	Starting cash Cash payments	\$100.0 \$17.6
*	POS 1	10 Dec 2021, 16:28	5 May 2022, 15:40	Cash refunds \$ Paid in	\$0.0 \$1.2
۰	POS	20 Jan 2022, 19:17	20 Jan 2022, 19:18	Paid out Expected cash a	\$4.5 amount \$114.3
0	POS	14 Dec 2021, 17:05	20 Jan 2022, 19:16	Actual cash am	
	POS 6	15 Jan 2022, 16:42	15 Jan 2022, 16:45	\$ Sales summary	
	POS 6	15 Jan 2022, 16:41	15 Jan 2022, 16:41	Gross sales Refunds	\$14.7 \$0.0

You can export a basic Shift summary report or Pay ins and payouts report to see the cash management history.

15	≡	Shifts				
	Θ	< 🖹 1 Jan 2021 - 20 Jun 2022	>	🖬 All stores 👻		
	հե	Shifts summary				
	ŵ	Pay ins and payouts	Opening time			
)a		POS 1	27	May 2022, 10:59		
		POS 1	27	May 2022, 10:57		

# 2.19 Dining Options

Dining options allow you to note whether customers are dining in, taking their order out, or requesting delivery.

## 2.19.1 Configuration of Dining Options

Login to the <u>Back office</u>, navigate to the Settings menu, Features section, and switch the 'Dining options' slider on.

Θ		
0	Settings System settings	Features
lut.		O Shifts
÷	Features	- mack cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more
	Billing & subscriptions	Time clock     Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn more
æ	Payment types	Open tickets Allow to save and edit orders before completing a payment. Learn more
-	Loyalty	E Kitchen printers
25	Taxes	<ul> <li>Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more</li> </ul>
\$	Receipt	Customer displays Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more
0	Open tickets	Dining options Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more
	Kitchen printers	Low stock notifications Get Gally email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more
	Dining options	Negative stock alerts Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn more
	Stores Store & POS settings	Weight embedded barcodes Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more
	Stores	CANCEL
	POS devices	

Don't forget to save changes.

After that in the Settings menu 'Dining option' section appears. There are default presets for three of the most common types of options: 'Dine in', 'Takeout' and 'Delivery'.

0	≡ 8	Settings					
2	Θ	0	Settings	+ ADD DINING OPTION		Store	
	hi.		System settings	+ ADD DINING OPTION		Coffee shop	~
	÷		Features	Coffee shop			
	1		Billing & subscriptions	Name	Available		
			Payment types	Dine in		Default dining option	=
			Loyalty	Takeout			=
	*		Taxes	Delivery			-
	*		Receipt				
	•		Kitchen printers				
	0		Dining options				
		G	Stores Store & POS settings				

You can edit these options by clicking on them or create new by clicking on 'Add dining option' button.



Don't forget to save changes.

Click and drag four line pictogram to change an order of the options. The first option will be used by default.

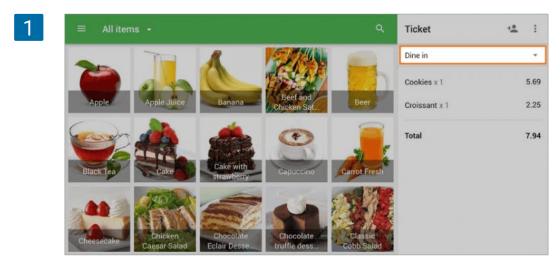
	+ ADD DINING OPTION			
	Name	Available		
_	Dine in		Default dining option	
-	Takeout			
	Catering			
	Delivery			

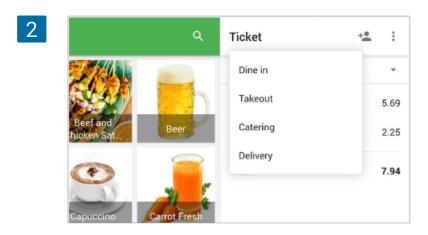
If you have multiple stores, you can manage the dining options for each store.

+ ADD DINING OPTION		Store All stores	2
The Coffee			
Name	Available		
Dine in		Default dining option	≡
Takeout			≡
Delivery			≡
The Coffee 2			
Name	Available		
Dine in		Default dining option	≡
Takeout			≡
Delivery			$\equiv$

## 2.19.2 Using Dining Options during Sale

During sales at the ticket, you can see dining options line with the default option.





If you tap on this line, you can see the drop-down menu with all dining options. Choose needed one.

Dining options will be shown on the printed receipt.

The Coffee 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, United												
	-	ate										
Cashier: Alex												
POS: POS77												
Dine in		-		-	-		-	-	-		-	
		-		-	-		-	-	-		-	
Cookies											5.	69
1 x 5.69												
Croissant											2	25
1 x 2.25												
		-		-	-		-	-	-		-	
TOTAL											7.9	
Sales Tax 15%											1.	04
Card											7.	94
		-		-	-		-	-	-		-	
10/25/17, 10:18 4	M								4	#8-	10	94

As well as at the bill if you print one.

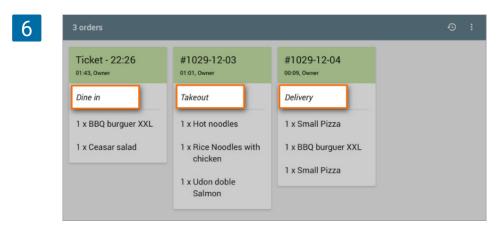
Dining option will be shown in the e-receipt, sent to customers email.

	Coffe	
10/25/17 2:58 AM		Nº 8-1087
	TOTAL	
	7.94	
21 Avenu	The Coffee e, Brooklyn, New York, NY, U	nited States
Cashler: Alex POS: POS77		
Dine in		
Cookies		5.69
1 x 5.69		
Croissant		2.25
1 x 2.25		
Total		7.94
Sales Tax	15%	1.04
Cash		7.94
10/25/17 2:58 AM		N≈8-1087

You can see dining option line in the receipts information at the <u>Back Office</u> or Loyverese POS app.

5	≡	Receipts						
	Θ	< 🖾 11 Ja	n 2021 - 9 Feb 2021 >	🕓 All day 👻	🖶 All stores 👻	All employ	×	
	bb.		All receipts			Sales	14.00	)
	ŵ		13		F	12	Total	
	7						Cashier: Louis POS: POS 01	
	-	EXPORT ¥					Takeout	
		Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Cake with strawberry 1 × 14.00	14.00
	*	8-1610	21 Jan 2021 16:17	Coffee shop	Louis	-	Total	<b>14.00</b>
	*	8-1609	21 Jan 2021 16:11	Coffee shop	Louis	-	21 Jan 2021 10:40	Nº 11-1427
	\$	11-1428	21 Jan 2021 10:40	Coffee shop	Louis	-		
	0							

Also, dining option information will appear at the receipts information on <u>CDS</u> and at the tickets when using kitchen printers and <u>KDS</u>.

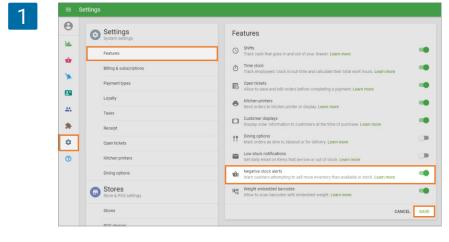


## 2.20 Negative Stock Alerts

Negative stock alerts inform the cashier about an insufficient stock of the item when he/she tries to sell more than what is available. It protects you against a negative stock in <u>your inventory</u>.

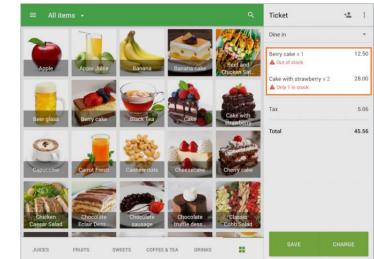
Please be sure that the 'Track stock' option is activated for those items which you want to receive alerts for.

In order to use this feature, log in to your <u>Back Office</u> and go to the Settings.



Switch on 'Negative stock alerts' in the Features section.

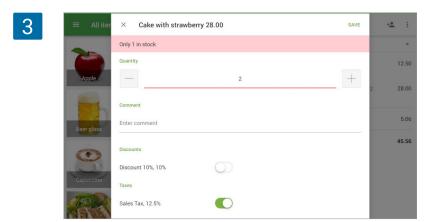
Click the 'Save' button.



With this feature enabled, the system will show an alert about insufficient stock when the quantity of an item in the ticket is more than the current quantity in stock. Also, the system will show you the quantity that is available for sale if the stock of this item is more than 0.

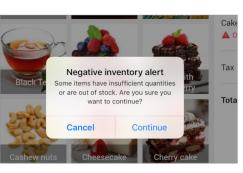
Alerts work for composite items as well.

2



The warning is also displayed in the editing dialog of the item added to the ticket.





Cashiers can reduce the quantity of an item in the ticket and tap the Save button if the stock of the item is more than 0.

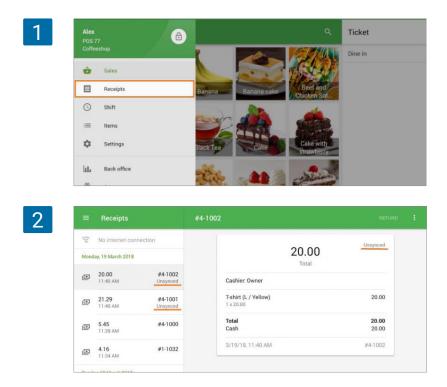
When a cashier taps the Charge button, the system will show a notification one more time.

The cashier can still proceed to sell an item by tapping 'Continue'.

Note

Warnings are displayed only when there is Internet access and are not displayed in offline mode.

# 2.21 Receipts List in the POS



You can go to the receipts list by tapping the 'Receipts' button in the POS menu.

The receipts from all POS of the same store will be displayed in the list. If you want to refresh the receipts list, just swipe it down. Non-synchronized receipts (that are made during the time when there was no Internet connection) will say 'Unsynced'.

If the employee has been disabled the option 'View all receipts' (access rights in the Back office), he/she can view only the last 5 receipts.

Tap on the receipt in the list to see its details.

	2-1008	
¢.		
		)
#2-1008	Cashier. Owner	
#2-1007	<b>Apple</b> 1 x 1.29	1.29
#2-1006 Refund	<b>Total</b> Cash	<b>1.29</b>
	1/24/18, 1:22 PM	#2-1008
#2-1005		
#2-1004		
	#2-1007 #2-1006 Refund #2-1005	#2-1006 #2-1007 #2-1007 #2-1006 Refund #2-1005

To make a refund, tap the 'Refund' button.

≡ Receipts	#2-1008	
Q Enter receipt number		
Wednesday, 24 January 2018	1.29 Total	
1.29 #2-100 1/24/18, 1:22 PM		
- 7.75 #2-100	, Apple	1.29

There are additional actions you can do with the selected receipt under the three dots menu (:) at the upper right-hand corner: 'Print receipt' (if you have connected the receipt printer) and 'Send receipt' by email.

=	Receipts	#2-1008	🖶 Print rece
Q	Enter receipt number		Send rece
Wed	nesday, 24 January 2018	1.29	
D	1.29 #2-1008 1/24/18, 1:22 PM	Cashier. Owner	
8	7.75 #2-1007 1/24/18, 1:16 PM	<b>Apple</b> 1 x 1.29	1.29
٩	<b>56.59 #2-1006</b> 1/24/18, 1:15 PM <b>Refund</b>	Total Cash	<b>1.29</b> 1.29
Tues	day, 16 January 2018	1/24/18, 1:22 PM	#2-1008

If you choose to 'Send receipt', you have to enter the email of the recipient in the pop-up form and tap 'Send'.

22-1006 Refund	SEND
Email	

#### Note

The system does not allow you to make a refund in the absence of Internet connection. The "Refund" button will be inactive.

If you email a receipt when the device is offline, it will be sent after the restoration of the Internet connection.

There will be no search field when you are in offline mode.

The Loyverse POS app works offline. Your device can continue to make sales and work with shifts even when it's not connected to the Internet. However, not all functions are supported offline; such as refunds, new customer registration, adding items, and few other restrictions.

When you make sales in offline mode, all of your receipts are stored locally in the device memory. If you go to the Receipt section you will see the <u>receipts list</u>. The receipts that were made in offline mode are marked as "Unsynced."

14	No internet connection		Unsynce
Mond	ay, 19 March 2018	20.00 Total	)
Ø	20.00 #4-1002 11:40 AM Unsynced	Cashier. Owner	
۵	21.29 #4-1001 11:40 AM Unsynced	<b>T-shirt (L / Yellow)</b> 1 x 20.00	20.00
٥	5.45 #4-1000 11:39 AM	Total Cash	<b>20.0</b> 0 20.00
٥	<b>4.16 #1-1032</b> 11:34 AM	3/19/18, 11:40 AM	#4-100
Sunda	ry, 18 March 2018		
o	21.29 #1-1031 4:39 PM		

Note

- If you <u>sign out</u> while your device has been disconnected from the Internet, you will lose your receipts made in the offline mode. Therefore, before logging out from Loyverse POS, make sure that all of your receipts have been transferred to the Back Office.
- You will not see all the offline sales in the Back Office. After the device restores connection to the Internet, receipts will be automatically synced with Loyverse Back Office.

You can also tap the sync button in the three dots menu to sync data with the Back Office manually. If you do this in offline mode, you will get 'No internet connection' message.

2	م	Ticket	i i	Clear ticket
		Dine in	1	Edit ticket
			→ <b>●</b>	Assign ticket
	Beef and Chicken		57	Split ticket
	Satay			Move ticket
			\$	Sync

Refund button is not active in the offline mode, so you cannot perform refunds.

3 #8-1	574		REFUND	:
	58.03 Total			
74 bed	Cashier: Alex POS: POS 07			
73 sed	Dine in			
72	Chocolate truffle dessert	8.50		

You cannot register new customers or edit the existing customers, but you can add to the ticket recently registered customers.

The <u>open tickets</u> work in offline mode but without <u>synchronization with other devices</u>. Email receipts are sent to customers only after the connection to the Internet is restored.

#### Other restrictions of the offline work

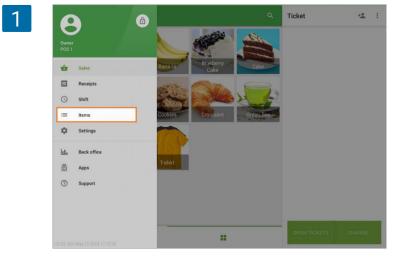
If you have connected integrated card processing terminals they will not work offline. Items stock will not be displayed, as well as negative stock alerts; even if this option is enabled in the Back Office.

# 3. Items



# 3.1 Working with the Items List in the POS

Go to the 'Items' section of the menu.





3

Cake

Sweets Sold by

4.59

10003

Track stock

18

Each

O Weight

=	Items	Apple 14 in stock	1.25
٦	Categories	Apple Juice 39 in stock	2.25
0	Discounts	S5 in stock	2.20
		Blueberry Cake 5 in stock	3.10
		Cake 18 in stock	4.55
		Cheesecake 12 in stock	7.00
		Coffee 200ml	1.60

You will see the items list with the current amount of stock under each item name. Items whose 'Track stock' option is switched off will be displayed with the dash symbol '-'.

To change the quantity in stock, tap on the desired item from the list.

If you choose an item whose stock is not tracked, switch on the 'Track stock' option in the Inventory section. Type the number in the 'In stock' field.

You can also change or enter the number into the 'Cost' field.

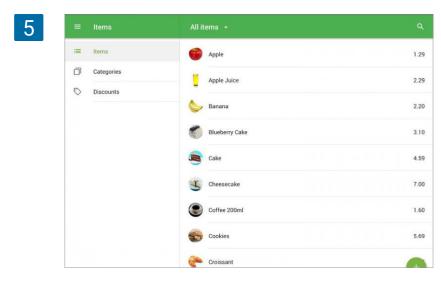
Note

0

If the option 'Track stock' is on for the item and you have active <u>Advanced inventory</u> <u>management subscription</u>, the Cost field will not be active but calculated automatically as the Average cost. For items with variants, you can specify the stock and cost for each variant. In the item list, the sum of in-stock numbers of all variants will be displayed.

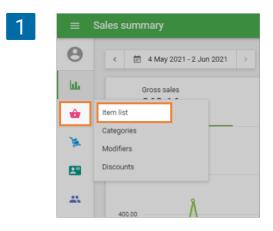
T-shirt					
Cirregory No categories					
Sold by	🖲 Each I	🔿 Weight			
Inventory					
Track stock					
Variants					
Variant	Price	Cost	in stock	SKU	Barcode
S / White	20.00	10.00	19	10010	4584000
S / Black	20.00	10.00	5	10020	4584000
S / Red	20.00	10.00	8	10021	4584000
100000000000000000000000000000000000000	20.00	10.00	16	10022	4584000
S / Yellow	20.00	10.00	8	10023	4584000
S / Yellow M / White	20.00				

In the absence of an Internet connection (offline mode), the stock will not be displayed in the items list.



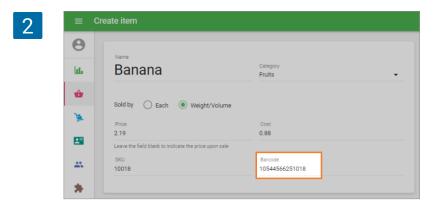
Loyverse POS (Android, iOS) works with barcodes supported by your barcode scanner.

## 3.2.1 How to add item barcode in the Back Office



Go to the 'Item list' menu. Find your item and open it.

Find a barcode on your item and enter it into the Barcode field.



You can avoid manual entry by connecting a barcode scanner to your PC or tablet and simply scanning in the barcodes. Click the Barcode field and then scan the code from the item.

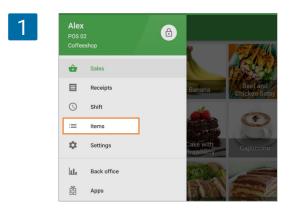
Note

Before scanning the barcode by scanner, make sure to activate the Barcode field by clicking on it.

You can also add barcodes by using the file import feature. Enter the barcodes into the Barcode column, save the file, and proceed to import.

$\mathbf{O}$		A	В	C	D	E	F	G	Н	1	
3	1	SKU	Name	Category	Cost	Price	Available for sale	Sold by weight	Barcode	SKU of included item	Quantity of
	2	1001	Apple Juice	Juice	1.44	2.29	Y	N	10544566251001		
	3	1018	Banana	Fruits	0.88	2.19	Y	N	10544566251018		
	4	1014	Black Tea	Hot Drinks	1.24	2.39	Y	N	10544566251014		
	5	1019	Cake	Sweets	1.59	4.59	Y	N	10544566251019		
	6	10000	Capuccino	Hot Drinks	1.02	1.99	Y	N	7622210286772		
	7	1002	Carrot Fresh	Juice	0.8	4.99	Y	N	10544566251002		
	8	10008	Chicken Caesar Salad	Salads	5.3	8.49	Y	N			
	9	10006	Classic Cobb Salad	Salads	4.12	7.59	Y	N			
	10	10009	Coca Cola	Soft drinks	0.25	1.99	Y	N	8595013621615		
	11	1021	Cookies	Sweets	4.48	5.69	Y	N	10544566251021		
	12	1011	Croissant	Sweets	0.76	4.79	Y	N	10544566251011		
	13	1020	Fancy Cake	Sweets	2	4.69	Y	N	10544566251020		
	14	10010	Fanta	Soft drinks	0.25	1.99	Y	N			
	15	10003	Four Cheese Pizza	Pizza	2.2	4.99	Y	N			
	16	1005	Fruit Salad	Fruits	3.72	8.49	Y	N	10544566251005		
	17	1016	Green Apple	Fruits	0.5		Y	N	10544566251016		
	18	1013	Green Tea	Hot Drinks	0.36	2 39	Y	N	10544566251012		

## 3.2.2 How to add barcodes using Loyverse POS app



Tap the main menu (=) button in the top left corner, then tap Items.

Open the item you want the barcode added to, and key in or scan the barcode into the Barcode field.

Coca Cola	
Category	÷
No category	
Sold by   Each   Weight	
Price Cost	
1.99 0.25	

# 3.3 How to Use Variants of Items

The functionality of Variants allows you to condense the list of Items, simplifying their creation and management. This is a convenient tool to use if some products come in multiple versions, like different sizes or colors.

## 3.3.1 Creation and set-up of Variants

Go to the 'Item list' menu in the Back Office.

1		Sales summary		
	Θ	< 🗐 13 Apr 2021 - 12 May 2021	🕓 All day 👻	All stores - All employees -
	հե	Gross sales	Refunds	Discounts 3.99
	ŵ	Item list	0.00 (0%)	+3.99 (+100%)
	<u>ا</u>	Categories Modifiers		
	2	Discounts		

2	≡ Cre	eate item				
	Θ	Name				
	ш.	T-shirt		Category No category		•
	ŵ					
	)m	Description				
		Sold by 🔘 Each (	) Weight/Volume			
	**	Price 20.00		Cost 10.00		
	*	Leave the field blank to indicar	te the price upon sale			
	<b>*</b>	10006		Barcode		
	Ŭ					
		Inventory				
		Composite item ① Track stock				
		HOLK SIDEK				
		Variants				
		Use variants if an item ha	s different sizes, colors or ot	her options		
		ADD VARIANTS	J			
3	Crea	te options				
		Option name Size	S× M× L×	XL × XXL ×		
	ick sto		<u> </u>			
	•	ADD OPTION				
	aria			CANCEL	SAVE	

Open an already existing item for editing or create a new item. In the 'Variants' section, click on the 'Add variants' button.

Fill in the option name on the left field and the variants for this option on the right field. Press <Enter> button on your keyboard after each variant name to finalize the entry.

If necessary, create another option by clicking on the 'Add option' button. You can create up to 3 different options for each item. Don't forget to save your variants.

4	Create options		
	Option name Size	S× M× L× XL× XXL×	
	Option name Color	White × Black × Red × Yellow ×	
		·	
		CANCEL SAVE	]

The system will form a list of all the possible variants of the item. There is a limit of 200 possible combinations of variants for one item.

The price and cost of the variants are automatically taken from the parent item. SKU is also generated automatically.

For each variant, you can manually correct all the fields: Price, Cost, SKU and add a Barcode.

5	≡ Cr	eate item					
	Θ	Variants					
	bb.	Options: Size / Color					
	ŵ	EDIT OPTIONS					
	<u>)</u>	Variant	Price	Cost	SKU	Barcode	
	-	S / White	20.00	10.00	10093		Î
	*	S / Black	20.00	10.00	10094		Î
	\$	S / Red	20.00	10.00	10095		Î
	0	S / Yellow	20.00	10.00	10096		Î
		M / White	20.00	10.00	10099		Î

If you have several stores, you can set up the price, in stock, and low stock of each variant for each store.

6	≡ Cr	reate item						
	Θ	Stores				Store		
	bb.					Cafe	teria	•
	ŵ	All Available	variants available for sale in Store	all stores Variant	Price	In stock	Low stock	Optimal
	)æ	Available	Cafeteria	S / White	20.00	20	2	stock 8
			Cafeteria	S / Black	20.00	10	2	8
	*		Cafeteria	S / Red	20.00	14	2	8
	\$		Cafeteria	S / Yellow	20.00	10	2	8
	0		Cafeteria	M / White	20.00	5	2	8
		SHOW AL	L VARIANTS					~

Don't forget to save the item.

You can see the item with variants in the item list.

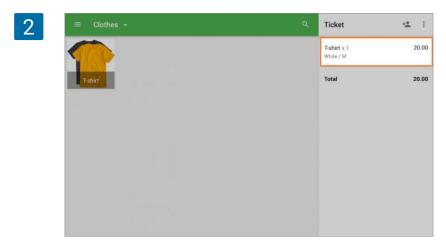
≡ lte	em list					
Θ	+ ADD ITEM IMPORT EXPORT ***	Store All stores	<ul> <li>Category</li> <li>All items</li> </ul>		k alert terns	
ш	Item name	Category	Price	Cost	Margin	In sto
<b>é</b> ) <u>s</u>	Sugar	No category -	Variable	10.00		
-	Supreme Pizza	Pizza -	Variable	3.49		
-	∧ □ T-Shirt	No category •				
*	L / Black		20.00	10.00	50%	
٥	L / Red		20.00	10.00	50%	
0	L / Yellow		20.00	10.00	50%	
	M / Black		20.00	10.00	50%	
	M / Red		20.00	10.00	50%	
	M / White		20.00	10.00	50%	

## 3.3.2 Variants at Sale and Report

When selling from your mobile application, select the item with variants. A dialog box will open. Choose the desired variant of the item and click "Save".

= All ite	× T-shirt 20.00			SAVE	** :
-	Variant				*
	White / S	20.00	White / M	20.00	
Pempek	White / L	20.00	White / XL	20.00	
and the	White / XXL	20.00	Black / S	20.00	
Rendang	Black / M	20.00	Black / L	20.00	
Strawberry	Black / XL	20.00	Black / XXL	20.00	
Ladyfinger	Red / S	20.00	Red / M	20.00	
	Red / L	20.00	Red / XL	20.00	

An item with the selected variant will appear on the ticket.



Then carry out the same steps as you would normally.

You can see the sales of variants in the Back Office in the 'Sales by item' section in the 'Reports' menu."

	Sales by item			
θ	<	🛈 All day 👻 🛃 All	stores 👻 🙏 All employees 👻	
ш	Top 5 items	Net sales	Sales by item chart	Bar 👻 Days
ŵ	T-Shirt	140.00	150.00	
Ja.				
<b>A</b> 2			100.00	
-			50.00	
*			0.00	- 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5 - 5
٥				
0	EXPORT			
	ltem	Category	Cost of goods	Gross pri
	T-Shirt	No category	70.00	70.
	L /Black		20.00	20
	M /White		40.00	40.
	XXL /Red		10.00	10.1

## 3.3.3 Export-Import of Variants

It is easy to create variants of items by adding/editing item in the back office. But you can also import them through a file.

You can use the 'Export' and 'Import' button at the Item list in the back office as usual. However, there are some points you need to keep in mind.

Export your items with variants and open the CSV file.

A	В	C	D	E	F	G	Н	1	
Handle	SKU	Name	Category	Sold by weight	Option 1 name	Option 1 value	Option 2 name	Option 2 value	Opt
t-shirt	10017	T-shirt	Clothes	N	Color	White	Size	S	
t-shirt	10020					White		M	
t-shirt	10027					White		L	
t-shirt	10037					White		XL	· · ·
t-shirt	10038		3			White		XXL	
t-shirt	10039					Black		S	
t-shirt	10040					Black		M	
t-shirt	10041		0	2 <u>1</u>		Black		L	
t-shirt	10042					Black		XL	
t-shirt	10043					Black		XXL	1
t-shirt	10044					Red		S	
t-shirt	10045					Red		M	
t obiet	10046					Ded		1	

You can see that each combination of a variant in the export file is displayed as a separate item with its own SKU.

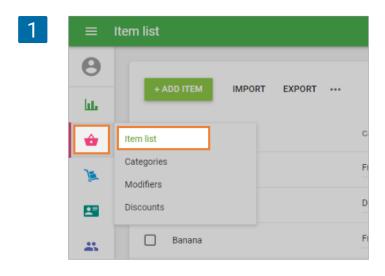
#### The 'Handle' field should be the same for all variants of the same item.

Only the fields of the first item with variants have values. The fields that are common to all variants of the same item are left blank. You may also fill them with the same value, but if they have a different value, you will get an error message when importing.

There are three columns each for 'Option name' and 'Option value'. If some products have less than 3 options of variants, the extra fields are left blank.

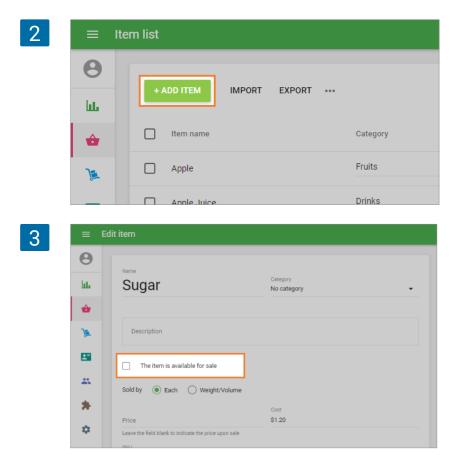
#### Note For items without variants, it is better to leave the 'Handle' field blank in the importing file. In this case, the system will automatically generate the handles for the new items

## 3.4 How to Create a Composite Item



Composite items consist of a number of other items (components).

In the Back Office, go to 'Item list'.



First, you have to create the components of a composite item.

Create them as you would ordinary items by clicking on 'Add Item' button.

Give your item a name. If any component is not sold separately in your store, deselect the check-box 'The item is available for sale', so it will not be seen in the items list during sales.

Fill in the cost field and save the component item.

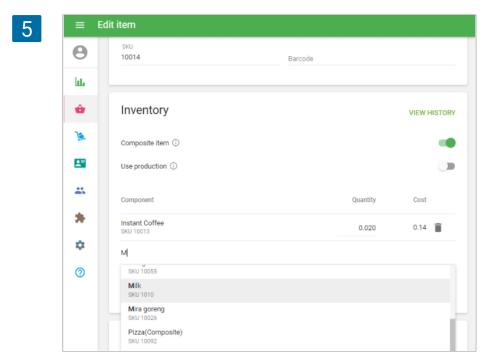
If the 'Track stock' is switched on, then, during the sale of a composed item, the components' stock will be reduced.

After you have all the components, you can create a composite item by clicking on 'Add Item' button again.

Then switch on the 'Composite item' option in the Inventory section.

≡ Edit	t item	
8		
և	Coffe 200ml	Category Drinks 💌
ŵ		
<u>)a</u>	Description	
	The item is available for sale	
	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
*	Price	
•	\$4.00	Cost
~	Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	Calculated as the sum of cost of components
7	SKU 10014	Barcode
	Inventory	
	Composite item ①	

Add components one by one searching for them in the items list.



Specify the quantity field for each component's item.

6	Inventory		VIEW HISTORY
	Composite item		
	Use production		
	Component	Quantity	Cost
	Instant Coffee SKU 10013	0.020	\$0.07
	Milk SKU 10039		Û
	Item search		

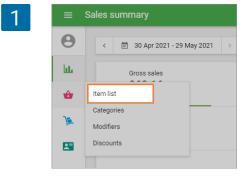
The composite item cost will be calculated based on the quantity and cost of all components.



All other parameters of composite items can be filled in as usual.

Don't forget to save your composite item.

Note The maximum nesting level for composite items is 3. If an item already has a third nesting level, then it is not displayed in the drop-down list when searching for components. Do you want to keep track of products with low stock directly from your back office? And even better — to receive an email notification that the stocks of a product are coming to an end? Loyverse POS gives you such opportunity. Also, activation and the setting up of this function will take no time at all. You should complete just five simple steps.



Go to the 'Item list' menu in the Back Office.

_ = C	reate item	
Θ		
ևե	Name	Category
u.	Sandwich	No category
ŵ		
)a	Description	
	_	
	The item is available for sale	
**	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
*		Cost
•	Price Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	\$0,00
0	SKU	
	10007	Barcode
	Inventory	
	Composite item	
	Track stock	
	In stock	Low stock
	10	2 Item quantity at which you will be notified about low stor

Open the necessary item to edit. Activate the option 'Track inventory', if it has not yet been activated. Under 'In stock', specify the item quantity that you have at the moment. In the field 'Low stock' enter the quantity at which you would like to be notified about the low stock.

#### Note

A record for a composite product is not kept. But you can set this function for each of its components.

Go to the 'Features' section in Settings. The option "Low stock notifications" is activated by default. If you have disabled this before, activate it again. Save your changes.

3	≡	Settings			
5	<b>()</b>	Θ	Settings System settings	Fe	atures
	ŵ		Features	0	Shifts Track cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more
	1		Billing & subscriptions	Ō	Time clock Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn more
			Payment types	Fo	Open tickets Allow to save and edit orders before completing a payment. Learn more
			Loyalty	ē	Kitchen printers Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more
	\$		Taxes Receipt		Customer displays Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more
	0		Open tickets	ΤŤ	Dining options Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more
			Kitchen printers		Low stock notifications Get daily email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more
			Dining options	ŵ	Negative stock alerts Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn more
		G	Stores Store & POS settings	H <sub>k0</sub>	Weight embedded barcodes Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more
			Stores		CANCEL SAVE
			POS devices		

#### Note

Notification of low residue of an item or its complete absence will come to you by email at 10:00 in the time of zone that has been <u>specified in Account Settings</u>. If there are no items with low stock, no notification will be sent to you.

To view the current level of stock is possible without waiting till 10:00 go to "Item list" from the "Items" section. Here you will see the number of stock of each item, in the card of which you have selected the function "Track inventory". If any item stock is low or it is not available at all, then next to the residue you will see a proper notification.

Additionally, you can use the filter "Stock alert" in the top right corner of the screen. Just open it and select the option: "All items", "Low stock" or "Out of stock".

1	≡ Item	list							
e	3								
la la	ь	+ ADD ITEM IMPORT EXPORT ••	*	Store All store	ю	All items	• IA	ockalert I items All items	<u>م</u>
-		Item name	Category		Price	Cost	Margin	low stock Out of stock	
3	<b>A</b>	Apple Apple	Fruits	¥	3.00	1.57	47.67%	138	
B		Apple Juice	Drinks	-	4.99	2.71	45.69%	41	
*	A	🔲 Banana	Fruits	*	Variable	1.57		11	
\$	>	Banana cake	Desserts	*	2.00	2.00	0%	33	
		Beef and Chicken Satay	Meals	•	Variable	9.01		39	
		Berry cake	Desserts		Variable	0.00		3	Low stock (1)
		Black Tea	Hot Drinks	÷	Variable	0.25	-	-	
		Caesar Salad	Salads	-	22.00	5.30	75.91%		

If you want to make batch changes in the inventory of your items you can do it through <u>import/export</u> option. First, export your items at the 'Item list' section. Open your CVS file for editing.

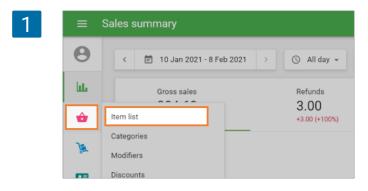
In the 'Track stock,' column of the item set the value of 'Y' if you want to track inventory or 'N' if you don't want. You can also set the number of items in stock in the 'In stock' field and low stock notification number in the 'Low stock' field.

		J	K	L	М	-
d item	Track inventory	Available for sale [The Coffee]	Price [The Coffee]	In stock [The Coffee]	Low stock [The Coffee]	"Moo
	Y	Y	2.29	-7	3	Y
	Y	Y	2.19	99992	4	N
	Y	Y	12	95.5	j 7	N
0.5	N	Y	6			N
	N	Y	2.39			Y
	Y	Y	4.59	-15	1	Y
	N	Y	variable			N
	Y	Y	variable	21	. 5	N
	N	N	variable	R		N

After editing file import it back to the system.

It is easy to create items by adding them in the Back Office. But you can also import them through a CSV file at the Back Office.

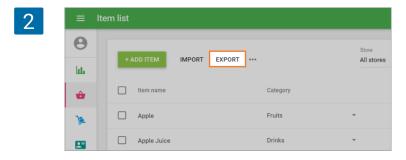
To import your items smoothly and quickly, the correct sheet should be prepared. You can download the template, but the best way is to create sample items in the 'Item list', export them as a CSV file, and add all the rest of the items to the sheet.



Let's start by adding a few sample items in the Back Office. Open 'Item list'.

<u>Add</u> the types of items that you are going to use in your store: composite items, items with variants, or just ordinary items. Fill in the parameters you are going to use with your items: track stock, in stock, low stock notification, price, cost, etc.

Add categories, modifiers, and <u>taxes</u> and apply them to your items. If you have several stores, do not forget to add these stores in the Back Office and set the item's availability for each store.



When you have a list of sample items, you can **export** them. Click on the **'Export**' button.

Open your CSV file (the best way is to open it from Google Sheets, but you can also use other tools). You will see the sheet with your sample items. You can use it to add other items you intend to import. Follow the pattern of your sample items when filling in the fields.

$\mathbf{n}$
-≺
$\mathbf{U}$
<u> </u>

	A	8	C	D	E	F	G	н			K	L	M
1	Handle	SKU	Name	Category	Sold by weight	Option 1 name	Option 1 value	Option 2 name	Option 2 value	Option 3 name	Option 3 value	Cast	Barcode
2	apple juice	1001	Apple Juice	Drinks	N	10 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500 - 500	- 10200 ASSI - 5170			Second Contactor		1.44	10544566251001
3	banaria	1018	Banana	Fruits	N		12					12.12	LVR sde 9012
4	beef-and-chicken-satay	10021	Beet and Chicken Satay	Meals	N							1	9
5	heer	10018	Beer	Drinks	Y		3			8		5	
6	beer-glass	10019	Beer glass	Drinks	Y							3.5	5
7	beer-glass-0.5-l	10010	Beer glass 0.5 L	Drinks	N								SDA-sku-3455
8	black-tea	1014	Black Tea	Hot Drinks	N								10544566251014
9					1000								
10	cake	1019	Cake	Sweets	N							1.61	10544566251019
11	cap	10054	4 Cap	Clothes	N	Color	Black	Size	Big	Fabric	Cotton	5	
	cap	10055	5				Black		Big		Silk	5	5
13	cap	10056	5	1			Black		Small		Cotion	5	5
	cap	10057	1				Black		Small	1	Silk	5	
15	cap	10058	8				White		Big		Cotton	5	
	cap	10059					White		Big		Silk	5	
17	cap	10060	×				White		Small	1	Cotton	5	i (*)
18	cap	10061					White		Small		Slik	5	5
19	capuccing	10000	Capuccino	Hot Drinks	N							1	7622210286772
20	carrot-fresh	1002	Carrot Fresh	Juice	N							0	10544566251002
21	cashew-nuts	10009	Cashew nuts	Fruits	Y							0	
22	cheesecake	10015	Cheesecake	Sweets	N							4.29	
	chicken-caesar-salad	10008	Chicken Caesar Salad	Salads	N							5.3	
	classic-cobb-salad	10006	Classic Cobb Salad	Salads	N		11					4.12	2
	cottee	10014	Coffee	Drinks	N		1.1			12	1	2	2
26	cottee-200ml	10010	Coffee 200ml	Drinks	N		1				-		
27													
28							12						

Note

CSV (comma-separated values) format is where the fields are separated by commas, so avoid commas in your data.

For fields with money value, such as 'Price' and 'Cost', use only numbers — no currency symbols. The decimal separator must be a point.

## 3.6.1 Features of different types of items

There are some specific points you have to pay attention to when adding data for each type of items: ordinary items, composite items, items with variants, and multistore.

#### **Ordinary items**

	Α	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н
1	Handle	SKU	Name	Category	Sold by weight	Option 1 name	Option 1 value	Option 2 nar
2	apple-juice	1001	Apple Juice	Drinks	N			
3	banana	1018	Banana	Fruits	N			
4	beef-and-chicken-satay	10021	Beef and Chicken Satay	Meals	N			
5	black-tea	1014	Black Tea	Hot Drinks	N			
6	capuccino	10000	Capuccino	Hot Drinks	N			
7	carrot-fresh	1002	Carrot Fresh	Juice	N			
8	cashew-nuts	10009	Cashew nuts	Fruits	Y			
9	cheesecake	10015	Cheesecake	Sweets	N			
0	chicken-caesar-salad	10008	Chicken Caesar Salad	Salads	N			
1	classic-cobb-salad	10006	Classic Cobb Salad	Salads	N			
2	coffee	10014	Coffee	Drinks	N			
3	coffee-200ml	10016	Coffee 200ml	Drinks	N			

Ordinary items — items that are not composite and does not have variants. For items without variants, it is better to leave the 'Handle' field blank in the importing file. In this case, the system will automatically generate unique handles for the new items.

'SKU' is an obligatory field and should be unique for each item. The 'Name' is also an obligatory field.

Also, leave the columns of 'Option name' and 'Option value' blank because they are for variants of items.

Leave the column 'SKU of included item' blank because it is only for composite items.

#### Multiple stores

In case of you have multiple stores, you will have the following columns for each store: Available for sale, Price, In stock, and Low stock. Each of the 4 columns will have the store's name in brackets next to it. For example, Available for sale [The Coffee] and Available for sale [Store 2]. So, you can set the values of these parameters for each of your stores.

$\sim$
· /
_

	Q	R	S	Т	U	V	W	X	Y
m	Track stock	Available for sale [The Coffee]	Price [The Coffee]	In stock [The Coffee]	Low stock [The Coffee]	Available for sale [Store 2]	Price [Store 2]	In stock [Store 2]	Low stock [Store 2]
	Y	N	2.29	21	2	N	2.29	10	
	Y	Y	2.19	67	4	Y	2.19	15	
	Y	Y	12.03	48	4	Y	12.03	17	
	N	Y	5.3			Y	5.3		
	Y	Y	8	8	5	Y	8	16	
	Y	N	15	12	0	N	15	14	
	Y	Y	7	57	5	Y	7	65	
	Y	Y	14	14		Y	14	55	
	N	Y	7.59			Y	7.59		
	N	Y	4			Y	4		
0.02		Y	2			Y	2		

#### Items with variants

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	1	J	K	L	
Handle	SKU	Name	Category	Sold by weight	Option 1 name	Option 1 value	Option 2 name	Option 2 value	Option 3 name	Option 3 value	Cost	Bar
t-shirt	1001	7 T-shirt	Clothes	N	Color	White	Size	S			10	)
t-shirt	1002	0				White		M			10	)
t-shirt	1002	7				White		L			10	
t-shirt	1003	7				White		XL			10	
t-shirt	1003	8				White		XXL			10	)
t-shirt	1003	9				Black		S			10	)
t-shirt	1004	0				Black		M			10	
t-shirt	1004	1				Black		L			10	)
t-shirt	1004	2				Black		XL			10	
t-shirt	1004	3				Black		XXL			10	
t-shirt	1004	4				Red		S			10	)
t-shirt	1004	5				Red		M			10	)
t-shirt	1004	6				Red		L			10	
t-shirt	1004	7				Red		XL			10	
t-shirt	1004	8				Red		XXL			10	)
t-shirt	1004	9				Yellow		S			10	)
t-shirt	1005	0				Yellow		M			10	3
t-shirt	1005	1				Yellow		L			10	
t-shirt	1005	2				Yellow		XL			10	
t-shirt	1005	3				Yellow		XXL			10	
cap	1005	4 Cap	Clothes	N	Color	Black	Size	Big	Fabric	Cotton	5	5
cap	1005	5				Black		Big		Silk		5
cap	1005	6				Black		Small		Cotton	5	
cap	1005	7				Black		Small		Silk	5	5
cap	1005	8				White		Big		Cotton	5	5
cap	1005	9				White		Big		Silk	5	5
cap	1006	0				White		Small		Cotton	5	5
	1000					4444.04		Constit		CIII		

You can see that each combination of a <u>variant</u> in the export file is displayed as a separate item with its own SKU. Follow this pattern as a guideline for your items with variants. The 'Handle' field is required for items with variants and it should be the same for all variants of the same item.

Only the fields of the first item with variants have values. The fields that are common to all variants of the same item are left blank. You may also fill them with the same value, but if they have a different value, you will get an error message when importing.

There are three columns each for 'Option name' and 'Option value'. If some products have less than 3 options of variants, the extra fields are left blank.

#### **Composite items**

		A	В	C	D	E	F	G	H	1	J	K	L	М	N	0	P	Q	-
Δ		Handle	SKU	Name	Category	Sold	Optic	Optic	Optic	Optic	Optic	Optic	Defa*	Cost	Barcode	SKU of included item	Quantity of included item	Track stock	Ava
	2	coffee-200ml	10016	Coffee 200ml	Drinks	N							2			10013	0.02		Y
	3				- Constanting											1010	0.05		
	-4															10011	0.02		
	5	cookies	1021	Cookies	Sweets	N							varia	0.75	10544566251021			Y	Y
	6	croissant	1011	Croissant	Sweets	N							varia	1.4	10544566251011			Y	Y
	7	dadiah	10036	Dadiah	Drinks	N							varia	0	3245675991148			N	Y
	8	fancy-cake	1020	Fancy Cake	Sweets	N							varia	2	10544566251020			Y	Y

Each <u>composite item</u> includes several components. Specify SKU codes of all the included items (components) of the selected composite item in the field 'SKU of included item' on a separate row.

'Quantity of included item' - in this field, it's necessary to specify the quantity of the component that is included in one unit of the composite item.

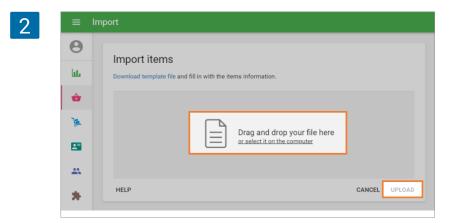
You cannot track stock of composite items, so leave the fields that are related to stocks blank. Also, leave all the other fields of components blank except for the first row.

## 3.6.2 Import of items

1	≡ Ite	em list				
		E	+ ADD ITEM	RT EXPORT		Store The Coff
	di 👘		Item name	Category		с
	ŵ		Apple Juice	Juice	•	1

Click on the 'Import' button.

In the IMPORT menu, choose your CSV file from your computer and click 'Upload'.



If you filled in the table without errors, you will be directed to an import confirmation window. There, you will see information on how many items and categories will be created or edited. Click 'CONFIRM IMPORT'.

You will see a notification message that the list of items has been successfully updated. Click 'OK' and continue your work.

#### Import errors

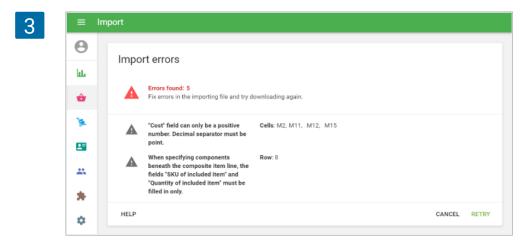
You may be faced with some errors when uploading the completed file. An error message will appear if:

- You changed the file format so that the file you are trying to upload is no longer in CSV format.
- The size of your file exceeds the admissible 5 MB.
- You edited names of columns that should have been left unedited.
- You have more than 10,000 items saved in your file.

In the next stage, you may be faced with import errors. In this case, the window with the corresponding message will open.

The critical errors are marked with a red sign. Each error has its explanation message and the place of the error: row, column, and cell. Fix all critical errors in the file and try to import the file again.

Warning messages have yellow signs. They are just for your information, and they will not stop your file from being imported.



## 3.6.3 The meaning of columns

#### Handle

A handle is an item identifier, which should be unique for each item. The 'Handle' field should be the same for all variants of the same item.

#### SKU

RSKU (Stock Keeping Unit) is a unique code given to each of your items. Specify and fill in each field individually. We recommend using the format '10001', '10002'... etc. but the key point is that no numbers are repeated. One last condition is that the SKU should not exceed 40 characters.

#### Name

Fill in the names of each imported item in this field. You can use letters, digits, spaces, and any special symbols, as long as you use no more than 64 total characters.

#### Category

A category is a group to which an item belongs. For example, if you create the items 'Cherries', 'Apples', and 'Oranges', then you can put them into the 'Fruits' category.

#### Cost

Cost is the amount of money you paid to purchase the item. Here, specify the cost of the items only using digits — no currency symbols. Do not fill in the cost field for composite items. This will be calculated automatically as a sum of costs for each individual component.

#### Price

In this field, fill in the price at which you plan to sell the items. As with the 'Cost' field, enter only digits without currency symbols. If you want to specify the item price during a sale, leave this field empty.

#### **Default price**

This is the default price that is assigned to all stores. But then it can be changed for some stores if some stores have a different price.

If you have the same price in all stores - you can only fill in the Default price column in the CSV file - after import, the same price will automatically be in all stores. And if prices are different in stores, then you need to specify in the CSV file the price for each store. As with the 'Cost' field, enter only digits without currency symbols. If you want to specify the

item price during a sale, leave this field empty.

#### Available for sale

Here, it's only necessary to specify one character: 'Y' (Yes) – if the item is available for sale, or 'N' (No) – if it is not available.

It is important to note that if you ignore this field, then the item will be available for sale by default.

#### Sold by weight

If the item is sold by weight, enter 'Y' in the field, and if not, enter 'N'. Again, if you do not fill in this field, the item will be sold by weight as default.

#### Option 1, 2, 3 name

These fields are for option names of the variants. Leave them blank for items without variants.

#### Option 1, 2, 3 value

These fields are for option values of the variants. Leave them blank for items without variants.

#### Barcode

If a barcode is available, then fill in this field with the item's barcode digits.

#### SKU of included item

Each composite item includes several components. Specify SKU codes of all the included items (components) of the selected composite item here. Leave blank for non-composite items.

#### Quantity of included item

In this field, it's necessary to specify the quantity of the component that is included in one unit of the composite item. For example, for one portion of the composite item 'Americano with milk', you use 0.1L of the item 'Milk'. This means you should fill in the value 0.1 in the 'Quantity of included item' field nearby 'Milk'.

#### Use production

Here, it's only necessary to specify one character: 'Y' (Yes) – if the composite item has a production option on, or 'N' (No) – if it is off. Note, that production can be applied only for composite items and only when using the functionality of Advanced inventory.

#### Supplier

The primary supplier name for Purchase Orders in case of using the functionality of Advanced inventory.

#### Purchase cost

The cost of items that will be used by default in case of autofilling purchase orders in case of using the functionality of Advanced inventory.

#### Track stock

If you would like to track the inventory of a selected item, enter 'Y' in the field and if not, enter 'N'. If you leave this field empty, then it will not track the inventory of that item.

#### In stock

If you would like to <u>track inventory</u>, then fill in an item's current quantity in this field, again only using digits. To avoid confusion with units (e.g., weight), we advise specifying them in brackets nearby the item name in the 'Name' field. For example, if you have 100 kg of potato in stock, then write 'Potato (kg)' in the 'Name' field and '100' under 'in stock'.

If you have selected the option 'Track stock', but did not specify a quantity, then the unit will automatically be zero.

#### Low stock

In this field, enter the quantity at which you would like to be notified about the low stock. Notification of low stock of an item or its complete absence will be sent to the owner's email at 10:00 A.M. in the time zone that you have specified. If there are no items with low stock, no notification will be sent to you.

#### Modifier - "Name of modifier"

Here, it's only necessary to specify one character: 'Y' (Yes) – if the item has a modifier, or 'N' (No) – if it is not available.

#### Tax – "Name of tax"

Here, it's only necessary to specify one character: 'Y' (Yes) – if the tax is applied to this item or 'N' (No) – if it is not applied.

# 4. Advanced Inventory

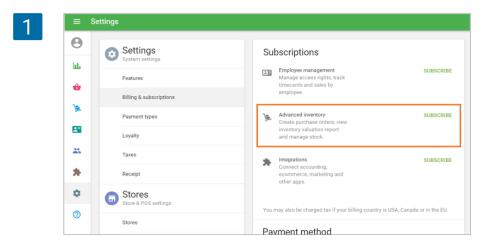


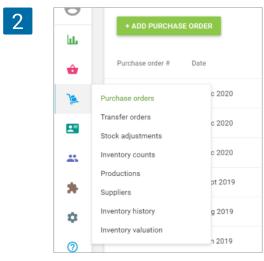
# 4.1 What is Advanced Inventory Management

The 'Advanced inventory management' includes a set of additional functions in the Back Office that allows users to more efficiently keep track of items in stock, monitor any changes in the inventory, and also launch a mechanism for more accurate calculation of business profitability indicators.

The 'Advanced inventory management' is only available in the paid subscription.

To activate subscription or a trial period, go to the 'Billing & subscriptions' section in the Settings menu of the <u>Back office</u>.





After activatiation, the 'Inventory management' menu will appear in the Back Office.

#### The 'Inventory management' menu includes:

<u>Purchase orders</u> — allows you to create and save orders for the supply of products, to send orders to suppliers, to receive products, and to save information of suppliers in the system.

<u>**Transfer Orders**</u> – allows a multiple store owner to distribute items correctly between his/her stores.

<u>Stock Adjustments</u> – allows you to modify the stock of items and indicate the reason for that adjustment.

<u>Inventory history</u> – allows the user to view records of all the changes made in the inventory, including transfers, purchase orders, and adjustments.

<u>Inventory Valuation</u> Report – gives an understanding of the total cost of the inventory and potential profits from their sale.

<u>Inventory Counts</u> – allows you to reconcile the expected and actual inventory for all or selected items, see the amount of inventory loss or surplus inventory, and keep documents for each inventory.

<u>Print Labels</u> — this button will appear in the Items list as a part of the Advanced inventory management. The label can contain the item's name, SKU, price, and barcode. Labels with a barcode allow you to use the scanner to add items to the ticket.

<u>Productions</u> – allows you to keep a record of the inventory of produced items, not just their components. It can be useful for items that are made in advance, not during ordering. For example, in a bakery. Produced items can be moved between stores by using inventory adjustments and inventory counts.

The Advanced inventory option alters the appearance of the Items form and the way items' cost is calculated. When you create a new item, you can fill in the Price and Cost as usual. However, when you switch on the 'Track stock' feature in the Inventory section, you will see additional fields that are only available with advanced inventory.

3	ht.	Item 1	Category No category ~
	ŵ		
	)a	Description	
	<b>E</b>	The item is available for sale	
		Sold by 💿 Each 🔿 Weight/Volume	
	٠	Price \$10.00	Cost
	0	\$10,00 Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	\$0,00
		SKU 101101	Barcode
		Inventory	
		Composite item ①	
		Track stock	
		In stock 10	Low stock 2
			Item quantity at which you will be notified about low stock
		Optimal stock 5	
		Use this field to autofill the item quantity in the purchase order	
		Primary supplier Diut	Default purchase cost \$7,00
Λ	8	Name	
4	ш	Item 1	Category No category
	ŵ		
	1	Description	
	8	The item is available for sale	
	*	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
	۵	Price	Average cost
	0	\$10,00 Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	\$0,00 Value updates automatically when you receive inventory
		sku 101101	Barcode

For 'Primary supplier', you can assign a certain supplier for the product from the list and set the 'Default purchase cost'.

After you save the changes and open the item for edit again, the 'Cost' field will be changed to 'Average cost' field. It will be calculated automatically when you receive items using the advanced inventory functionality. The value of the item average cost after receiving new items (NewCost) is calculated as:

 $NewCost = \frac{(StockBefore \times CostBefore + StockAdded \times CostOfAdded)}{(StockBefore + StockAdded)}$ 

Stock Before – stock before receiving new items

StockAdded – quantity of received new items

Cost Before - cost before receiving new items

Cost Of Added - cost of received new items

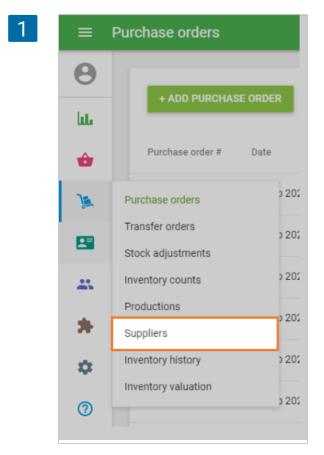
This value of the cost will be used in all the reports and calculations of all other values.

# 4.2 How to Work with Purchase Orders and Suppliers

'Purchase orders' is a part of the '<u>Advanced inventory management</u>' option and allows you to create and save orders for the supply of products, to send orders to suppliers, to receive products, and to save information of suppliers in the system. These options are available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.

## 4.2.1 Suppliers

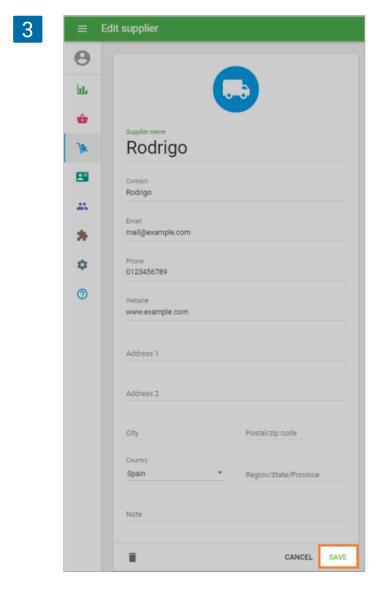
Go to 'Suppliers' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.



To create a supplier, click '+ Add supplier' button.

2	≡ Suppliers	
	Θ	
	ш.	
	ŵ	
	)a	
	8	Suppliers
	24	Add suppliers to create purchase orders and get quick access to contacts. Learn more
	*	+ ADD SUPPLIER
	۰ ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	

In the 'Create supplier' form, 'Supplier's name' is a required field and should be unique. The other fields are optional and can be left blank, but remember, that this information will be used to create the Purcha Order in the next step.



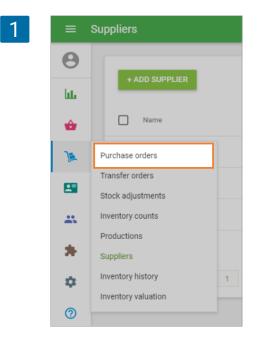
Don't forget to save supplier.

4	≡ Su	ıppliers			
	Θ				0
	հե	+ ADD SUPPLIER			Q
	ŵ	Name	Contact	Phone number	Email
	74	Rodrigo	Rodrigo	0123456789	mail@example.com
		Lily	Lily	9876543210	Lily@example.com
	-	Axel	Axel	0123456789	Axel@example.com
	*	Нарру & Co	John	1122334455	happyco@gmail.com

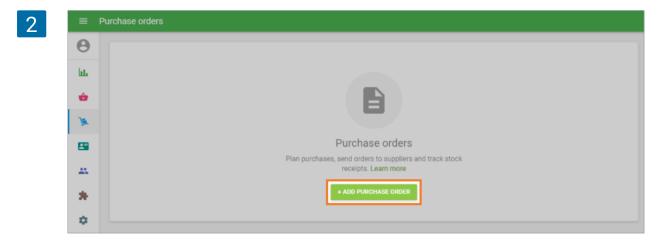
After you have created a list of your suppliers, you can start making purchase orders.

## 4.2.2 Making purchase orders

Go to 'Purchase orders' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.



To create an order, click on '+ Add purchase order' button.



The form 'Create purchase order' will open for editing.

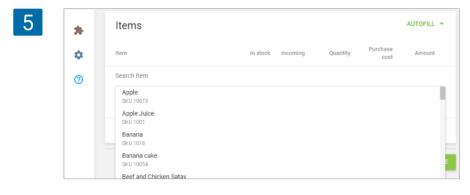
≡	Create purchase order					
θ						
հե	Supplier		Store			
ŵ	Purchase order date		Expected on			
۱.						
<b>1</b> =	Notes					0/5
*						
*	Items					AUTOFILL
۰	Item	In stock	Incoming	Quantity	Purchase cost	Amount
?	Search item					
	Add additional costs					
					Total	0.

Choose the supplier from the 'Supplier' drop-down list.

4	≡ Cre	eate purchase order		
	Θ	Supplier		
	hi.		Store	*
	ŵ	Rodrigo	Expected on	
		Lily		
	)æ	Axel		
	-	Happy & Co		
				0 / 500

You can set the 'Purchase order date' to the date you want the order to be put in. You can also set the date you expect your order to arrive in the 'Expected on' field and make notes for your order in the 'Notes' field.

In the 'Items' section, you can add items from the list of your items. If you click on the field, a drop-down list of your items will appear, and you can type in the item's name, SKU or barcode to find the desired item.



Fill in the 'Quantity' and the 'Default purchase cost'.

You can add more items to the order in the same way as above.

The 'Incoming' fields indicate the expected quantity of items to be received based on all existing purchase orders but have not yet been received.

You can also import the items to the purchase order. For this, click on the Import button.

6	Items			IMPORT	AUTOFILL 👻
	Item	In stock Incoming	Quantity	Purchase cost	Amount
	Search item				
	Add additional costs				

On the Import purchase order page, you can download the template CSV file to your computer. Then, fill it with the item's parameters such as SKU, Item name, Variant name, Quantity, and Purchase cost. Parameter SKU or Item name is required. Others are optional. After that, select the CSV file from your computer and click 'Upload'.

7		Import
	θ	Import purchase order
	ևե	Download the template file and fill in with the items information.
	ŵ	
	)a	Drag and drop your file here or select it on the computer
	**	HELP CANCEL UPLOAD

After forming the list of items and it's parameters, click on the 'Create' button to make a purchase order, or save it as a draft for further corrections.

*	Items					AUTOFILL	•
•	Item	In stock	Incoming	Quantity	Purchase cost	Amount	
0	Cake with strawberry SKU 10068	58	0	42	2.05	86.10	Î
	Cheesecake SKU 2381952354	49	0	51	3.00	153.00	Î
	Cream cake SKU 10069	5	0	95	3.20	304.00	Î
	Search item						
	Add additional costs						
					Total	543	10

Now your purchase order has been created.

≡ Pu	ırchase order details			
Θ	< Purchase orders	RECEIVE	EDIT SEND	MORE 👻
bb.	P01040		Received	0 of 188
ŵ	Pending			
<b>)</b>	Date: 09 Apr 2021 Ordered by: Louis			
	Supplier: Rodrigo Rodrigo 0123456789	Destination store: Coffee shop 21 Avenue, Brooklyr	n, New York, NY, Unite	ed States
*	mail@example.com			
*	Items			
0	Item	Quantity	Purchase cost	Amount
•	Cake with strawberry SKU 10068	42	2.05	86.10
	Cheesecake SKU 2381952354	51	3.00	153.00
	Cream cake SKU 10069	95	3.20	304.00
			Total	543.10

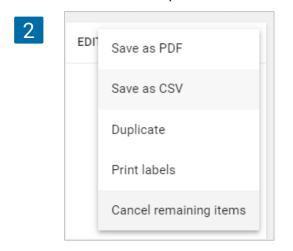
## 4.2.3 Actions with the purchase order

You can send your purchase order to your supplier. Click on the 'Send' button at the top. Fill out the email form and click the 'Send' button at the bottom.

The purchase order will be sent to your supplier as an attached file.

ted From Ivdemo@loyverse.com To mail@example.com Cc Subject	Send purchase order by email	
To mail@example.com Cc	From	
mail@example.com Cc	lvdemo@loyverse.com	
Cc	То	
	mail@example.com	
Subject	Cc	
ougles.	Subject	
Purchase order from First Store (P01040)		
	Message	
Attachment	PO1040	
		From Ivdemo@loyverse.com To mail@example.com Cc Subject Purchase order from First Store (P01040) Message Attachment

To edit the order, click on the 'Edit' button at the top. There are additional operations available with the purchase order in the 'More' menu.



To confirm receiving an order, click on the 'Receive' button at the top.

You can put the number of items 'To receive' or 'Mark all received' and click on the 'Receive' button.

= 1	Receive items			
Θ	Items		MARK ALL RECEIVED	
LL.	Item	Ordered	Received	To receive
ŵ	Cake with strawberry SKU 10068	42	0	0
) <u>e</u>	Cheesecake SKU 2381952354	51	0	0
<b>1</b>	Cream cake SKU 10069	95	0	0
*			CANCEL	RECEIV
*				

Afterwards, the stock of the received items will be updated according to the supplied amount. Also, the value of the average cost for each received item will be updated based on the 'Default purchase cost' specified in the order.

Purchase orders can have 4 different status: Draft, Pending, Partially received and Closed.

4	= P	urchase orders							
	Θ	+ ADD PURCHA	SE ORDER		Statu		Supplier All suppliers	Store All stores	ζQ
	ht.	_		AII		*	All suppliers	✓ All stores	¥ ~
	ŵ	Purchase order #	Date	Supplier	Store	Status	Received	Expected on	Total
	)a	P01041	20 Feb 2021	Axel	Cafeteria	Draft	0 of 3		7.50
	-	P01040	20 Feb 2021	Rodrigo	Coffee shop	Pending	0 of 188		543.10
	25	P01039	20 Feb 2021	Coca Cola	Coffee shop	Closed	20 of 20		100.00
	*	P01038	20 Feb 2021	Santisma	Coffee shop	Closed	30 of 30		54,000.00
	\$	P01037	20 Feb 2021	Rodrigo	Coffee shop	Closed	25 of 25		16,250.00
	0	P01036	19 Feb 2021	Coca Cola	Coffee shop	Partially received	15 of 25		1,500.00
		P01035	19 Feb 2021	Lily	Coffee shop	Closed	15 of 15		105.00
		P01034	19 Feb 2021	Lily	Coffee shop	Closed	10 of 10		60.00

The autofill option allows you to add items to the purchase order in one click. In the Items form, fill in the 'Low stock' and 'Optimal stock' fields.

Stores				
The item is available for sale	in all stores			
Available Store	Price I	n stock	Low stock	Optimal stock
Store 2		)		
The Coffee		)		

Open for editing the existing purchase order or create new.

	Create purchase order
Θ	Supplier
հե	Happy & Co Store
ŵ	Purchase order date Expected on
_	14 Jun 2021
)	
-	Notes
*	
ŀ	Items
¢	Item In stock Incoming Quantity Purchase Amount
0	Search item
	Add additional costs

After selecting the Supplier and Store for your Purchase order, you can choose one of the autofill options between 'All items from supplier' or 'Low stock items from supplier'.

3			
			All items from supplier
	ing	Quantity	Low stock items from supplier

If you select the 'All items from supplier', the system adds all the items with the selected supplier specified in their attributes.

If you select the 'Low stock items from supplier', the system adds all the items with the selected supplier specified in their attributes which have a stock value that is less or equal to its 'Low stock' value.

Items Purchase Item In stock Quantity Incoming cost 1test 3 0 2 10.00 SKU 10047 Search item Add additional costs Total

The quantity field will be filled in with the default value, calculated by the formula:

#### Quantity = Optimal stock — In stock — Incoming

4

**Optimal stock** – the value of optimal stock set at the item's form in the selected store. **In stock** – the current stock of the item in the selected store. **Incoming** – the quantity of items that are expected at the selected store (the quantity of items not received in other purchase orders with the statuses "Expected", "Partially received", and transfer orders with the status "In transit").

CANCEL

SAVE AS DRAFT

For items whose 'Optimal stock' is blank, the 'Quantity' field will be empty.

You can change the default quantity with your value and proceed further with the purchase order.

# 4.4 How to Work with Additional Costs in the Purchase Orders

When a retailer makes purchases, very often there are other expenses besides the amount of the ordered items. It can be the expenses for shipping, packaging, customs fee, and others. Thus, the total cost of goods can be higher than indicated in the order to the supplier.

The possibility to specify additional costs in a purchase order allows you to take them into account in the final cost of goods and, therefore, obtain more accurate business profitability indicators.

Open the saved purchase order to edit or create a new one. Click 'Add additional costs' at the bottom of the order.

AUTOFILL -

Amount

20.00

Î

20.00

θ								
$\sim$		Supplier			Store			
հե		Happy & Co			Store 2			-
		Purchase order date			Expecter	i on		
Ô		11 Jun 2021						
<u>)</u>								
		Notes						0 / 50
*								
		Items						AUTOFILL
*							Purchase	
¢		Item		In stock	Incoming	Quantity	cost	Amount
0		Apple SKU 10073		0	0	124.000	0.56	69.44
		Search item						
		Add additional costs						
							Total	69.4
						CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT	CREA
<b>1</b>		Apple						
*		SKU 10073		0	0	124.000	0.56	69.44
		Search item						
*								
۵		Additional cost						Amount
0		Shipping						8.00
		Packaging						3.00
		-						
		ADD ADDITIONAL	LCOST					
							Total	80.4
						CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT	CREA
						CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT	CREA
						CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT	CREA
=	Purc	chase order def	tails			CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT	CREA
≡ 8	Pure	_	_		, DE			
Θ	Purc	chase order def	_		RE		SAVE AS DRAFT	
	Purc	_	rs		RE			More 🗸
Θ	Pure	< Purchase order	rs		RE		DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<b>⊖</b> ⊾∟ ♠	Purc	< Purchase order P01043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021	rs }		RE		DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<b>e</b>	Purc	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne	rs }			iceive e	DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<b>⊖</b> ⊾∟ ♠	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplier: Happy & Co	rs }				DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John 1122334455	rs 3		Destina	iceive e	DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<ul> <li>••</li> &lt;</ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John	rs 3		Destina	iceive e	DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<ul> <li></li></ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John 1122334455	rs 3		Destina	iceive e	DIT SEND	MORE 🛪
<ul> <li>••</li> &lt;</ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplier: Happy & Co John 1122334455 happyco@gmail.co Items	rs 3		Destina	ICEIVE E	DIT SEND	MORE
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John 1122334455 happyco@gmail.co	rs 3		Destina	ICEIVE E	DIT SEND	MORE -
<ul> <li>●</li> /ul>	Pure	Purchase order           PO1043           Pending           Date: 11 Jun 2021           Ordered by: Owner           Supplier:           Happy & Co           John           1122334455           happyco@gmail.co           Items           Item	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND	MORE -
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	Purchase order       PO1043       Pending       Date: 11 Jun 2021       Ordered by: Owner       Supplier:       Happy & Co       John       1122334455       heppyco@gmail.co       Items	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND Received D	MORE A
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	Purchase order           PO1043           Pending           Date: 11 Jun 2021           Ordered by: Owner           Supplier:           Happy & Co           John           1122334455           happyco@gmail.co           Items           Item	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND Received D	MORE Cool 124
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John Il122334455 happyco@gmail.co Items Item Apple SRU 10073	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND Received D	MORE Cool 124
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Pure	< Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplie: Happy & Co John Il122334455 happyco@gmail.co Items Item Apple SRU 10073	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND Received D	MORE -
<ul> <li>●</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>	Purc	Purchase order PO1043 Pending Date: 11 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owne Supplier: Happy & Co John It22334455 happyco@gmail.co Items Item Apple SKU 10073 Additional cost	rs 3		Destina	CEIVE E ion store:	DIT SEND Received D	Amount

Fill in the 'Additional cost' name and 'Amount'. The amount can also be a negative value, in case you receive a discount from your supplier. Click on the '+ Add additional cost' button to add a new line for additional costs.

After saving or creating the Purchase order, you will see the additional cost section in the details of your purchase order with their amount added to the items amount to calculate the 'Total' of the order.

Δ	= 1	Receive items			
	Θ	Items		MARK AL	L RECEIVED
	հե	Item	Ordered	Received	To receive
	•	Apple SKU 10073	124	0	0
	)	Select additional costs to apply to this receipt			
	-	Additional cost			Amount
	*	Shipping			8.00
	*	Packaging			3.00
	*			CANCEL	RECEIVE
	(?)				

During the confirmation of receiving a purchase order, you can select which additional costs to take into account in the cost of the received items.

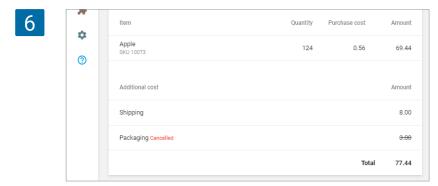
If you partially receive an order, you can apply the additional costs to only some of the items from the purchase order. In this case, the additional cost will be taken into account in the purchase price calculation of the selected item.

5	ſ	When receiving all items all unrece will be cancelled		
			CANCEL	CONFIRM
		3.00		

If you have no more items left and have unselected additional costs in the order, you will get the notification that all unreceived additional costs will be canceled.

Confirm your choice to proceed.

The unreceived additional costs will be marked as canceled in the received purchase order details.



After you have received the purchase order, the system calculates a new weighted Average cost for each item, taking into account the selected additional costs, in order to provide a more accurate calculation of the Total inventory value and Potential profit indicators in the 'Inventory valuation' report.

The total amount of the selected additional costs is distributed over all received items in proportion to the purchase cost of each item received in the order.

The final purchase cost of an item in an order, taking into account additional costs *Cfinal*, will be calculated like this:

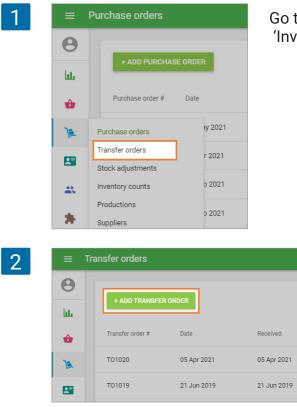
$$Cfinal = C1 * (1 + \frac{Costs}{Subtotal})$$

**C1** – purchase cost of the received item

**Costs** – the total amount of the selected additional costs when receiving the purchase order **Subtotal** – the total values of all items received in the order (without additional costs)

Transfer Orders functionality allows a multiple store owner to distribute items correctly between his/her stores.

Transfer Orders is a part of the advanced inventory management and is available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.



Go to 'Transfer Orders' section in the 'Inventory managment' menu.

To create a transfer, click '+ Add transfer order' button.

The form 'Create transfer order' will open for editing.

Θ				
հե	Source store	•	Destination store	
ŵ	Date of transfer order			
1	Jan 4, 2024			
	Notes			
*				
*	Items			IN
۵	Item		Source Destination stock stock	Quant
0	Search item			
			CANCEL SAVE AS DRA	AFT C

Choose 'Source store' and 'Destination store' from the drop-down list of your stores.

Θ				
ш	Source store Coffee Shop	*	Coffee Shop #2	
ŵ	Date of transfer order Jan 4, 2024		Coffee Shop Coffee Shop #3	
1	Jul 4, 2024			
	Notes			

You can change the 'Date of transfer order', enabling you to schedule a transfer in advance or to record a transfer from the past. You can also make notes for your order in the 'Notes' field.

In the 'Items' section, you can add items from the list of your items with the track stock option on. You will see the stock information of the chosen items at the source and destination stores. Fill in the 'Quantity' field with the amount you would like to transfer.

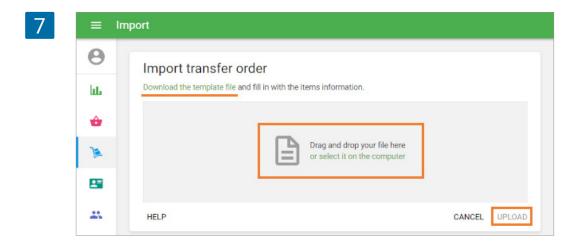
5	*	Items			
	•	Item	Source stock	Destination stock	Quantity
	0	Apple Juice SKU 1001	72	0	25 📋
		Cheesecake SKU 2381952354	48	0	20
		Search item			
			CANCEL CR	EATE AND RECEIVE	CREATE

You can also import the items to the transfer order. For this, click on the Import button.

6	Items			IMPORT
	Item	Source stock	Destination stock	Quantity
	Search item			

On the Import transfer order page, you can download the template CSV file to your computer. Then, fill it with the item's parameters such as SKU, Item name, Variant name, and Quantity. Parameter SKU or Item name is required. Others are optional. After that, select the CSV file from your computer and click 'Upload'.

4.5 How to Work with Transfer Orders



After forming the list of items and its parameters, click on the 'Save as draft' button to make the document without any stock changes, or the 'Create' button to make a transfer order, which reduces only the source stock.

8	Brownies SKU 10068	57	223 5
	Search item		
		CANCEL	SAVE AS DRAFT CREATE

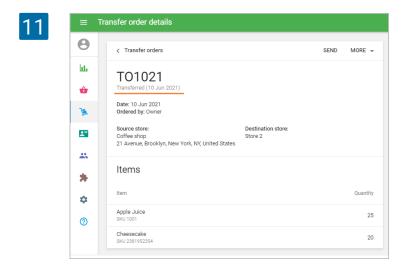
You can send your transfer order by email to the destination store by clicking on the 'Send' button at the top. To edit the order, click on the 'Edit' button.

There are additional operations available with the transfer order in the 'More' menu: Save as PDF or CSV file, Duplicate, Print labels.

9	≡ Tr	ransfer order details				
	Θ	< Transfer orders	RECEIVE	EDIT	SEND	MORE 👻
	ш. ф	T01021 In transit				
	۱	Date: 10 Jun 2021 Ordered by: Owner				
	-	Source store: Coffee shop 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, United States	Destination store: Store 2			
	*	Items				
	•	Item				Quantity
	0	Apple Juice SKU 1001				25
		Cheesecake SKU 2381952354				20
10	≡ Ti	ransfer order details				
	Θ	< Transfer orders	APPROVE	EDIT	SEND	MORE 👻
	ш. ф	TO1037 Draft				
	)a	Date: Jan 04, 2024 Ordered by: Andy				

The document with the status 'Draft' can be changed to the 'In transit' status by clicking the 'Approve' button on the 'Transfer order details' page. 'In transit' status means that the stock of transferred items at the source store is reduced, but stock at the destination store is unchanged.

To confirm receiving items in the destination store, click on the 'Receive' button at the top. Afterward, the stock of the transferred items in the destination store will be changed according to the transferred amount. You will see the completed transfer order.



Afterwards, the stock of the transferred items in the destination store will be changed according to the transferred amount. You will see the completed transfer order.

Transfer orders can have 3 different statuses: 'Draft', 'In transit' - created but not completed, and 'Transferred' - items have been received by the destination store.

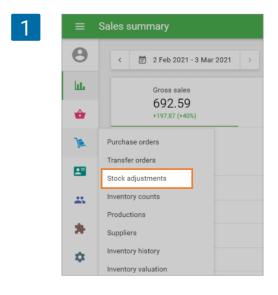
2	≡	Trans	fer orders							
	Θ		+ ADD TRANSFE	0.00050	Status		Source store		Destination store	, Q
	հե		+ ADU TRANSFE	RORDER	All	~	All stores	*	All stores	• <
	ŵ		Transfer order #	Date	Received	Source store		Destination store	Status	Quantity
	)a		T01022	10 Jun 2021	-	Coffee shop		Store 2	In transit	1
		•	T01021	10 Jun 2021	10 Jun 2021	Coffee shop		Store 2	Transferred	45

## 4.6 How to Work with Stock Adjustments

Stock Adjustment functionality allows you to modify the <u>stock of items</u> and indicate the reason for that adjustment.

Stock Adjustments is a part of the Advanced inventory management and are available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.

Go to 'Stock adjustments' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.



2	≡	Stock adjustments		
	<b>e</b>	+ ADD STOCK AD. Reason All reasons	JUSTMENT	
		Adjustment #	Date	
3	≡ Cre	eate stock adjustment		
	Θ	Reason		
	ш	Receive items	*	
	ŵ	Notes		
	<u>)</u>			0 / 500
		Items		
	*	ltem	In stock Add stock	Cost Stock after
	*	Search item		
	\$			
	0			

To create an adjustment, click '+ Add stock adjustment' button.

The form 'Create stock adjustment' will open for editing.

Create stock adjustment
 Receive items

 Inventory count
 Loss
 Damage
 Items

From the drop-down menu, select the reason for the adjustment and choose the store.

You can make notes for your adjustment in the 'Notes' field.

In the Items section, add the items you are adjusting from your items list.

If you have chosen '**Receive Items'** as the adjustment reason, fill in the 'Add stock' and 'Cost' fields for each item.

5		Create stock adjustment				
	Θ	Reason				
	հե	Receive items	*			
	ŵ	Notes				
	ير					0 / 500
		Items				
	*	Item	In stock	Add stock	Cost Sto	ock after
	*	Banana SKU 1018	39	100	1.55	139 📋
	*	Search item				
	0					
					CANCEL	ADJUST

4

If you have chosen 'Inventory count' as the adjustment reason, fill in the 'Counted stock' field for each item.

7

6

0

ht

ô

1 

\*

\*

۵

0

Reason

Notes

Items

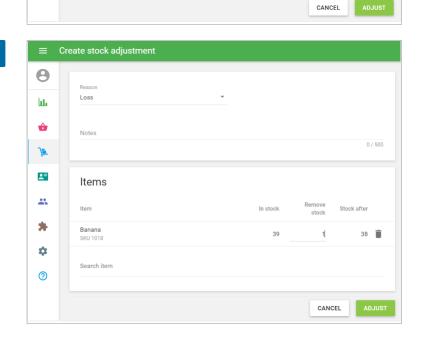
Item

Banana

SKU 1018

Search item

Inventory count



Counted stock

38 📋

Expected stock

39

If you have chosen 'Loss' or 'Damaged' as the adjustment reason, fill in the 'Remove stock' field for each item.

Click the 'Adjust' button to complete adjustment.

8	≡ St	tock adjustment details	
	θ	All stock adjustments	MORE 👻
	ш. ф	SA1023	
	)	Date: 03 Mar 2021 Reason: Loss Adjusted by: Louis	Store: Coffee shop 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, United States
		Items	
	*	Item	Remove stock
	*	Banana	1
9	_	ck adjustments	
	Θ		Reson

Reason

Loss

Inventory count

Damage

Quantity

Afterwards, the stock of the adjusted items will be changed. You will see the stock adjustment details.

Under 'More' menu you can find 'Save as PDF' and 'Save as CSV' option to do with the document.

You can see the list of all adjustments as shown below.

Adjustment #

SA1023

SA1022

SA1021

Date

03 Mar 2021

21 Jun 2019

07 Jun 2019

հե

ŵ

1

.....

\*\*

Inventory Count is a part of the <u>Advanced inventory management</u> and is available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.

Inventory Count functionality allows to:

- · reconcile the expected and actual inventory for all or selected items;
- see the amount of inventory loss or surplus inventory;
- keep documents for each inventory.

1	≡	Purchase orders
	Θ	
	ևե	+ ADD PURCHASE ORDER
	ŵ	Purchase order # Date
	٦.	Purchase orders n 2021
		Transfer orders ay 2021 Stock adjustments
		Inventory counts r 2021
	*	Productions 5 2021 Suppliers
	•	Inventory history 0 2021
	0	Inventory valuation

Go to the 'Inventory Count' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.

To create an inventory count, click on the '+ Add inventory count' button.

2	$\equiv$ Inventory counts						
	θ	+ ADD INVENTORY COUNT					
	ш	+ ADD INVENTOR	COUNT				
	ŵ	Inventory count #	Date created	Date completed			
	7	IC1012	21 Dec 2020	21 Dec 2020			
		IC1011	21 Dec 2020	21 Dec 2020			

The form 'Create inventory count' will open for editing.

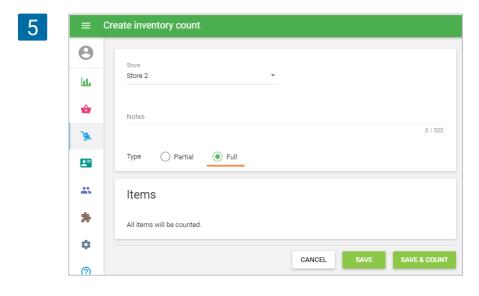
3	≡ Ci	reate inventory count		
	Θ			
	bb.	Store •		
	ŵ	Notes		
	٦.			0 / 500
		Type   Partial  Full		
	*	Items	ADD BY CATEGORY	ADD BY SUPPLIER
	*	Item		Expected stock
	•	Search item		
	0			
			CANCEL SAVE	SAVE & COUNT

Select the store from the drop-down list where you would like to perform the inventory count. You can also make notes in the 'Notes' field.

4	≡ Cr	eate inventory count	
	Θ		
	LL.	Coffee shop	
	<b></b>	Store 2	
	۱.		0 / 500
	<b>L</b>	Type   Partial  Full	

Then choose the type of your inventory count: 'Partial' or 'Full'.

For a **Full** inventory count, you do not need to choose the items for the count, because all items in the system whose 'track stock' option is enabled will be automatically added to the document.



For a **Partial** inventory count, you have to add the items to the count manually. You can add items to the list one by one in the 'Search Item' field, or you can add a whole category by clicking on the 'Add by category' button, as well as adding all items assigned to a certain supplier by clicking on the 'Add by supplier' button.

6	= (	Create inventory count		
	θ	Store		
	հե	Coffee shop	▼	
	ŵ	Notes		
	)a			0 / 500
	-	Type   Partial   Full		
	*	Items	ADD BY CATEGORY	ADD BY SUPPLIER
	*	Item		Expected stock
	۵	Banana cake SKU 10054		13 📋
	0	Berry cake SKU 10080		100 📋
		Search item		
			CANCEL	SAVE & COUNT

Please note that when adding items to the list, you will not see composite items and items whose track stock option has been disabled. If the product contains variants, then all the variants are displayed in separate rows.

You will see the current stock information of the chosen items in the selected store at the 'Expected stock' column.

Click on the 'Save' button to make an Inventory count document, or 'Save & count' to make a document and start the inventory count.

7	■ Inventory count details							
	θ	< All inventory counts	CO	UNT STOCK	EDIT	MORE 👻		
	ш. ф	IC1013 Pending						
	1	Date created: 11 Jun 2021 12:14 Created by: Owner	Store: Coffee shop 21 Avenue, B	rooklyn, New Y	′ork. NY. Unite	d States		
		Items						
	*	Item	Expected stock	Counted	Difference	Cost difference		
	¢ .	Banana cake SKU 10054	13	-	-	-		
	0	Berry cake SKU 10080	100	– Total	-	-		
				Total	_			

By clicking on the 'Count stock' button, you can start the counting process.

8	≡ C	ount stock						
	Θ			0.	Jantity		History	×
	bb.	1 ADD TO				O COUNTED	98 Berry cake	Î
	÷	Item	Expected	Counted	Difference	Cost	13 Banana cake	Î
	)a	Banana cake	stock	Counted	Difference	difference		
		SKU 10054	13	13	0	0.00		
	-	Berry cake SKU 10080	100	98	-2	-10.00		
	*			Total	-2	-10.00		
	\$				SAVE	COMPLETE		

You can enter the counted quantity in two ways:

- Search and select the item in the 'Count item' field, specify its quantity, then click 'add to counted'. For your convenience, you can also add it with a barcode scanner by scanning the item barcode as many times as its quantity in stock (each action will be displayed in the history). It may be useful when you count the items by blocks: for example, if there are 10 pieces in one block, you can scan the barcode 10 times or enter the number '10' in the 'Quantity' field.
- 2. Fill in the quantity of the items in the 'Counted' column.

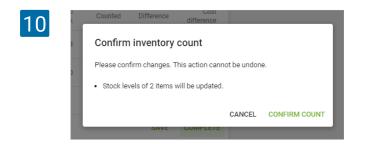
If you add an item that is not in the inventory list, either by typing it in in the 'Count item' field or scanning the item barcode, the system will warn you about this with a yellow icon and the message: "This item was not part of your planned count. You can delete it or proceed".

θ	Count item			Quantity	
bb.	T-Shirt (L / Black)		_	1	ADD TO COUNTEE
<b>•</b>	Item	Expected stock	Counted	Difference	Cost difference
	Banana cake SKU 10054	13	13	0	0.00
-	Berry cake SKU 10080	100	98	-2	-10.00
*	T-Shirt (L / Black) A S This item was not part of your planned count	0	1	1	10.00
\$			Total	-1	0.00
?				:	SAVE COMPLET

You will see the history of quantity changes on the right side of the screen. Therefore, you can cancel wrong entries at any time.

The system automatically saves your count every 30 seconds to prevent data loss.

You can save your count to the document with the 'Save' button to proceed the count later. 'Complete' button will activate the 'Confirm inventory count' window. Click on 'Confirm count' to finish the count.



Afterward, the stock of the counted items will be updated according to the count. Inventory counts can have 3 different status: Pending, in Progress, and Completed.

11	≡	nventory count	s							
	Θ					Status		Store		
	հե	+ ADD INVE	NTORY COUNT			All	~	All stores	*	Q
	÷	Inventory count #	Date created	Date completed	Store	Status	Notes			
	)a	IC1015	11 Jun 2021	-	Store 2	In progress				
		IC1014	11 Jun 2021	-	Coffee shop	Pending				
	*	IC1013	11 Jun 2021	11 Jun 2021	Coffee shop	Completed				
	*	IC1012	21 Dec 2020	21 Dec 2020	Shop 2	Completed				

## 4.8 How to Work with Production

Production is a part of the Advanced inventory management and is available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.

≡ c	reate item		
θ			
hi.	Pizza	Category	
_		No category	
ŵ	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume		
<u>a</u>		Average cost	
	Price	1.51	
_	Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	Value updates automatically when you pro item	ouce or receive a
**	sku 10037	Barcode	
*			
•			
0	Inventory		
•	Composite item ①		
	Use production ①		
	Component	Quantity	Cost
	Component Pizza dough SKU 10011	Quantity 0.500	
	Pizza dough		
	Pizza dough SKU 10011 Cheese	0.500	1.25 📋 0.09 📋
	Pizza dough sku 10011 Cheese sku 10017 Onion	0.500	1.25 T
	Pizza dough SKU 10011 Cheese SKU 10017 Onion SKU 10020 Tomatoes	0.500	1.25 📋 0.09 📋

The production functionality allows you to keep a record of the inventory of produced items, not just their components. It can be useful for items that are made in advance, not during ordering. For example, in a bakery. Produced items can be moved between stores, its inventory could be adjusted and counted.

The production option is only available for composite items. Open the composite item to edit or create a new one. Switch on the 'Use production' option in the Inventory section. When the option is enabled, the fields 'In stock' and 'Low stock' will appear in the item form. You can set these values for the composite item manually, and this will not influence the stock of the ingredients.

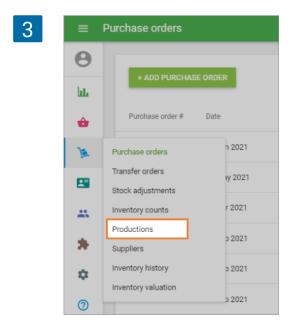
From now on, the stock of the ingredients will be changed by creating Production or Disassembling (explained later).

When selling an item with the "Production" option on, the stock of the composite item will be reduced, but not its ingredients.

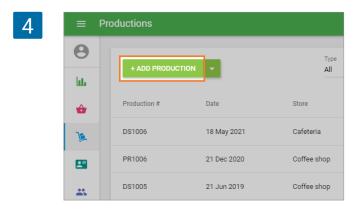
2	<b>*</b> ⑦	Stores					
		Available	tem is available for sale in all stores Store	Price	In stock	Low stock	Optimal stock
			Coffee shop		25	7	17
			Store 2		20	5	15

Don't forget to save changes.

Go to the 'Production' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.



To create a production, click on the '+ Add production' button.



The form 'Create production' will open for editing.

5	≡	Create production	
	Θ		
	հե	Store •	
	ŵ	Notes	
	<u>ایر</u>		0 / 500
		lteme	
	*	Items	
	*		antity
	۵	Search composite item	_
	0		

Select the store from the drop-down list where you would like to perform the production. You can also make notes in the 'Notes' field.

6	≡	Create production	
	Θ		
	հե	Coffee shop	
	ŵ	Store 2	
	1		0 / 500
	-		

In the 'Items' section, you can find and add items from the list of your composite items in which the production option has been switched on. If you click on the field, a drop-down list of your items will appear, and you can type in the item's name, SKU, or barcode to find the desired item.

7		
		Items
	*	Pizza SKU 10037
	\$	Search composite item
	<b>~</b>	
	9	CANCEL SAVE

The 'Cost' field reflects the value that is calculated based on the cost of the components of the item.

Fill in the 'Quantity' field with the quantity of each product that you want to produce. You can add more items to the order in the same way as above.

8	1			
		Items		
	*	Item	Cost 🛈	Quantity
	*	Pizza SKU 10037	1.51	25 📋
	\$	Coffee 200ml SKU 10038	1.40	50 📋
	0	Search composite item		
			CANCEL	SAVE

Click on the 'Save' button to create a production.

Afterward, the stock of the produced composite items will be increased according to their quantity; the stock of the components of the produced items will be decreased based on their use in the produced composite items.

Also, the value of the average cost for each produced composite item will be updated.

Now you will see the created production document.

9	≡	Production details	
	0	< Productions	MORE 👻
	ևե 👉	PR1007 Date: 11 Jun 2021 Created by: Owner	Store: Coffee shop
	<u>)</u>	Items	21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, United States
	*	Item name	Cost Quantity
	*	Pizza SKU 10037	1.51 25
	<b>\$</b>	Coffee 200ml SKU 10038	1.40 50



There are operations available with the production document in the 'More' menu: Save as PDF, Save as CSV, and Duplicate.

If you want to disassemble the produced composite item, click on the down arrow and select 'Add disassembly'.



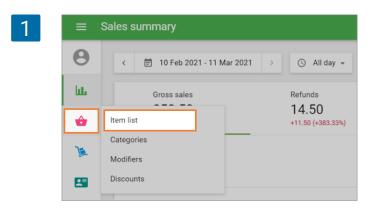
Fill in the 'Create disassembly' form in a similar way as 'Create production'.

≡ Cr	eate disassembly		
θ	Store		
bb.	Coffee shop 👻		
ŵ	Notes		
)			0 / 500
	Items		
*	Item	Cost Q	Quantity
*	Pizza	Cost 🛈	Quantity
۰	SKU 10037	1.51	1
0	Search composite item		
		CANCEL	SAVE

After clicking on the 'Save' button, the stock of the disassembled composite items will be decreased by the mentioned quantity and the stock of their components will be increased based on their use in the produced composite items. The cost of the components is also renewed. Printing Labels is a part of the <u>Advanced inventory</u> management and is available only to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.

Labels are used to mark the items in the store. The label can contain the item's name, SKU, price, and barcode. Labels with a barcode allow you to use the scanner to add items to the ticket.

Go to the 'Item list' menu in the Back Office.



Click on the 'Print labels' button at the three dots menu.

2	≡ Iter	n list			
	2	+ ADD ITEM IMPORT EX	PORT		Store All stores
	ш	Item name	nt labels		Price
		Apple	Fruits	•	1.29
	<u>)</u>	Apple Juice	Drinks	*	2.29
		🗌 Banana	Fruits	*	2.30

The form 'Create labels' will open for editing.

3	≡	Create labels		
	θ	Label type		
	հե	Dymo - 3/4" × 2-1/2" (19 mm × 64 mm) *	Store	•
	ŵ	Barcode source field SKU *		
	۱	Print name		
	*	Items	ADD BY CATEGORY	ADD BY SUPPLIER
	*	Item		Quantity
	۵	Search item		
	0			
			CANCEL	CREATE LABELS

Select a 'Label type' from the drop-down list of predefined printing templates.

= C	create labels	
Θ	l ahel tyne	Store
ht.	Dymo - 3/4" × 2-1/2" (19 mm × 64 mm)	Coffee shop 👻
ŵ	Dymo - 1" × 2-1/8" (25 mm × 54 mm)	
1	Dymo - 1-1/8" × 3-1/2" (28 mm × 89 mm)	
6~	Zebra - 1-1/4" × 1" (32 mm × 25 mm)	1
-	Zebra - 2" × 1" (51 mm × 25 mm)	
*		ADD BY CATEGORY ADD BY SUPPLIER

Select a 'Barcode source field' from the drop-down list of fields: SKU, Barcode, or None. In case of choosing 'None', the labels will not have a barcode.

5	≡	Create labels	
	θ	Label type	Store
	հե	Dymo - 3/4" × 2-1/2" (19 mm × 64 mm) •	Coffe
	ŵ	SKU	
	)	Barcode	
	<b>_</b> ≡	None	
	••	Items	_

Choose the 'Store' from the drop-down list of your stores, for which you are going to print labels. Select 'Print name' and 'Print price' boxes if you want them printed on your labels. The label will contain the price of the items from the selected store.

≡	Create labels
Θ	Label type Store
ht.	Dymo - 3/4" × 2-1/2" (19 mm × 64 mm)  Coffee shop
ŵ	Barcode source field SKU
)	Print name Print price
	<ul> <li>●</li> <li>●</li> <li>●</li> </ul>

The system will remember your choice and suggest these parameters as default the next time.

In the 'Items' section, create a list of your items for which you are going to print labels. You can add items to the list one by one in the 'Search Item' field, or you can add a whole category by clicking on the 'Add by category' button, as well as adding all items assigned to a certain supplier by clicking on the 'Add by supplier' button.

Fill in the 'Quantity' column with the number of labels you want to print. Then click 'Create labels'.

7	≡	Create labels		
	Θ	Label type	Store	
	bi.	Dymo - 3/4" × 2-1/2" (19 mm × 64 mm) *	Coffee shop	·
	ŵ	Barcode source field		
	)	Print name		
	*	Items	ADD BY CATEGORY	ADD BY SUPPLIER
	*	item		Quantity
	۵	T-shirt (Black / L) SKU 10041		1 🖬
	0	T-shirt (White / L) SKU 10027		2
		T-shirt (Red / L) SKU 10046		3 🗑
		T-shirt (Yellow / L) SKU 10051		4
		Search item		
			CANCEL	CREATE LABELS

The generated HTML page with labels will open in a new tab of the browser. You can print the labels on your printer by clicking on the 'Print' button.

8	Print labels
	PRINT
	20.00 T-shirt (Black / L)
	20.00 T-shirt (White / L)
	20.00 T-shirt (White / L)
	20.00 T-shirt (Red / L)
	20.00 T-shirt (Red / L)

In the same way, you can print labels from the Purchase order, Transfer order, or Stock adjustment documents.

Open your document and click 'Print labels' in the 'More' menu.

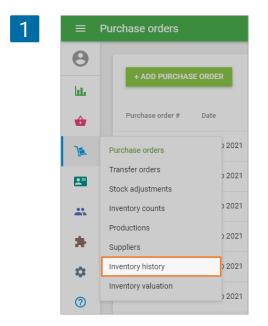
)	≡	Purchase order details		
_	θ	< Purchase orders	SE	Save as PDF
	հե	P01037	Rec	Save as CSV
	ŵ	Closed (20 Feb 2021)		Duplicate
	٦.	Date: 20 Feb 2021 Ordered by: Louis		Print labels
		Supplier: Rodrigo Rodrigo Diaz	Destination store: Coffee shop 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, U	Inited States
	*	0123456789 mail@example.com	,,	
	*	Items		

The 'Create labels' window will open with the items from the document. The system will automatically fill in the quantity of labels based on the quantity of items in your document. But you can correct the quantity of labels for each item or remove items which do not need labels.

Note The maximum length of a barcode is 80 characters, but for better visualization on small labels, the optimal number of characters is no more than 18 characters. Barcode format on the generated labels is Code-128, which supports digits 0-9 and Latin letters A-Z and a-z.

## 4.10 What is Inventory History

Inventory history is a part of the <u>Advanced Inventory management</u> and is only available to those users who have subscribed to this functionality.



Inventory history allows users to view records of all the changes made in the inventory, including transfers, purchase orders, and adjustments.

Go to 'Inventory history' section in the 'Inventory management' menu. You can see the 'Inventory history' of all the items that underwent any changes. You can filter the history by period, stores, employees or by reason of stock changes, including sales and refunds.

2	≡	Inventory history						
~	Θ	< 🖹 11 Mar 2021	🛅 11 Mar 2021 - 9 Apr 2021 - > 📑 All stores 👻 🛓 All employees 👻 😇 All reasons 👻					
	bi.	EXPORT						Q
	ŵ	Date	Item	Store	Employee	Reason	Adjustment	Stock after
	X	07 Apr 2021 16:11	Beef and Chicken Satay	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #42-1002	-2	4
	2	07 Apr 2021 16:10	Beef and Chicken Satay	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #42-1001	-1	6
	-	07 Apr 2021 16:10	Beef and Chicken Satay	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #42-1001	-1	7
	*	05 Apr 2021 22:01	Banana cake	Coffee shop	Louis	Damage #SA1027	-2	19
	۵	05 Apr 2021 21:59	Banana cake	Cafeteria	Louis	Transfer #T01020	20	20
	0	05 Apr 2021 21:59	Banana cake	Coffee shop	Louis	Transfer #TO1020	-20	21

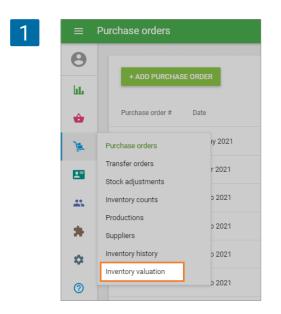
There is a link to the document for adjustments made on the item in the 'Reason' column. The Advanced inventory also gives you the possibility to see the stock history of items. Click on the 'View history' button in the items form.

3	≡ Edi	t item		
	е ш	Name Banana cake	Category Desserts	•
	<b>1</b>	Description		
	**	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume Price \$4.00	Average cost \$1.64	,
	* \$	Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale SKU 10054	Value updates automatically when you receive inventory Barcode 10544566251004	
		Inventory	VIEW HIS	TORY
		Composite item 🕢		

You will see all changes in the stock of selected item.

≡	Item history					
Θ	< 🗐 11 Mar 2021 - 9	9 Apr 2021 > 🖬 /	All stores 👻 💄 All empl	oyees 👻 \Xi All reasons 👻		
hi.	< Banana cake					
÷	Date	Store	Employee	Reason	Adjustment	Stock after
٦.	05 Apr 2021 22:01	Coffee shop	Louis	Damage #SA1027	-2	19
<b>2</b>	05 Apr 2021 21:59	Cafeteria	Louis	Transfer #TO1020	20	20
	05 Apr 2021 21:59	Coffee shop	Louis	Transfer #TO1020	-20	21
*	25 Mar 2021 23:08	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #36-1005	-1	41
۵	25 Mar 2021 23:07	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #36-1004	-1	42
0	25 Mar 2021 22:57	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #36-1003	-1	43
	25 Mar 2021 22:56	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #36-1002	-1	44
	25 Mar 2021 21:58	Coffee shop	Louis	Sale #36-1001	-1	45

## 4.11 What is Inventory Valuation Report



Inventory Valuation Report is a part of the <u>advanced</u> <u>inventory management</u> and is only available to those users who have subscribed to this functionality. Inventory Valuation Report gives an understanding of the total cost of the inventory and potential profits from their sale.

Go to 'Inventory valuation' section in the 'Inventory management' menu.

You can see the up-to-date 'Inventory valuation' report. You can filter the report by categories or stores (if you have multiple stores) and export the data by clicking on the 'Export' button.

2	□ Inventory valuation							
	Θ	<	All categories +					
	ш. 👉	Total inventory value	Total retail value \$434.17	Potenti \$23	al profit 35.77 ©		Margin 54.3 %	
	)a							
		EXPORT			laurateur		Detected	
	*	Item	In stock	Cost	Inventory value	Retail value	Potential profit	Margin
	*	Apples	13.5	\$1.50	\$20.25	\$48.60	\$28.35	58.33%
	۵	Bacon	15	\$2.00	\$30.00	\$75.00	\$45.00	60%
	7	Baguette	0	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	-
		Beef	0	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	-
		Black Tea, 200 g	0	\$0.90	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	-

There is a summary of the inventory information at the top.

**Total inventory value** is calculated as the sum of the cost multiplied by the stock of all items. **Total retail value** is calculated as the sum of the price multiplied by the stock of all items. **Potential profit** is calculated as the difference between the total retail value and total inventory value.

Margin is calculated as Potential profit divided by the Total retail value in percentage.

Note

Items with a negative stock are not calculated in the Total inventory value. Items with a negative stock or a variable price (blank price field) are not calculated in Total retail value and Potential Profit.

You can also see the detailed inventory information of each item.

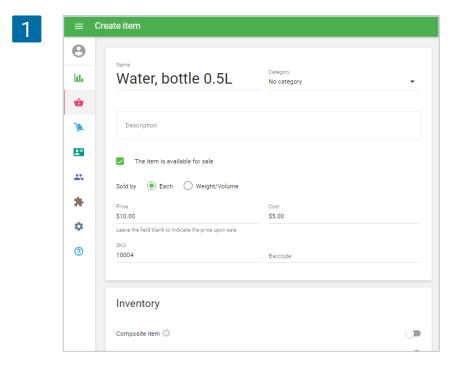
# 4.12 How to Order Items by Boxes, and then Sell them by the Piece

Sometimes, it is required to order items from suppliers only by boxes, when each box consists of a certain amount of items.

It is possible to create <u>purchase orders</u> with items by boxes, and after receiving it, you can <u>disassemble</u> them into items, so you can <u>sell</u> those items by the piece and track their stock.

Go to the Items list at the Back office. You need to <u>create</u> two sets of items: for selling and to order by boxes.

First, you need to have an item for sale by the piece. Let's say you create an item, sold by each, 'Water, bottle 0.5L'. Don't forget to enter the initial cost and set the tracking stock for the item.



Then, create a <u>composite item</u> for box orders. If you are not going to sell by boxes, you can make it invisible for sale. Let's create an item, 'Water, box 0.5L, 25p'.

2	≡ Cre	$\equiv$ Create item					
	Θ	Name					
	հե	Water, box 0.5L, 25p	Category No category				
	ŵ						
	1	Description					
		The item is available for sale					
	*	Sold by <ul> <li>Each</li> <li>Weight/Volume</li> </ul>					
	*	Price	Cost \$0.00				
	\$	Price Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale					

At the inventory block, set this item as composite and switch on the option 'Use production'. Choose the component 'Water, bottle 0.5L', and set the quantity for one box. Let's say each box contains 25 bottles of water.

3	E	dit item		
	Θ		arcode	
	ht.	Inventory		
	ŵ	Composite item (i)		
	7	Use production ③		
			Quality	
		Component Water, bottle 0.5L	Quantity	Cost
	۵	SKU 10000	25,000	125,00
	0			
			Total cost	125,00

Don't forget to save changes.

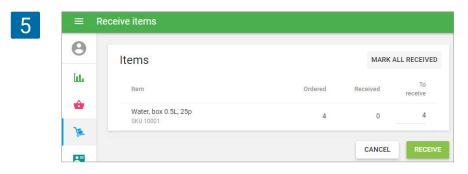
Now you can order this item by the box.

Create a purchase order, select the boxed item.

Fill in the 'Quantity' and the 'Purchase cost' for the box. And create a purchase order.

4	=	Create purchase order
	θ	Supplier
	հե	Water Company
	ŵ	Purchase order date     Expected on       Apr 24, 2020     III
	)a	
	<b>*</b> =	Notes 0 / 500
	**	Items AUTOFILL *
	\$	Burchase
	7	Item In stock Incoming Quantity cost Amount
		Search item
		Add additional costs
		Total 500,00
		CANCEL SAVE AS DRAFT CREATE

After receiving, the received stock will renew the stock of the boxed item.



After that, you can disassemble the boxed items into pieces.

Create disassembly, select the boxed item, and put the number of received boxes.

6	≡	Create disassembly	
	Θ		
	ևե 🍲	Notes	0 / 500
	)a	Items	
	27	Item	Cost (j) Quantity
	**	Water, box 0.5L, 25p SKU 10000	125,00 4
	\$	Search composite item	
	7		CANCEL
			CANCEL

After that, the stock of 'Water, bottle 0.5L' will be automatically updated.

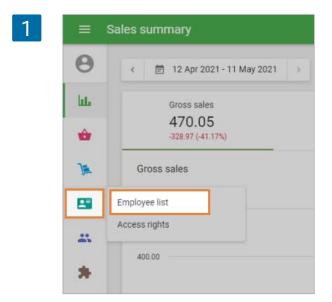
7	≡ Cre	eate item	
	Θ		
	LL.	Water, bottle 0.5L	Category No category 🗸
	ŵ		
	1	Description	
	-	The item is available for sale	-
	*	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
	*	Price	Cost
	•	\$10.00 Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	\$5.00
	0	SKU 10004	Barcode
		Inventory	
		Composite item ①	
		Track stock	-
		In stock 100	Low stock
			Item quantity at which you will be notified about low stock

## 5. Employees



## 5.1 How to Add an Employee in Loyverse

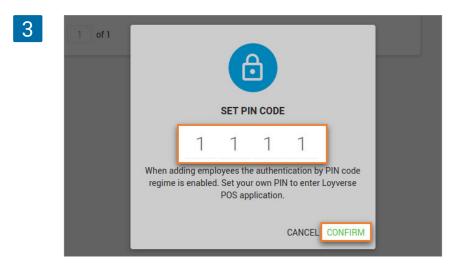
After logging in to Back Office, go to the 'Employee list' in the 'Employees' section.



Click on the 'ADD EMPLOYEE' button.

2	≡ Employee list						
	8 11	+ ADD EMPLOYEE	Email	Phone	Role		
	ŵ	Owner	owner@gmail.com	-	Owner		

When you add a new employee for the first time, as a shop owner, you will be asked to set your PIN code. After your PIN code as an owner is set, you will not be asked for this again.



Create employee 4 0 հե ô Name E John **.**= Email john@mail.com \*\* Phone \* 5553354896 \$ Role **---**Select role ? Administrator Ô Manager Cashier CANCEL Then you can add an employee into the system.

You can put the employee's name, email address, phone number and their role: cashier, manager or administrator.

After creating your four digit PIN number, click 'SAVE'.

Nai		
J	ohn	
	Email	
	Business phone number	
L.	5553354896	
	Role	
		,
	POS PIN	
â	6 4 8 3	
		CANCEL SAV

If you have **multiple stores** you can manage your employee access to them. For this, at the bottom of the form find the 'Stores' line and click on the down arrow.

6	$\equiv$ Edit employee				
	θ				
	ш	8			
	ŵ	Name			
	)a	Isaak			
	-	Email			
	**	isaak@getnada.com			
	*	Phone 12211543			
	٠	Role			
	0	POS PIN			
		4     4     4       First login to the back office Sunday, 10 January 2021			
		Stores Access to all stores			
		DELETE CANCEL SAVE			

Afterwards, an additional window will slide down with the list of your stores. You can assign your employee to a particular store.

Store	es			^
	Acce	ess to all stores		
		The Cofee 2		
		The Coffee		
			S	HOWLES

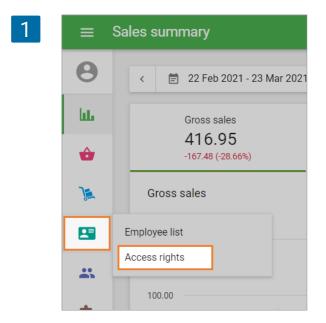
Don't forget to save changes.

Nice! You have now added an employee to Loyverse POS and they will be able to sign in for work on their mobile device.

### 5.2 How to Manage Access Rights of Employees

The owner can give employees different access rights to the POS app (Play Market or App Store) and the Back Office. To do this, you can set up the users' roles.

Enter the Back Office and open the 'Access rights' section in the Employee menu.



You can see the user groups with their roles. By default, there are four user groups with preset roles: Owner, Administrator, Manager, and Cashier. You can create a new group by clicking on the '+ Add role' button.

2	≡	Access righ	ts			
	Θ					
	հե		Role		Access	Employees
	ŵ		Owner		Back office and POS	Employees
	<u>کر</u>					
			Administrator		Back office and POS	0
	**		Manager		Back office and POS	1
	*		Cashier		POS	1
	\$	<	> Page: 1	of 1		

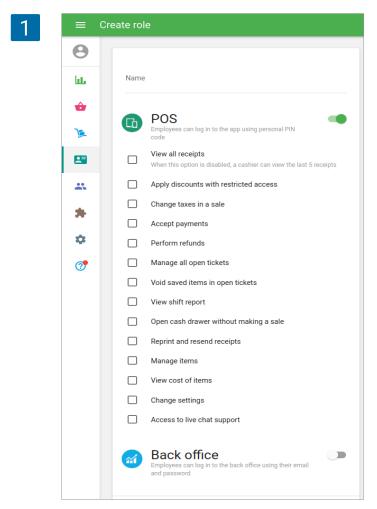
The owner has all the possible rights, which cannot be changed. All other groups can be edited.

You can assign a role to the employee during creation or change the role of existing employees.

There are two blocks of access rights: POS and Back office.

### 5.2.1 POS access rights

You can create a new group by clicking the '+ Add role'. Fill in the Name field of a new role. Note that there cannot be two access groups with the same name.



You can assign the access rights to the group using the checkbox.

#### **View all receipts**

When this option is disabled, the employee can only view the 5 most recent receipts. You can use this access restriction to forbid your employees to see and make refunds for older receipts. See details in <u>Receipts List in the POS</u>.

#### Apply discounts with restricted access

When this option is disabled, the employee does not have the right to use the restricted discounts. See details in <u>How to Create and Configure Discounts.</u>

#### Change taxes in a sale

When this option is disabled, the employee cannot change taxes, applied to the items during sale.

#### Accept payments

When this option is disabled, the employee can not charge the ticket and accept payments.

#### Perform returns

When this option is disabled, the employee cannot make refunds. Such an employee would not have the 'Refund' button in the edit receipt window in the Receipts section of the POS. See detail in <u>How to Issue a Refund on Loyverse POS</u>

#### Manage all open tickets

If enabled, the employee can view and edit open tickets created by other employees.

#### Void saved items in open tickets

Deselect if you want to forbid your employees from deleting saved open tickets or deleting items from them. See details in <u>Open tickets</u>

#### View shift report

You can select whether the employee can see the shift report with the expected amount of cash or not, during and when closing shift. See details in <u>Shift Management in Loyverse POS</u>

#### Open cash drawer without making a sale

If enabled, the employee will have the 'Open cash drawer' button in the menu at the Sale screen of POS. See details in <u>How to Connect a Cash Drawer</u>

#### **Reprint and resend receipts**

If enabled, the employee can reprint receipts and resend them via email

#### Manage items

If enabled, the employee can add and edit items and categories in the POS. See details in How to Add Items in the Loyverse Back Office

#### View cost of items

It gives employees the right to see the Cost (or Average cost) field in the item's card.

#### Change settings

Employees with this right can access the Settings at the POS, where it is possible to connect printers, CDS, and KDS.

#### Access to live chat support

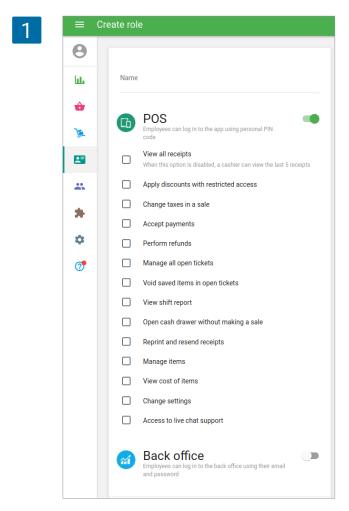
Employees with this right can access chat support.

When an employee tries to access a function on the POS that they do not have the access to, the PIN-panel will be opened with the request to enter the PIN. After entering the PIN code of an employee who has access to the function, a one-time access is granted to the employee who does not have access to the function.

### 5.2.2 Back Office access rights

If you want to give the user group an access to the Back Office, switch on the Back Office in the form. After that, you will see the list of access rights to the Back Office.

Active checkbox opens access to the corresponding section of the Back Office.



#### View sales reports

Gives employees the right to access the Reports menu **Cancel receipts** Gives employees the right to access the <u>Cancel receipts</u> functionality in the Receipts section in Reports

#### Manage items

Gives employees the right to access the ltems menu and receive a <u>low stock notifications</u>.

#### **Manage inventory**

In the case of an active Advanced Inventory subscription, it gives employees the right to access the Advanced Inventory menu.

#### Manage employees

Gives employees the right to access the Employees menu.

### Manage customers

Gives employees the right to access the Customers menu. See details in <u>How to Work with</u> <u>Customer Base in the Back office</u>

### Edit general settings

Gives employees the right to access the Features section in Settings. See details in <u>Setting Up Your Shop in Loyverse Back Office</u>

#### Manage billing

Gives employees the right to access the Billing & subscription section. See details in How to Use Add-on Services of Loyverse POS

#### Manage payment types

Gives employees the right to access the Payment types section. See details in <u>Configuring Payment Types in Loyverse POS</u>

#### Manage loyalty program

Gives employees the right to access the Loyalty section in Settings. See details in <u>How to Set Up a Customer Loyalty Program</u>

#### Manage taxes

Gives employees the right to access the Taxes section in Settings. See details in <u>How to Configure Taxes in the Back Office</u>

#### Manage kitchen printers

Gives employees the right to access the Kitchen printers section in Settings. See details in <u>Using Kitchen Printers with Loyverse POS</u>

#### Manage dining options

Gives employees the right to access the Dining options section in Settings. See details in <u>Dining Options</u>

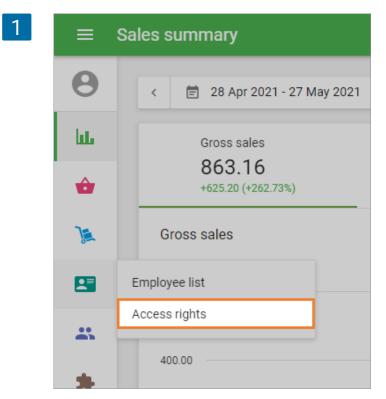
#### Manage POS devices

Gives employees the right to access the POS devices section in Settings. This permission also allows them to sign in to POS using email and password. See details in How to Give Employees Access to Login into Loyverse POS through E-mail

#### Access to live chat support

Gives employees the right to access to live chat support

## 5.3.1 Make access rights for group

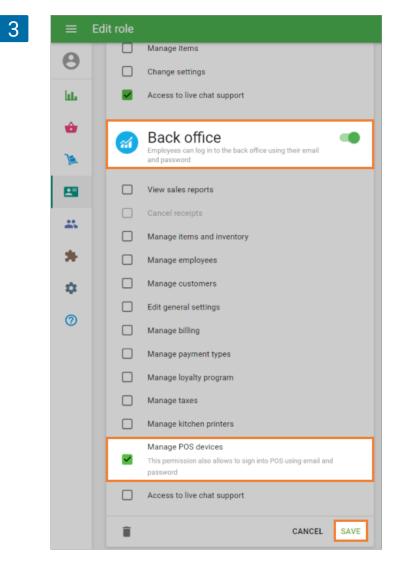


Go to 'Access rights' menu at 'Employee' section in the Back Office.

Choose an existing group with your employees or create a new role.

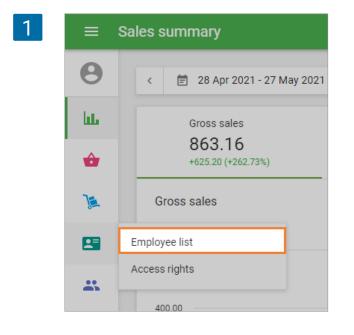
2	≡	Access right	ts		
	Θ				
	ևե	+ ADD			
	ŵ		Role	Access	Employees
	<u>)a</u>		Owner	Back office and POS	1
	-		Administrator	Back office and POS	0
			Manager	Back office and POS	1
	*		Cashier	POS	1
	۵	<	> Page: 1 of 1		
	0				

Switch on 'Back office' option and check in box 'Manage POS devices'.

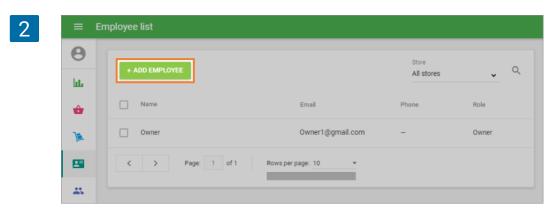


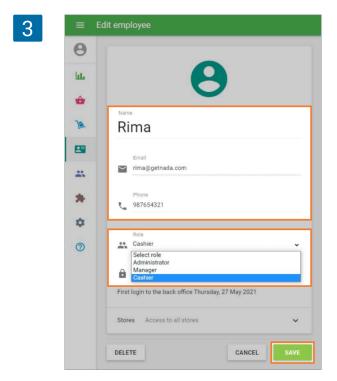
## 5.3.2 Assign employee to the group

Go to the 'Employee list' in the 'Employees' section.



Create Employee by clicking on the 'ADD EMPLOYEE" button. If you have created employee before, open it for editing.





At the 'Edit employee' window fill in employee's name, email address, phone number and the role (the group that you created in the first step).

## 5.3.3 Creating password by employee

The employee will receive Email with an invitation to obtain access to the Back Office. He or she should click the 'Create an account' button.

1	
	First Store invites you to join your organization and obtain access to the Loyverse back office.
	To enter create a personal account.
	CREATE AN ACCOUNT
	If you have questions, please visit Loyverse Help Center and Loyverse Community or chat with our consultants.
	They are available 24/7 and always happy to assist.
	Sincerely, The Loyverse team
	© 2021 Loyverse

The employee will be redirected to the Back office form, so he/she has to fill in a password to create an account.

Create a Loyverse account
Email rima@getnada.com
Password
Password again
CREATE AN ACCOUNT

When the employee enters the back office, it means the account is created.

3	=	POS devices		
	Θ	Stores		
	۵	Stores Store & POS settings	+ ADD POS	Store 🗸
	0	POS devices	This store has no POS	

If you don't assign to this employee group any other access rights, then your employee will not see and manage any other information in the Back Office except POS devices.

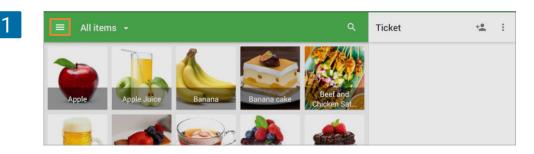
### 5.3.4 Login into Loyverse POS

Now an employee can login into Loyverse POS at the mobile device with his/her E-mail and password, created at the previous step.

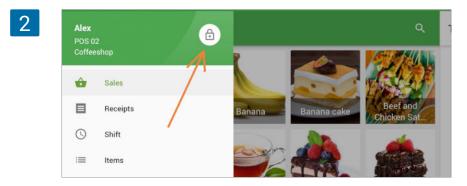
1	← Sign in		
_			
		Email rima@getnada.com	
		Password 😡	
		SIGN IN	
		Forgot password?	

## 5.4 How to Switch User Account to Different Employee in the Opened Loyverse POS

If you want to switch the user account to another employee in an already opened Loyverse POS app without exiting, you need to go to Menu.



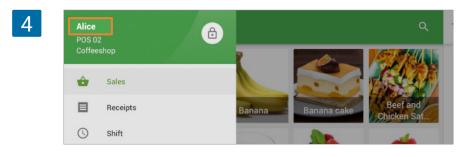
Then, tap on the lock icon.



Once the pin pad is open, a different employee can enter his or her own pin to log in.

3		Enter PIN-code		TIME CLOCK
	1	2	3	
	4	5	6	
	7	8	9	
		0	Clear	

The active app account has switched to another user, and you can see his or her name on the menu header.



# 5.5 Using Time Clock to Track Employees Hours

This feature allows employees to clock in/out and calculates their total work hours.

## 5.5.1 Configuration

Login to the Back Office, navigate to the Settings menu, Features section, and switch the 'Time clock' slider on.

1 =	Settings					
Θ	Settings System settings		Fea	atures		
Lut.	Features		G	Shifts Track cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more	C	)
	Billing & subscriptio	ins	Ō	Time clock Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn m	ore	>
	Payment types		Ð	Open tickets Allow to save and edit orders before completing a payment. Learn more	•	•
	Taxes		ē	Kitchen printers Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more	•	•
*	Receipt			Customer displays Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more Dining options		
•	Open tickets		ΤŤ	Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more Low stock notifications		
0	Kitchen printers			Get daily email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more Neostive stock alerts		
	Store & POS setting	5	ŵ	Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn m Weight embedded barcodes	ore	
	Stores		II III	Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more	_	•
	POS devices				CANCEL	SAVE

Don't forget to save changes.

The time clock feature requires authentication by PIN. Set your PIN to enter Loyverse POS app if you have not.

### 5.5.2 Using at POS

At the Loyverse POS app tap the 'Time clock' button in the top right of the login screen.

1				J TIME CLOCK
		Enter PIN		
	1	2	3	
	4	5	6	
	7	8	9	
		0	Clear	

Enter PIN-code on the number pad.

÷	CLOCK	IN Enter PIN	DCK OUT	
	1	2	3	
	4	5	6	
	7	8	9	
		0	Clear	

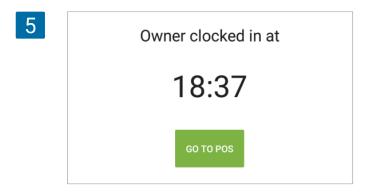
Then 'Clock In' and 'Clock Out' buttons become active.

3	÷	CLOCK	IN CLI Enter PIN	JCK OUT	
		1	2	3	

Tap 'Clock In' button to start tracking hours and record a time punch.

4	÷	CLOCK		эск оит	
		1	2	3	

Then you will see information about the clock in time.



Tap to 'Go to POS' button to go to the sale screen of the app or back arrow to come back to login screen.

After finishing work go to 'Time clock' screen, tap 'Clock Out' button to record a time punch.



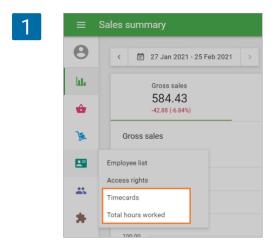
Then you will see information about clock out time.

7	Owner clocked out at
	18:48
	ок

Tap to 'OK' button.

## 5.5.3 Reports at the Back Office

There are two sections in 'Employees' menu connected to Clock in/Clock out option: 'Timecards' and 'Total hours worked'.



'Total hours worked' section shows summary report of each employee in the chosen period.

2	≡	Total hours worked		
	θ	< 🖹 27 Jan 2021 - 25 Feb 2021 >	🚊 All employees 👻	
	ևե	EXPORT		
	ŵ	Employee	Store	Total hours
	ير	Alice	Coffee shop	0.05
		Isaak	Coffee shop	0.13
	**	Joe	Coffee shop	7.13
	*	Total		7.31

At the 'Timecards' section you can see the list of timecards.

3	≡	Timecards							
	Image: Control of the second s								
	ш	+ ADD TIMECARD	EXPORT						
	ŵ								
	1	Clock in	Clock out	Employee	Store	Total hours			
		Missing	25 Feb 2021 11:37	Isaak	Coffee shop	-			
		25 Feb 2021 11:05	25 Feb 2021 11:08	Isaak	Coffee shop	0.03			
	*	25 Feb 2021 11:05	25 Feb 2021 11:37	Alice	Coffee shop	0.53			
		29 Jan 2020 20:00	Open	Joe	Coffee shop	③ 707.63			

You can correct the current timecard or create a new one by clicking on 'Add Timecard' button. Total hours are automatically calculated based on clock in and clock out time.

				Note		
The	decima	l in 'Total Hours' s	shows a fra	ction of an hour,	not minutes.	
4	≡ C	Create timecard				
	Θ	Employee				
	ht.	Alice	*			
	•	Clock in date		Clock out date 24 Feb 2021		
	<u>)</u>	Clock in time 11:00		Clock out time 12:15		
		Total hours: 1.25				
	*			c	ANCEL SAVE	
	<b>±</b>					

PIN code is used for access to the Loyverse POS. The panel for entering PIN appears during each entry to the POS.

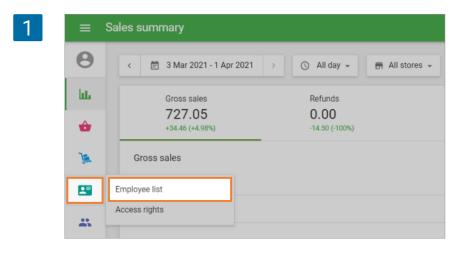
	Enter PIN	
1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
	0	Clear

The PIN code is a 4-digit number unique for each Loyverse POS user - owner and employee and has an identification purpose.

The PIN access is set when adding a new employee.

## 5.6.1 How to find and change the PIN

After logging in to Back Office, go to the 'Employee list' in the 'Employees' section.



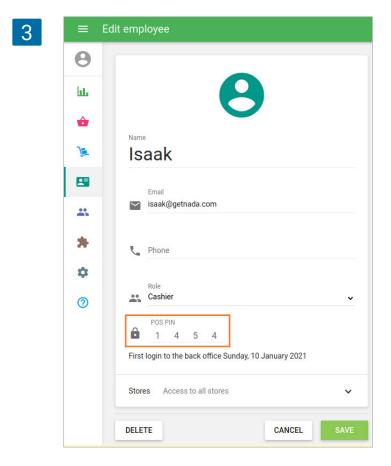
=	Employe	e list						
Θ						Store		0
ևե	-	ADD EMPLOY	EE			All store	s 🗸	Q
ŵ		Name		Email		Phone	Role	
)		Louis		lvdemo@lo	yverse	-	Owner	
		Alice		alice@exar	nple.com	-	Manager	
		Isaak		isaak@getr	nada.com	-	Cashier	
*	<	>	Page:	1 of 1	Rows per pag	e: 10 👻		
\$								

Select the employee that you want to manage the PIN.

In the POS PIN field, you can see the current employee's PIN. You can change it if needed.

Note

# Any action with a PIN code can be done only by the owner or employees who have access to Back Office to the corresponding section.

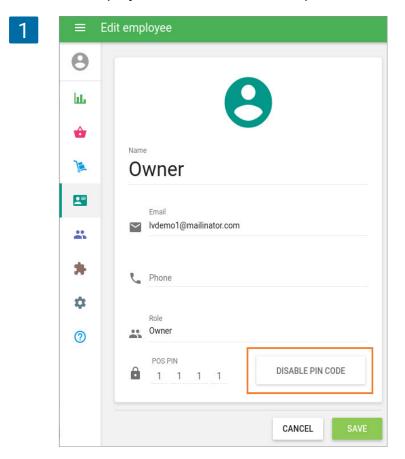


Don't forget to save your changes.

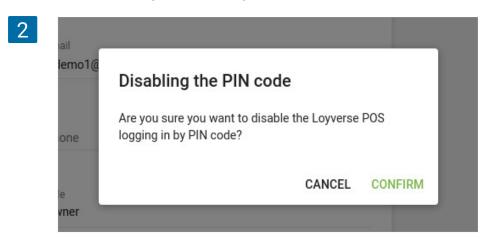
## 5.6.2 How to remove the PIN

It is possible to enter POS without a PIN code only when there are no other users besides the owner. If you have at least one employee or the "Timeclock feature" enabled, the PIN code is obligatory for each user.

In the Edit Employee form of the owner, tap the 'Disable PIN Code' button.



Confirm the disabling in the dialog window.



At any time, you can restore the PIN code access for the owner through the 'Add PIN code' button.

3		Edit employee
	θ	
	Ϊ <b>ι</b> ι.	Θ
	ŵ	Name
	٦	Owner
	2	Email
	**	Vdemo1@mailinator.com
	*	C Phone
	\$	Role
	0	Owner Owner
		ADD PIN CODE
		CANCEL

Don't forget to save your settings.

**Suggestions**: Change your PINs regularly to increase the security of your data.

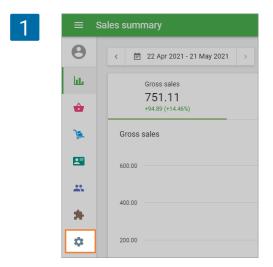
# 6. Customers



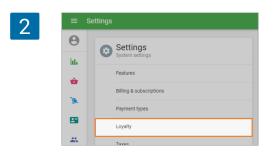
## 6.1 How to Set Up a Customer Loyalty Program

Loyalty programs motivate customers to make recurring purchases as they create the opportunity for you to take customer relationships to greater depths and also reward their visits with bonus points.

To set up the reward program, login to the Back Office.



Then in the Settings menu, click the 'Loyalty' button.



A basic program offers 1 point for 1% of the amount spent, but of course, you can modify the percentage according to your preference. Don't forget to press 'Save'.

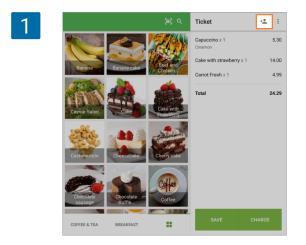
3	Loyalty settings
	Loyalty type Bonus system
	A percentage of the purchase amount to be credited to the points account of the customer 1.00
	CANCEL SAVE

Your loyalty program is ready to go! All you need now are some customers! They'll be happy to know they can now collect bonus points at their favorite small business. Your store is well on its way to success!

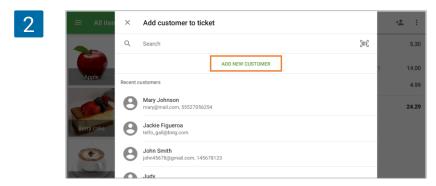
## 6.2 How to Sign Up a Customer in Loyverse POS

Loyverse POS app provides you with the possibility of connecting sale records with customers. It allows you to send receipts to customers via email. If you have already set up the <u>loyalty program</u>, you can give bonus points to registered customers for every purchase, to be redeemed for discounts.

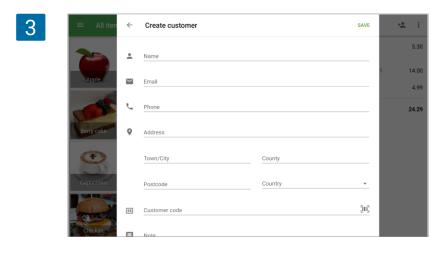
When <u>making sales</u> in the Loyverse POS app, you can sign up a new customer. Click the 'Add client' icon at the top right-hand corner of the sale screen.



In the pop-up window, you can select the existing customer or add a new one by clicking on 'Add new customer'.



If you add a new customer, fill in the 'Create customer' form. You must fill in at least one of the fields: Name, Email, or Phone to identify a customer, and other fields are optional. Tap 'Save'.



Check the information about your customer and tap 'Add to ticket' at the top-right hand corner.

4	$\equiv$ All iten	÷	Customer profile	ADD TO TICKET	÷ <b>±</b> :
	2		Θ		5.30
	Apple		John Smith		1 14.00
	-	$\geq$	john45678@gmail.com		4.99
	COS	r,	145678123		24.29
	Berry cake	9	Viena, Strasse strite 582552		
	1		110345678		
	( )		Likes coffee		
	Capuccino	*	28.34 Points		
		ô	36 Visits		
	Chicken burger	<b></b>	Jan 7, 2021 Last Visit		
	FRUITS	EDIT	PROFILE REDEEM POINTS		CHARGE

After the customer is signed up, proceed with your sales as usual.

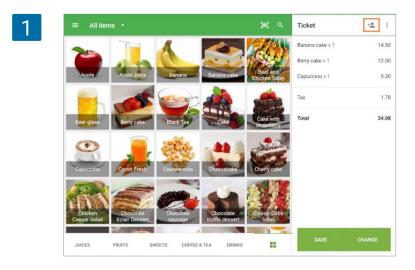
Then in the window after choosing the payment type, you will see a customer's email. Tap 'Send receipt' button to send the receipt to the customer via email.

Ticket	~ <u>•</u>		
Capuccino x 1 Cinamon	5.30	24.00 6.00	
Cake with strawberry $\times1$	14.00	Total paid Change	
Carrot Fresh x 1	4.99		
Total	24.29		
	[	john45678@gmail.com	SEND RECEIPT

Tap the 'New sale' button to return to the sale screen.

## 6.3 How to Redeem Customer Points for a Discount

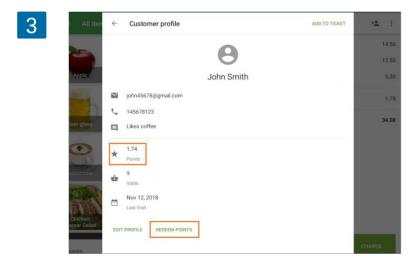
At the sale screen, add items to the ticket and click the 'Add client' icon at the top right-hand corner of the sale screen.



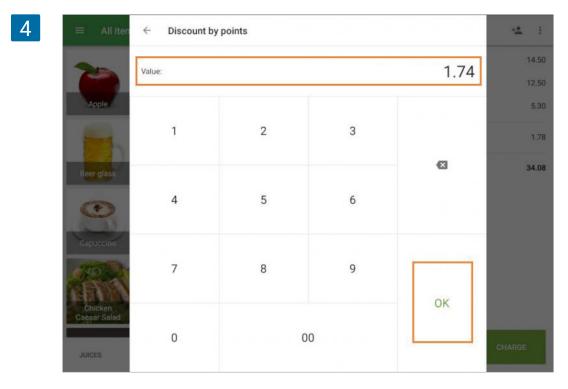
In the pop-up window, select the existing customer from the list of recent customers. You can use the search field to find the customer by name, email or number.

2 All iter	× Add customer to ticket	<b>1</b>
-	Q Search	14.50
	ADD NEW CUSTOMER	12.50
Apple	Recent customers	5.30
1	John Smith john45678@gmail.com, 145678123	1.78
Beer glass	Alex lpadtdemoggmail.com	34.08
•	John Smith John Smith@gmail.com	
Capacelno	Hana janchik@gmail.com, 1275438976	
	Sackle Figueroa telfo_gall@bing.com	
Chicken Caesar Salad	OouglasRose senga-ningbing.com	

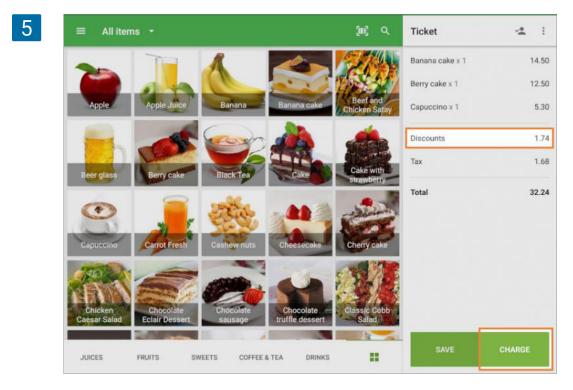
After you have selected the customer, you can see his/her profile with the number of points available for redemption. Tap 'Redeem points'



The app will show you the maximum redeemable value. But as clients wish, you can enter a lesser amount using the number pad. After tapping 'OK', the points will be applied and the purchase amount will be reduced.



Then you'll see the receipt preview with the redeemed points in the discounts line. Tap 'Charge' to continue the sale as usual.



# 6.4 How to Send E-mail with Receipt to Client in Loyverse POS

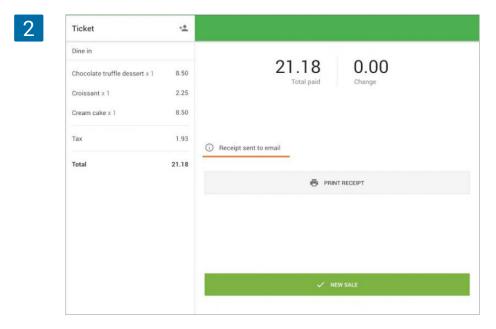
After you enter the payment to receipt during sale, you can send a receipt to a customer by email.

Fill in the 'Enter email' field and tap 'Send receipt' button.

Ticket	+#				
Dine in					
Chocolate truffle dessert x 1	8.50		21.18	0.00	
Croissant x 1	2.25		Total paid	Change	
Cream cake x 1	8.50				
Тах	1.93	ビ Enter email			SEND RECEIP
Total	21.18				
			🖶 PRIN	T RECEIPT	
				W SALE	

Please be attentive while entering the Email. If you make a mistake, the customer will not get the receipt.

After you see the message 'Receipt sent to email', you can proceed to a new sale.

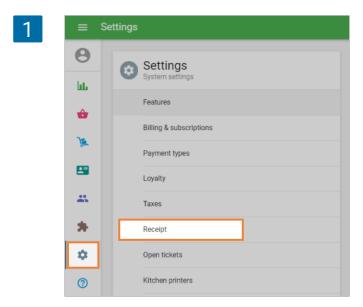


Note: The E-mail entered for sending the receipt will not be saved in the customer base.

# 6.5 Information about the Customer and Comments in the Receipt

These settings only affect the display of information on the receipts for the clients, such as printed receipts, email receipts, and do not affect the format of receipts in the archive in POS and in the Back Office, where customer information and notes are always displayed.

Go to the 'Receipt' section in the 'Settings' menu in the Back Office.



In the Receipt settings, switch on the 'Show customer info' option if you want to display the information of your registered customers on the receipts.

Switch on 'Show comments' option if you want to display the comments of the items and the ticket on the receipts.

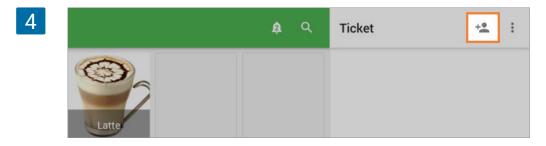
≡	Settings			
 <b>9</b>	0	Settings System settings	Receipt settings	Store Cafeteria
ŵ		Features	Logo	
1		Billing & subscriptions	Emailed receipt Printed receipt	
<b>1</b>		Payment types		
*		Loyalty Taxes		
*		Receipt	Header	
۵		Open tickets		0 / 500
0		Kitchen printers	Footer	0 / 500
		Dining options		
	G	Stores Store & POS settings	Show customer info Show comments	
		Stores	Receipt language	
		POS devices	English	•
				CANCEL SAVE

Don't forget to save your changes by clicking on the 'Save' button.

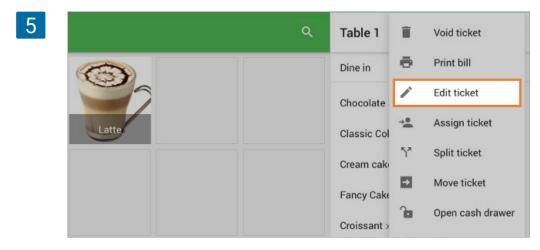
If you have several stores, you have to make these settings for each store by selecting the store's name from the drop-down list and saving changes.

Receipt setti	ngs	Store Cafeteria 🗸
Logo		Cafeteria Coffee shop
Emailed receipt	Printed receipt	

Now, during the sale, when you register a new customer or assign a ticket to an existing customer, the customer name and number will be printed on the receipt.



You can **add comments to the open ticket** by tapping on the 'Edit ticket' button under the menu (:).



Type in the comment on the pop-up window and tap 'Save'.

6	× Edit ticket	SAVE	cake ×
	Name		Cake x
e Juice	Table 1		ant x 1
	Comment Hurry up		x 1
ik Tea	CONVERT TO CUSTOM TICKET		x 1

To **add a comment to the item**, click on the item in the ticket. Fill in the comment field in the pop-up window and tap 'Save'.

7	≡ Pizza	× Pizza 15.00		SAVE	• <b>±</b> :
		Quantity			2.29
	Four Cheese		1	+	15.00
	Pizza	Comment			17.29
		Medium size			
	Pizza	Discounts			
		Discount 10% 10%	Discount 100% 100%	$\bigcirc$	
		Taxes			
		Sales Tax, 15%	added tax, 10%	$\bigcirc$	

The Information about the customer (Name and Number) and notes (comment to the open ticket and comments to the items) will appear on the receipt.

3		Coffee Shop 23 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY	
		Welcome to our shop	
		Order: Table 1 Employee: Andy POS: POS 1	
	Customer Information: Name, Address and Phone	Customer: Judy 15th Avenue, New York, 11219, United States 152244545	
	Ticket comment	→ Hurry up	
		Berry cake 1 x \$6.50	\$6.50
	Item comment	Capuccino 2 x \$4.00 + Milk (\$1.00) + Sugar + Cinamon	\$9.00
		▶ 4 sugar sticks Caesar Salad 2 x \$4.40	\$8.80
		2 x \$4.40 Fruit Salad 1 x \$4.40	\$4.40
		Gado-gado 1 x \$4.00	\$4.00
	Item comment	Apple Juice 3.000 x 55.50 + Cinnamon (\$1.50) + Cinamon With ice	\$18.00
	Item comment	Pepperoni Pizza 2 x \$7.00 Medium size	\$14.00
		Points earned Points balance	6.47 6.47
		Total \$	64.70
		VAT, 20%	\$10.78
		Cash Change	\$70.00 \$5.30
		See you next time!	
		29/12/2023 14:15 #	77-1063

### Note

The item comments will be displayed on the refund receipt, but the ticket comments will not.

If you specify a customer's phone number when you <u>sign up a customer in Loyverse POS</u>, you can identify your customer by their number during a sale.

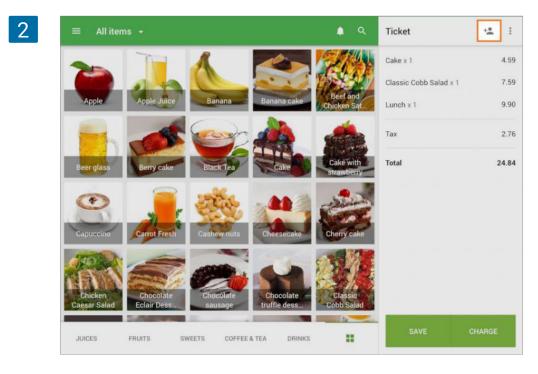
#### Note

For customer registration, it may be enough to fill only one of the three fields: 'Name', 'Phone' or 'Email'. But sometimes, the customer's name is not unique. If you create multiple clients with the same name, it will be difficult to find the correct one. Therefore, we recommend you to fill in the fields 'Phone' or 'Email' as well.

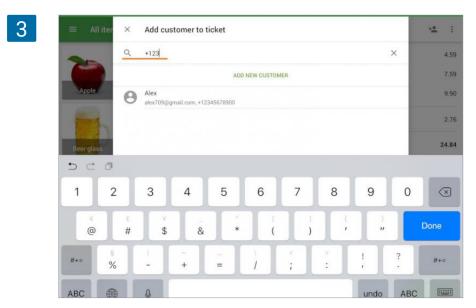
1

$\equiv$ All iten	÷	Create custome	er		SAVE		֥	:
Apple	•1	Name Alex Email Alex709gmail.com				I		×
-	e.	Phone +12345678900				l		
Berry cake	0	Address			 	l		
۲		Town/City		County		l		
Capuccino		Postcode		Country	Ŧ			

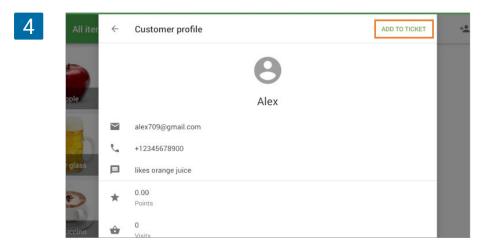
During a sale, tap the 'Add client' icon in the upper right corner of the screen.



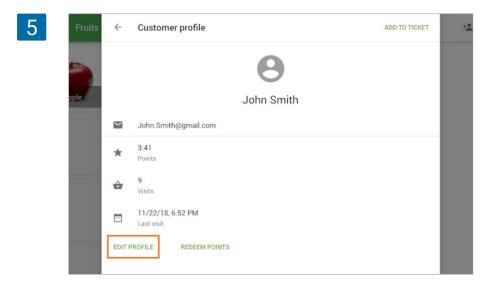
In the 'Search' field, start typing the customer's phone number that you wish to find. Select your customer from the list.



Tap 'Add to the ticket' button to connect the customer to the ticket.



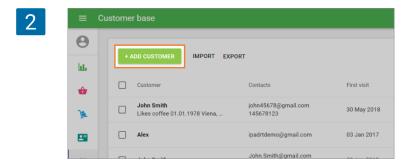
The phone number can be assigned not only to new customers but also to clients created earlier. To do this, find the card of the customer, tap 'Edit profile' and edit it by specifying the phone number.



Enter the Back Office and open your 'Customer base'.



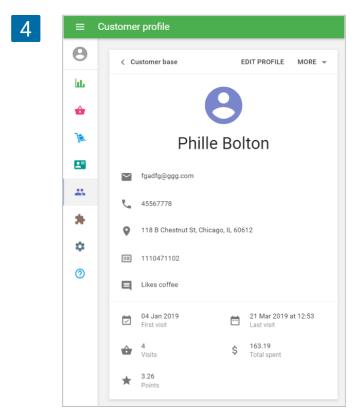
To create a new customer, click on the '+ Add customer' button.



The form 'Create customer' will open for editing.

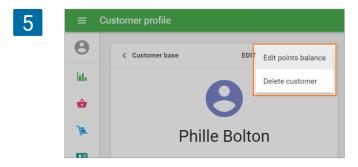
Ţ

You cannot create a client without filling in one of the fields: Name, Phone or Email. You can also make some notes about the customer. After clicking on the 'Save' button, the Customer profile will be created.



By clicking on the 'Edit profile', you can change the name, phone number, address, customer code and note.

There is 'Edit points balance' and 'Delete customer' buttons in the 'More' menu.



You can enter new points balance in the pop-up 'Edit points balance' form and click 'Save'.

	Edit points balance		
	Value 100		
— Last visit		CANCEL	SAVE
0.00 Total spent		CANCEL	SAVE

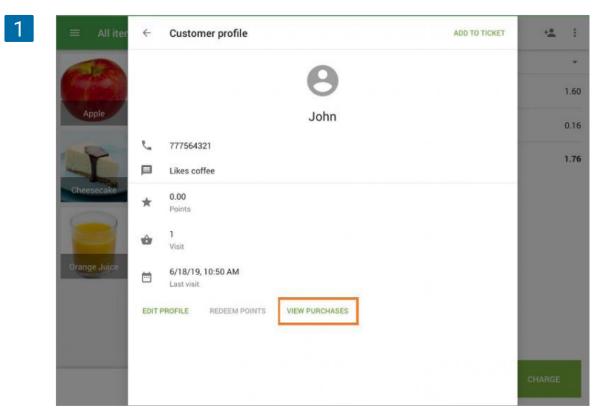
You can also open the existing Customer profile by clicking on the needed customer from the customer base.

= c	ustomer base					
Θ	+ ADD CUSTOMER IMPORT EX	PORT				Q
ht.	+ ADD COSTOMER IMPORT EX	PORT				Ч.
<b>÷</b>	Customer	Contacts	First visit	Last visit	Total visits	Total spent
7	Isabel Blake	zaidquint@mail.com	12 Oct 2017	12 Oct 2017 at 16:06	1	57.03
	Alex likes orange juice	alex709@gmail.com +12345678900	29 Dec 2017	11 Dec 2018 at 12:19	2	30.17
	Judy	152244545	25 May 2020	25 May 2020 at 12:30	1	25.55
*	Katherine Riley	fi_rin@google.com	06 Jan 2018	06 Jan 2018 at 17:11	1	15.27
٠	Douglas Rose	senga-rin@bing.com	06 Jan 2018	06 Jan 2018 at 17:18	1	5.25

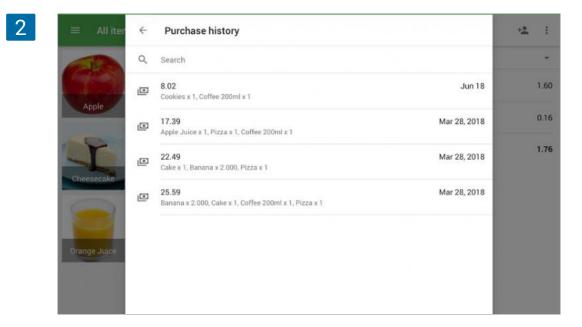
# 6.8 Purchase History of a Registered Customer in the POS

This feature makes it possible to see the purchase history of a registered customer during a sale at the POS.

When making sales in the Loyverse POS app, add <u>registered customer</u> to the ticket. To see the purchase history of the customer, just tap the button "View purchases" on the customer profile.



You will see the list of past receipts issued from this store, connected to the customer. Select to see details.

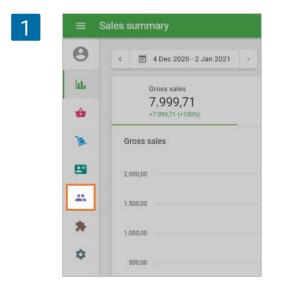


Once you open a selected receipt, you can make a refund, send the receipt by email (the button 'send receipt' is under the three dots menu) or reprint receipts (if a receipt printer is connected).

3 ≡ All iter ←	#1-1067	REFUND	<u>12</u> - E
Apple	8.02 Total		1.60
Apple	Cashier: Owner POS: POS 1 Customer: John 777564321		0.16
Cheesecake	Dine in		
-	Cookies 1 x 5.69	5.69	
Orange Juice	Coffee 200ml 1 x 1.60	1.60	
	Subtotal eat in tax, 10%	<b>7.29</b> 0.73	
4			
	No	ote	
	net connection, you will or aded (to the device's mem	ly be able to see recei	

At the Loyverse POS app, you can manually add customers to the system and edit them. But if you would like to change or add many customers, importing and exporting functions at the back office will be quicker and more convenient.

Enter the Back Office and open the 'Customers' menu.



There are 'Import' and 'Export' buttons at the top of the customers' list.

2	≡ C	ustomer base		
	Θ			
	, LLL	+ ADD CUSTOMER	DRT EXPORT	
	<b></b>	Customer	Contacts	First visit
	)e	Santiago	santiago@webmail.com 603199054112	17 May 2017
	8	Diego	DiegoDi09@mail.com	13 Feb 2019
	*	Fernando	fernando444@mail.com	13 Feb 2019
	*	Sebastián	sebas777@mail.com	13 Feb 2019

Click on the 'Export' button to download all of your contacts. Confirm the download dialog, and save the file to your computer.

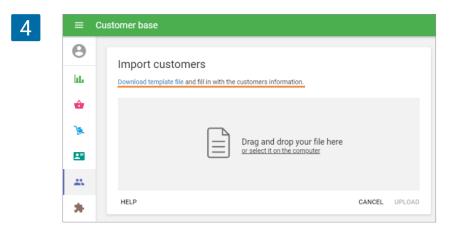
Now you can open your file, edit the customer list, and import it back to the system.

చ	
ີ	
	. <b>``</b>
	$\sim$

	A	В	C	D	E	F	G
1	Customer ID	Customer name	Email	Phone	Address	City	Province
2	95147502	Santiago	santiago@webmail.com	603199054112	Calle Cabo d	e Palos, 7 30010	Murcia Spain
3	2727296151	Diego	DiegoDi09@mail.com				
4	2727274924	Fernando	fernando444@mail.com				
5	2727292518	Sebastián	sebas777@mail.com		Gral. Eulalio	Gutiérrez 1258, Z	Zona Centro, 250
6	2727305703	Camila	CamilaE8@mail.com	454577777			
7	2727312547	Valeria	ValeriaDi5@mail.com				
8	2728093104	Alejandro	alex4517@gmail.com	4517895433			
9	2728168948	Mateo	mate3433@mail.com	6755432888			
10	3980015257	Alex	alex709@gmail.com	+12345678900			
11	2727271176	Alonso	alonso123@gmail.com	548822269669			
12	2727285285	Alicia	Alicia111@mail.com				

During the editing process, remember that the main identifier of your client is by their email address. There should not be different clients with the same email address.

If you want to import the list of new customers, go to 'Import' and click the link, 'Download template file'.



Open your template file and fill up new customer information in the specified columns. If you are missing some information, you may leave the cell blank. Do not delete the column names from the first row or change their place.

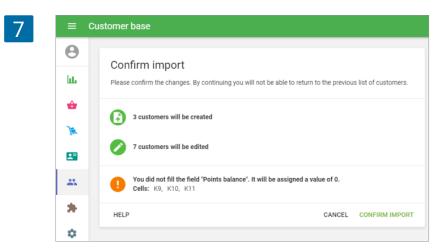
5

	A	в	C	D	E	F
1	Customer ID	Customer name	Email	Number	Points balance	Note
2		Angels Hicks	courowa_we@toodles.com			1
3		Estelles Chapman	elu_redofnd@infoseller.com			1
4		Noahs Francis	Malla-fhi@bing.com			J
5		Daniels Cunningham	dea_lfayd@google.com			
6		Devins Peterson	mauif_sim@yahoo.com			
7		Adrians Cox	ansftice_buse@yahoo.com			
8						Ť.
-				12	12	10

After the file of new customers has been made, you can save and import it at the 'Import customers' window by dragging and dropping it into the selected area or by selecting it on your computer through the link. The import will start after clicking on the 'Upload' button.

6	≡ c	ustomer base	
	Θ	Import quetomore	
	ш	Import customers Download template file and fill in with the customers information.	
	ŵ		
	1	Drag and drop your file here	
		or select it on the computer	
	*	HELP	CANCEL UPLOAD

Then, the confirmation window will appear with a short report and warning signs.

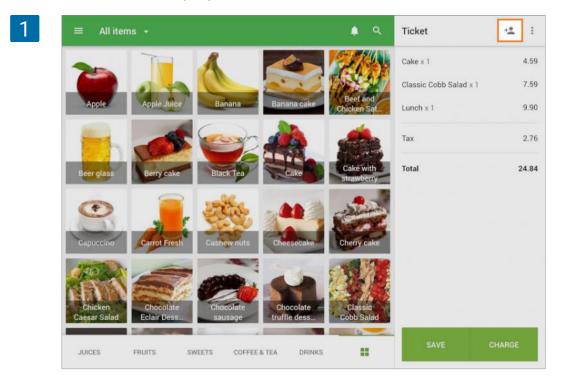


After confirming, the customer base will be renewed with the added customers or any changes to existing ones.

# 6.10 How to Add the Customer to the Receipt by Scanning a Barcode

The cashier can add the customer to the receipt by scanning the barcode from his/her loyalty card with a barcode scanner or device camera. However, before doing that, the barcode from the customer's loyalty card ("customer code") should be entered into the customer's profile.

When you register a new customer at the POS, you can add a customer code by clicking the 'Add client' icon at the top right-hand corner of the sale screen.



Tap on 'Add new customer.'

2 =	Breakf	×	Add customer to ticke	t		+	:
	1	Q	Search		junj		-
	e cream			ADD NEW CUSTOMER		ning they'd p vacated by	
	h straw	Recent	customers			x 50 🕤 7 am, Jam	54.50
Fr	esh salad rolls	0	Benjamin B. ben91@yahoo.com, 555 455 76	92			
	TOILS	0	Jonathan W.			sanes x 2 lice. Serve	60.00
	hai BBQ chicken	0	Hannah hanna76@hotmail.com				32.00
		0	Kevin Ellington ellington-kevin@gmail.com, 555	5 673 3496			16.20
	ieafood	0	ID 29038467 555 876 5786				10.00
		0	Manuel Rodriguez manuel89@hotmail.com			1	78.20
DES	SERTS BR	0	Nora Miller				

Fill in the 'Customer code' field by entering the barcode numbers with the keypad or using a barcode scanner or device camera ("Use camera to scan barcodes" function should be on). Tap' Save.'

	SAVE
Province	
Country	•
	jur)

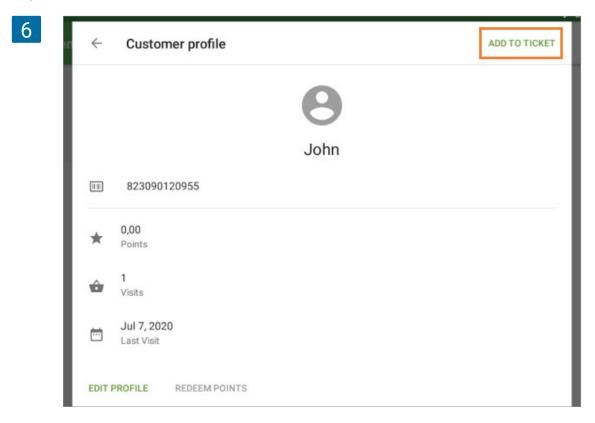
You can also add the customer code at the customer profile in the Back Office.

4	≡	Create customer	
	θ		
	ևե	Θ	
	ŵ		
	1	Name	
	2		
	*	Email	
	*	L Phone	
	۵	• Address	
	0	Address	
		Town/City County	
		Postcode Country	•
		IIII Customer code	
		Note	0/255
			CANCEL SAVE

When the codes are in the customers' profiles, you can search for registered customers by their customer code during the sale. You can use the search field or scan the barcode with a scanner or a built-in camera.

≡ Breakf	$\times$	Add customer to ticket		:
-	Q	Search [III]		-
Ice cream		ADD NEW CUSTOMER	ing they'd ( vacated b	
with straw	Recent	customers	x 50 🕤 🔿	754.50
Fresh salad	0	Benjamin B. ben91@yahoo.com, 555 455 7692	am, Jam	
rolis	0	Jonathan W.	sanes x 2 ilce. Serve	60.00
Thai BBQ chicken	0	Hannah hanna76@hotmail.com	arlic	32.00
	0	Kevin Ellington ellington-kevin@gmail.com, 555 673 3496		16.20
Seafood	0	ID 29038467 555 876 5786		10.00
	0	Manuel Rodriguez manuel89@hotmail.com		178.20
	Fresh salad rolls Thai BBQ chicken	Image: Constraint of the second se	Ce crear   Ce crear   With straw     Recent customers   Benjamin B.   ben91@yahoo.com, 555 455 7692   Danathan W.   Chicken   Cicken   Cicken   Cicken   Cicken   Cicken   Cicken   Danathan W.   Cicken   Cicken	Cec cream   With straw   Fresh salad   Colls   Benjamin B. ben91@yahoo.com, 555 455 7692   Benjamin B. ben91@yahoo.com, 555 455 7692   Colls   Colls </td

If the scanned value matches a customer code, the system opens the profile of this client. Tap the 'Add to ticket' button.



If the scanned value does not match any of the customer code, you will see the following message:

Customer not found	
A customer with the code	820068730017 could not be found

Note

You can also search for receipts using the customer code in the "Receipts" menu at the POS to view all the customer's receipts.

# 6.11 How to See the Purchase History of Registered Customers at the Back Office

After you have set up the customer loyalty program which connects sale records to customers, you may also want to see the purchase history of your regular customers. You can access information about customer purchases through the 'Receipts' report.

1 Receipts 0 () All day -< 🖻 9 Dec 2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > Sales summary ш All receipts Sales by item 19 ŵ Sales by category Sales by employee 12 Sales by payment type .... Receipts Store Sales by modifier \*\*

In the Back Office, go to the 'Receipts' section.

Click on the search icon.

= 1	Receipts						
Θ	< 🗇 9 Dec	2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	③ All day 🖌 📻 Al	i stores 👻 🚊 All emp	oloyees 🗸		
hi.		All receipts			les	Refund	s
ŵ		19		1	9	0 🐻	
*	EXPORT +						
	Receipt no.	Date	Store	England			Total
- 25				Employee	Customer	Туре	
	8-1601	07 Jan 2021 17:30	Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69
•	8-1600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	43.83

Tap your customer name and click <Enter> on the keyboard.

sale 19		0 Refunds	
	Q Jackie		×
Employee	Customer	Туре	Tota
Louis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69

You will see the list of receipts which are connected to the customer.

	Receipts							
Θ	< 🕅 9 Dec	2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	🔾 All day 👻 📻 All	stores 🖌 主 All empl	loyees +		×	
66		All receipts		Sal	es		11.83	
ŵ		5		5		G	Total	
A							Cashier: Louis POS: POS 07	
	EXPORT +				Q, Jackie		Customer: Jackie Figueroa telfo_gall@bing.com	
<b>.</b>	Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Type	Dine in	
							Carrot Fresh	4.9
*	8-1600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	1 × 4.99	4.5
~	8-1599	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Cake 1 × 4.59	4.5
\$							Croissant	2.2
0	8-1598	07 Jan 2021 17:28	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	1×2.25	
	11-1013	06 Jul 2017 22:46	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Points balance	10.6
			Colling Share		to the first second	0.1	Total	11.8
	1497	31 Dec 2015 19:00	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Cash rounding Cash	-0.1

If you click on a receipt row, the details will appear on the right side of the screen.

The other way to see the information about the customer is in the exported 'Receipts' report file. After exporting the report and opening it as a sheet, you can filter the customers.

Choose the desired period for the report. Export it as a CSV file by clicking on the 'Export' button.

= F	Receipts						
Θ	< 团 9 Dec	2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	③ All day 👻 📻 All	stores 🖌 🔔 All emj	ployees 👻		
ш		All receipts			iles	Refunds	
÷		19		5 1	9	0 🐻	
X	EXPORT -	1					Q
	Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Туре	Total
44							
*	8-1601	07 Jan 2021 17:30	Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69
۵	8-1600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	43.83
0	8-1599	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	32.99
	8-1598	07 Jan 2021 17:28	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	11.83

#### Open the file in Google Sheets.

		View Insert	ound Data	Tools Add-on:	s Help Last	edit was second	1270,938				
	1000	100% - грн	00. <u>0</u> . * .	123- Arial	- 10	• B I 4	A 4. E	EE - E -	1 - 14 - 17	- co 🗉 🗟	-Σ - Σ
fx	Date										
	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	1	J	к
1	Date	Receipt number	Receipt type	Gross sales	Discounts	Net sales	Taxes	Tips	Total collected	Cost of goods	Gross profit
2	07/01/2021 17:3	8-1601	Sale	9.69	0.00	9.69	0.00	0.00	9.69	2.75	6.94
3	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1600	Sale	43.83	0.00	43.83	0.00	0.00	43.83	15.41	28.42
4	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1599	Sale	32.99	0.00	32.99	0.00	0.00	32.99	10.90	22.0
5	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1598	Sale	11.83	0.00	11.83	0.00	0.00	11.83	10.30	1.53
6	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1597	Sale	14.79	0.00	14.79	0.00	0.00	14.79	5.87	8.92
7	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1596	Sale	26.60	0.00	26.60	0.00	0.00	26.60	10.52	16.0
8	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1595	Sale	44.51	0.00	44.51	0.00	0.00	44.51	1.29	43.22
9	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1594	Sale	25.88	0.00	25.88	0.00	0.00	25.88	2.40	23.48
10	29/12/2020 19:1	11-1426	Sale	132.59	0.00	132.59	0.00	0.00	132.59	72.25	60.34
11	19/12/2020 10:2	11-1425	Sale	43.02	0.00	43.02	0.00	0.00	43.02	14.51	28.51
12	19/12/2020 10:1	11-1424	Sale	18.59	0.00	18.59	0.00	0.00	18.59	11.70	6.89
13	18/12/2020 13:3	11-1423	Sale	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.93	0.00	15.22	4.71	9.58
14	18/12/2020 13:3	11-1422	Sale	27.30	0.00	27.30	1.45	0.00	28.75	4.71	22.59
15	18/12/2020 13:3	11-1421	Sale	46.48	0.00	46.48	0.00	0.00	46.48	7.50	38.98

Find and select the column 'Customer name' and apply a filter to it.

7

	Filter views			
Р	Q	R	S	т
Store	Cashier name	Customer na \Xi	Customer contac	Status
Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	mary@mail.com	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	mary@mail.com	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	John Smith	john45678@gma	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	John Smith	john45678@gma	Closed
offee shop	Louis		iohn45678@om	Closed

Then, click on the filter icon in the column name and select only the desired customer from the list and apply the filter by clicking the 'OK' button.

8

0	Р	Q	R		S	
POS	Store	Cashier name	Customer	nŦ	Customer conta	
POS 07	Sort A	7			mary@mail.com	
POS 07	SOILA	$\rightarrow L$			telfo_gall@bing	
POS 07	Sort Z	$\rightarrow A$			telfo_gall@bing	
POS 07					telfo_gall@bing	
POS 07	Sort by	Sort by color				
POS 07					john45678@gm	
POS 07	Filter b	v color		*	john45678@gm	
POS 07					john45678@gm	
POS 01	<ul> <li>Filter b</li> </ul>	y condition				
POS 01	✓ Filter b	v values				
POS 01		,				
POS 01	Select all -	Clear				
POS 01						
POS 01			Q			
POS 16						
POS 16	(B	lanks)				
POS 16	1 .la	ckie Figueroa				
POS 01	• 00	ente riguerou				
POS 01	Jo	hn Smith				
	M	ary Johnson				
	1410	ary sonnson				
			100 CO. 100 CO.			
		Cancel	ОК			
	-	Cancel	OK			

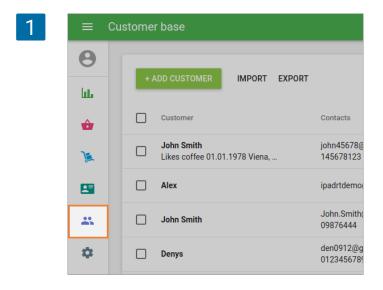
When the filter is applied, you can see purchases made by that specified customer.

9

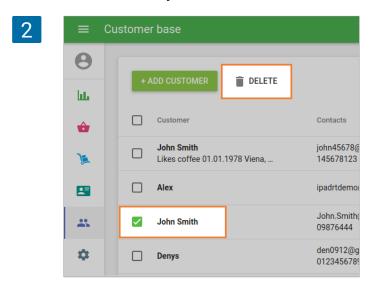
± +  ÷ + 𝒫 + Φ = III III ▼ + Σ - Υκ -						
0	р	Q	R	S	Т	
POS	Store	Cashier name	Customer na 🝸	Customer contac	Status	
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed	
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed	
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed	

### 6.12 How to Delete Customers from the Base

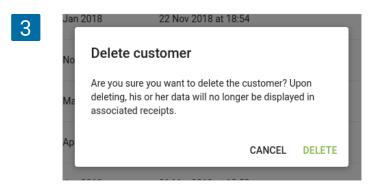
You can delete customers only at the Back Office; not in the Loyverse POS App. Enter the Back Office and open your 'Customer base'.



Select the customers you want to delete from the customer list, and click the 'Delete' button.



Confirm deletion in the open window.



## 6.13 Customer Display System Configuration Guide

This guide will show you how to configure Loyverse CDS. To learn more about working with Customer Display System, please read <u>How Loyverse CDS Customer Display works</u>.

The Loyverse CDS app lets you display itemized order information to your customers on a separate digital display without interrupting the payment flow in the Loyverse POS app.

#### 6.13.1 Install Loyverse CDS app

Download the Loyverse CDS for iOS devices, the **recommended version of iOS is 11.0 or higher** and for **Android devices is 5.0 version or higher**. Loyverse CDS app should be installed on a separate device from the one with the Loyverse POS app.

Launch the app, and you will see the Loyverse CDS welcome screen. The 'IP Address' and 'Device name' of your device will be displayed, which are the information needed for paring CDS with Loyverse POS.



#### 6.13.2 Activate option for using CDS

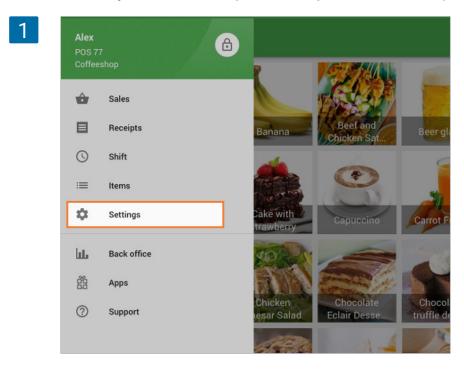
Login to the Back Office, navigate to the Settings menu, Features section, and switch the 'Customer displays' slider on.

=	Settings	
0	Settings System settings	Features
la La	Features	Shifts Track cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more
ŵ	Billing & subscriptions	Time clock     Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn more
)#	Payment types	Open tickets
-	Loyalty	Allow to save and edit orders before completing a payment. Learn more     Kitchen printers
	Taxes	Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more
*	Receipt	Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more
\$	Open tickets	Dinling options     Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more
7	Kitchen printers	Get daily email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more
	Dining options	Negative stock alerts     Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn more
	G Stores Store & POS settings	Weight embedded barcodes Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more
	Stores	CANCEL
	POS devices	

Don't forget to save changes.

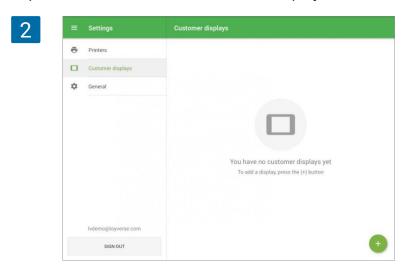
#### 6.13.3 Pair customer display with Loyverse POS

First, make sure that the mobile devices with Loyverse CDS and Loyverse POS are connected to the same Wi-Fi router and the same network.



Then launch Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Customer displays.

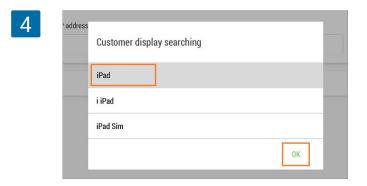
Tap the '+' button to add a customer display.



Enter your customer display name into the 'Name' field and tap the 'Search' button to search the network for available customer display device.

Name		
cds		
Customer disp	lay IP address	SEARCH
	🕤 PAIR	

Select the appropriate customer display from the list of discovered devices, and click OK.



If automatic discovery fails, you can enter the IP address of the customer display device manually. You can take the information about the IP address from the Loyverse CDS welcome screen.

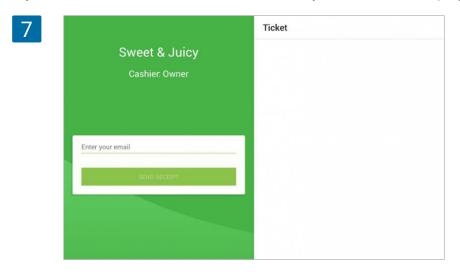
← 0	Create customer display	SA
	Name cds	
	Customer display IP address 192.168.	
	PAIR	

Then tap the 'Pair' button.

On the Loyverse CDS tablet, the invitation to pair CDS to POS will appear. Tap 'Pair' to confirm the connection.



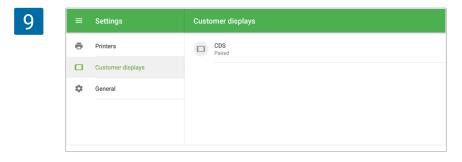
If you see a screen with a blank ticket, then your customer display is paired with Loyverse POS.



At the Loyverse POS, the button 'Pair' will change to 'Unpair'. Save your settings at Loyverse POS.

8	← Create cu	istomer display		SAVE
		Name Cds		
		Customer display IP address	SEARCH	
		😵 UNPAIR		

Now you can see your paired Customer Display on the list.



In the same way, you can connect several CDS to the same POS

## Please refer to the Loyverse CDS setup guide and make sure you <u>Loyverse CDS</u> app is configured correctly.

Now that you have <u>Loyverse CDS setup</u>, it will display order information from the ticket during sales.

At the right side of the screen, there is the ticket with the list of items. CDS will display modifiers, discounts, taxes applied to items as well as to full ticket.

1		Ticket	Dine in
	First shop	Apple Juice x 1	\$\overline{7.00}
	Served by Alice	Black Tea x 2 Cinnamon, Muscat	♡ 5.00
		Berry cake x 1	\$ 8.00
		Cake with strawberry x 1	ି 9.00
	Enter your email SEND RECEIPT		
		Discounts	4.00
		Subtotal	26.00
		Тах	3.58
		Total	29.58

At the left side of the screen the store and cashier names displayed and field that customer can fill in E-mail to receive e-receipt.

2		Ticket	Dine in
	First shop	Apple Juice x 1	♡ 7.00
	Served by Alice	Black Tea x 2 Cinnamon, Muscat	\$ 5.00
		Berry cake x 1	\$ 8.00
		Cake with strawberry $\times$ 1	♡ 9.00
	johndoe@gmail.com		
	SEND RECEIPT		
		Discounts	4.00
		Subtotal	26.00
		Тах	3.58
		Total	29.58

If you have assigned a customer to a ticket, the CDS displays this customer name, bonus points balance and Email.

	Ticket	Dine in
First shop	Apple Juice x 1	\$\overline{7.00}
Served by Alice	Black Tea x 2 Cinnamon, Muscat	\$ 5.00
Mary Johnson	Berry cake x 1	© 8.00
Points balance: 30.19	Cake with strawberry $\times$ 1	♡ 9.00
mary@mail.com		
<ol> <li>Receipt will be sent to email.</li> </ol>		
	Discounts	4.00
	Subtotal	26.00
	Тах	3.58
	Total	29.58

If the ticket is too long, a customer can use a vertical scroll to look through all items.

4		Ticket	Dine in
	First shop Served by Alice	Black Tea x 2 Cinnamon, Muscat	© 5.00
		Berry cake x 1	© 8.00
	B Mary Johnson Points balance: 30.19	Cake with strawberry x 1	ି 9.00
	Points balance: 30.19	Pepperoni Pizza x 1	\$\overline{7.60}
	mary@mail.com	Croissant x 1	♡ 3.20
	<ol> <li>Receipt will be sent to email.</li> </ol>	Banana x 1	ି 4.00
		Capuccino x 1	\$ 5.00
		Discounts	4.00
		Subtotal	45.80
		Tax	6.30
		Total	52.10

After a customer has been charged, customer screen displays total value of payment and change.

Transaction	Successful
Transaction	successful
52.10	17.90
Total paid	Change
Points ear	ned: 5.21
	Total paid

# 7. Reports



## 7.1 Sales Summary Report in the Back Office

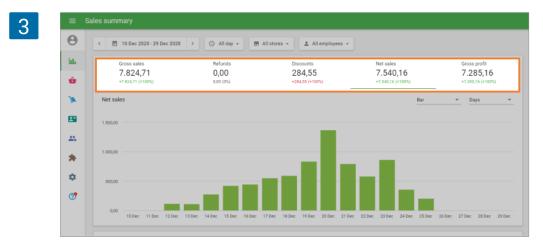
When you enter the Back Office, you will see all of the most important information about your sales in the "Sales Summary" section.



At the top, you can set the period for the report: today, yesterday, this week, this month or custom. If you have several stores, you can select some of them for the report. The same for employees.

≡ \$	Sales sun	nm	ary						
θ			Dece	mber	2020		>	Today	All sto
hi.	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	Su	Yesterday	
~	30	01	02	03	04	05	06	This week	
ŵ	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	Last week	
3	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	This month	
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	Last month	
	28	29	30	31	01	02	03	Last 7 days	
*	Start dat 10/12/		)		id date 9/12/2			Last 30 days	
								CANCEL DONE	
*	500,0	00							

There is a set of tabs with the values of main sales parameters: Gross sales, Refunds, Discounts, Net sales, Gross profit. Below each values, you can see how much more or less you made compared to the previous period in the same span of time. If you click on any of these tabs, you will see the chart of the selected parameter for the period.



**Gross sales** is the total revenue, calculated as the sum of all sales prior to adding any discounts, tips, and taxes. However, if the tax is already included in the price of the goods, that price is used to calculate the gross sales.

**Note:** Taxes that are added to the price will not be taken into account for Gross sales. Taxes that are included in the item price will be taken into account for Gross sales. Cost of the modifiers is counted in Gross sales. Discounts are not taken into account for Gross sales.

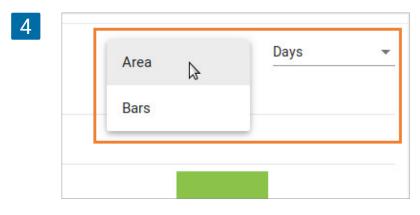
**Refunds** is the amount of money returned to the customers, calculated as the sum of the returned items' prices prior to adding any discounts, tips, and taxes. However, if the tax is already included in the price of the goods, that price is used to calculate refunds.

**Discounts** is the amount of all discounts applied to the items, calculated as the difference between the sum of discounts on sales receipts and the sum of discounts on the return receipts.

**Net sales** is the total revenue minus the cost of discounts and sales returns. **Net Sales = Gross Sales – Discounts – Refunds** 

**Gross profit** – Net sales minus Cost of goods of the item for the selected period **Gross profit = Net sales – Cost of goods** 

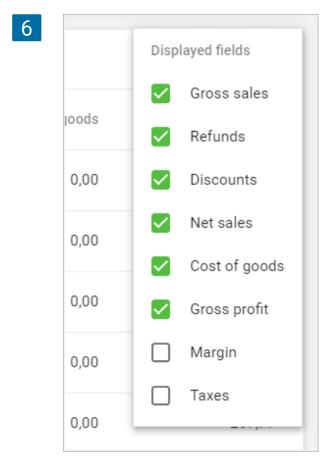
On the diagram of the sales parameters, you can choose to see the data either as an Area or Bars, and also group it hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, or yearly.



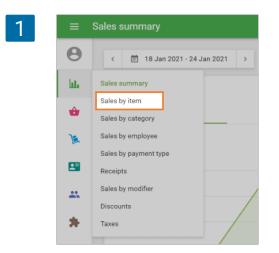
At the bottom, you can see a table with the value of sales summary information for each day. You can export the Sales Summary report by clicking on the 'Export' button.

Date	Gross sales	Refunds	Discounts	Net sales	Cost of goods	Gross
Sep 18	512.00	18.00	5.41	488.59	217.78	2
Sep 17	964.77	0.00	0.00	964.77	388.04	5
Sep 16	704.32	0.00	0.00	704.32	329.47	3
Sep 15	939.33	0.00	0.00	939.33	366.96	5
Sep 14	718.77	0.00	0.00	718.77	281.40	4
Sep 13	507.01	0.00	0.00	507.01	202.42	3
Sep 12	277.05	0.00	0.00	277.05	125.02	1
Sep 11	466.95	0.00	0.00	466.95	155.40	3
Sep 10	539.28	0.00	0.00	539.28	228.80	3

You can also set up and customize the displayed columns by clicking on the three vertical lines icon on the right-hand side of the header.



In the Back Office, go to the 'Sales by item' section.

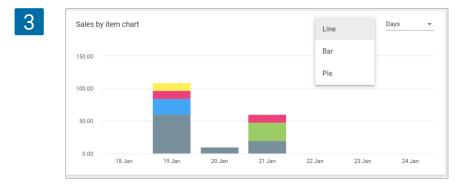


At the top, you can set the period for the report: today, yesterday, this week, this month or custom.

You will see information about your sales by items. The top 5 items will be displayed according to the 'Net sales' along with the total amount sold next to it.

≡ S	ales by item			
Θ	< 🗇 18 Jan 2021 - 24 Jan 2021	> 🕓 All day 👻	📅 All stores 👻 💄 All employees 👻	
bb.	Top 5 items	Net sales	Sales by item chart	Pie 🔻 Days 👻
ŵ	Apple	90.00		
)a	Cake with strawberry	28.00		
-	Berry cake	25.00		
**	Banana cake	24.00		
*	Beef and Chicken Satay	12.03		
۵				
0	EXPORT			Π
	ltem	Category	Cost of goods	Gross prof
	Apple	Fruits	28.26	61.7
	Apple Juice	Drinks	5.00	-0.42

For the 'Sales by item chart' on the right side, you can choose to see the data either as a Bar, Line or Pie chart and also group it in Hours, Days, Weeks, Monthls, Quarters, or Years.



At the bottom, you can see a table with the value of parameters for each item. You can also setup and customize the displayed columns by clicking on three vertical lines icon on the right-hand side of the header.

4	= 5	Sales by item				
	Θ	< 🗇 18 Jan 2021 - 24 Jan 2021 >	③ All day ◄	📅 All stores 👻 💄 All employees 👻		
	հե	Top 5 items	Net sales	Sales by item chart	Pie	
	ŵ	Apple	90.00			
	)k	Cake with strawberry	28.00			
	8	Berry cake	25.00			
	*	Banana cake	24.00			
	*	Beef and Chicken Satay	12.03			
	\$					
	0	EXPORT				
		Item	Category	Cost o	of goods	Gross profit

Parameter options include:

**SKU** — Stock Keeping Unit is a unique code given to each item. See details in <u>How to Add Items in the Loyverse Back</u> <u>Office</u>

Category - the category of the item

**Items sold** – the total number of the item that was sold during the selected period

**Gross sales** – the total revenue for the item for the selected period. See details in <u>Sales Summary Report in the</u> <u>Back Office</u>

**Items refunded** – the total number of the item that was refunded during the selected period

**Refunds** – the total amount refunded for the item during the selected period. See details in <u>Sales Summary Report</u> in the Back Office

**Discounts** – the amount of all discounts on the item for the selected period. See details in <u>Sales Summary Report in the Back Office</u>

**Net sales** – Gross sales minus the cost of discounts and sales returns for the selected period. See details in <u>Sales Summary Report in the Back Office</u>

NetSales = GrossSales - Discounts - Refunds

Cost of goods - the item cost

Gross profit - Net sales minus Cost of goods of the item for the selected period

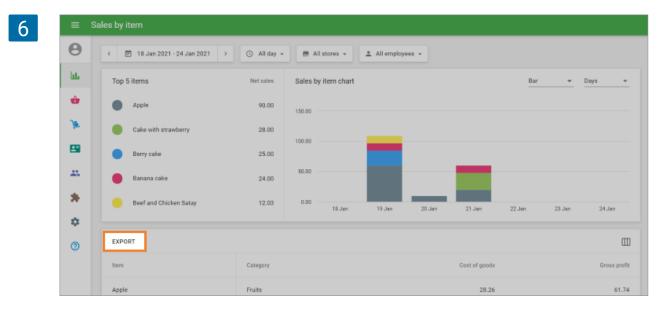
GrossProfit = NetSales - CostOfGoods

 ${\bf Margin}-{\rm the}$  item's margin for the selected period, calculated as the ratio of Gross profit to Net sales

$$Margin = rac{GrossProfit}{NetSales} \ 100\%$$

Taxes - the amount of taxes applied to the item for the selected period

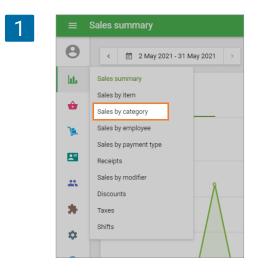
You can export Sales by Item Report for the desired period in CSV file by clicking on the 'Export' button at the top of the data table.



After you download the file to your computer, you can open it in Google Sheets.

	item-sales	-sum	mary-20	018-01-08	-2018-01-14	1 -	in .								0	egmail.com +
≡	10 CO.20				Tools Add-ons			as seconds ago							Comments	6 Share
	しょう	7	100% -	S 96	000_ 123 -	Arial	- 1	• • B 2	5 <u>A</u> -	è.	- 🖽 - 🖂	= - ⊥ -	1÷ · 17 ·	Mor	a -	^
fx	Item name															
0.000	A		B	С	D		E	F	G		н	1	3		к	L
1	Item name	SKU		Category	Items sold	Gr	oss sales	Items refunded	Refunds	1	Discounts	Net sales	Cost of go	ods	Gross profit	Margin
z	Apple Juice	-	1001	Hot Drinks		1	2.29		)	0	(	2.	29	1.44	0.85	37.12
8	Beer		10018	Drinks		10	120		5	0	(	1	20	70	50	41.67
4	Beer glass 0.5 L		10010	Drinks		1	6		)	0	0	>	6	3.5	2.5	41.67
5	Black Tea		1014	Hot Drinks		1	2.39		)	0	(	2.	39	0	2.39	100
6	Classic Cobb Sa	č.	10006	Salads		5	37.95		5	0	(	37.	95	20.6	17.35	45.72
7	Coffee		10014	Drinks		1	9.9		)	0	(	) 9	.9	2	7.9	79.80
8	Cookies		1021	Sweets		1	5.69		)	0	(	5.	69	4,48	1.21	21.27
9	Croissant		1011	Sweets		1	2,25		)	0	(	2.	25	1.4	0.85	37.78
10	Fancy Cake		1020	Sweets		9	42.21		5	0	(	42.	21	18	24.21	57.36
11	Four Cheese Piz		10003	Pizza		8	39,92		0	0		39.	92	17.6	22.32	55.91
12	Fried rice		10024	Meals		2	24.24		)	0	(	24.	24	0	24.24	100
13	Fruit Salad		1005	Fruits		1	8.49		0	0	0	8.	49	3.72	4.77	56.18
14	Gado-gado		10025	Meals		1	4,44		)	0	(	4.	44	0	4.44	100
15	Green Apple		1016	Fruits		2	7.18		0	0	(	7.	18	1	6,18	86.07
16	Green Tea			Hot Drinks		7	16.73		)	0	0.24			2.52		
17	Harvest Salad		10007	Salads		7	55.93		)	0	(	55.	93	27.3	28.63	51.19

In the Back Office, go to the 'Sales by category' section.



You will then see five different columns:

**Category** – List of categories.

Items sold – Number of items purchased per category.

**Net sales** – Category Revenue.

Cost of goods - Category costs.

Gross profit – Overall revenue minus costs.

≡ S	ales by category				
Θ	< 🖄 2 May 2021 - 31 May 2021	> 🕓 All day 👻 📻 All stores 👻	🚊 All employees 👻		
bb.	EXPORT				
÷	Category	Items sold	Net sales	Cast of goods	Gross profit
<b>X</b>	Desserts	7	90.99	11.10	79.89
-	Drinks	22	57.22	53.00	4.22
**	Fruits	3	33.00	21.55	11.45
*	Une Brinks		7.77	0.70	6.00

You can export the 'Sales by category' report by clicking on the 'Export' button. You can also set up and customize the displayed columns by clicking on the three vertical lines icon on the right-hand side of the header.

3	EXPORT			-	
	Category	Items sold	Net sales	Cost of goods	Gross profit
	Desserts	7	90.99	11.10	79.89
	Drinks	22	57.22	53.00	4.22
	Fruits	3	33.00	21.55	11.45
	Hot Drinks	3	7.67	0.78	6.89

Then select your desired columns.

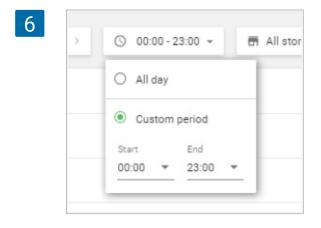
					_								
						Disp	playe	d fields					
						$\sim$	Ca	itegory					
	Cost of g	oods				$\leq$	lte	ms sol	ld				
	1	1.10					Gr	oss sa	les				
	5	3.00	3.00				ltems refunded						
			5.00				Re	funds					
	2	1.55					Dis	scount	s				
		0.78				$\leq$	Ne	et sales	3				
						$\leq$	Со	st of g	oods				
		8.00				$\leq$	Gr	oss pro	ofit				
		9.01					Ma	argin					
						$\square$	Та						
	8	3.60					Id	xes					
	8	3.60			L		14	xes					
			cat					xes					
	≡ S	3.60 ales by	cate	egor	y			xes					
			cate		<b>y</b> ay 20:			xes	Today				4
	≡ S	ales by	cate Tu				Sa	Su	Today Yesterday	y			-
	≡ s ⊖ LL	ales by		М	ay 20:	21							
	≡ s 8	ales by < Mo	Tu 27 04	M We 28 05	ay 20: Th 29 06	21 Fr	Sa 01 08	Su	Yesterday	k			-
	≡ s ⊖ LL	ales by	Tu 27	M We 28	ay 20: Th 29	21 Fr 30	Sa 01	Su 02	Yesterday This week	k k			4
I	≡ s ⊖ LL	ales by ( Mo 26 03 10 17	Tu 27 04 11 18	M We 28 05 12 19	ay 20: Th 29 06 13 20	21 Fr 30 07 14 21	Sa 01 08 15 22	Su 02 09 16 23	Yesterday This week Last week	k k th			
1	= S (	ales by ( Mo 26 03 10 17 24	Tu 27 04 11 18 25	M We 28 05 12 19 26	ay 20: Th 29 06 13 20 27	21 Fr 30 07 14 21 28	Sa 01 08 15 22 29	Su 02 09 16 23 30	Yesterday This week Last week This mon	k k th			4
1	= s	ales by ( Mo 26 03 10 17 24 31	Tu 27 04 11 18 25 01	M We 28 05 12 19	ay 20: Th 29 06 13 20 27 03	21 Fr 30 07 14 21 28 04	Sa 01 08 15 22 29 05	Su 02 09 16 23	Yesterday This week Last week This mon Last mon	k k th ys			A
	= S (	ales by ( Mo 26 03 10 17 24	Tu 27 04 11 18 25 01	M We 28 05 12 19 26 02	ay 200 Th 29 06 13 20 27 03 E	21 Fr 30 07 14 21 28	Sa 01 08 15 22 29 05	Su 02 09 16 23 30	Yesterday This week Last week This mon Last mon Last 7 da	k k th ys			4
		ales by ( Mo 26 03 10 17 24 31 Start d	Tu 27 04 11 18 25 01	M We 28 05 12 19 26 02	ay 200 Th 29 06 13 20 27 03 E	21 Fr 30 07 14 21 28 04	Sa 01 08 15 22 29 05	Su 02 09 16 23 30	Yesterday This week Last week This mon Last mon Last 7 da Last 30 d	k k th ys	DO	NE	A

You can also choose the specific time period from which to view data: Today, Yesterday, This week, Last week, This month, Last month, Last 7 days, or Last 30 days.

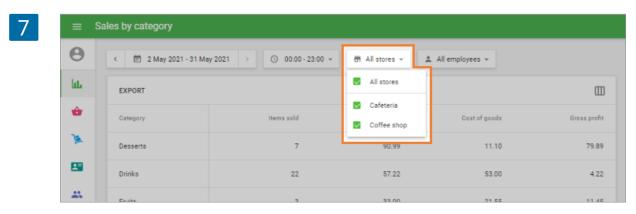
Or you can select a start and end date on the calendar.

Select the period and click 'Done'.

If you want to generate a report for some particular time span during each day, choose 'Custom period' option instead of 'All day' and set the start and end time.

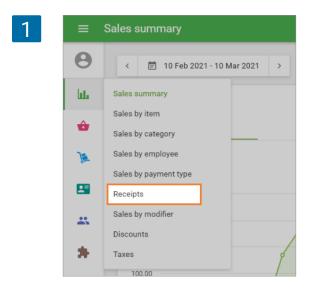


If you have **multiple stores**, you can see all of your sale reports by selecting a filter for all or selected stores.



### 7.4 Receipts Section in the Reports in the Back Office

In the Back Office, go to the 'Receipts' section in the 'Reports' menu.



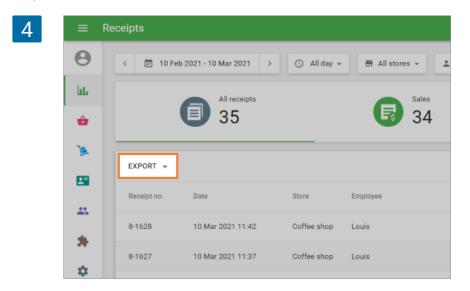
You can choose the desired period for the report with the time selectors at the top of the page. There is also an overview of different receipt types at the top of the page: 'All receipts,' 'Sales' and 'Refunds'. If you click on any of these buttons, only this type of receipt will display on the list.

	≡ Re	ceipts						
6	9	< 🗇 10 Fe	b 2021 - 10 Mar 2021 >	🕓 All day 🗸	All stores	✓ ▲ All employees ✓		
b	њ		All receipts			Sales	Refund	8
	ô		35			34	5 1	
٦	a.	EXPORT -						Q
E		Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Туре	Total
- 2								
5	*	8-1628	10 Mar 2021 11:42	Coffee shop	Louis	-	Sale	20.98
	¢	8-1627	10 Mar 2021 11:37	Coffee shop	Louis	-	Sale	20.98

If you move the cursor over each receipt, it will highlight the entire row. If you click on it, the receipt details will appear on the right side of the screen.

≡	Receipts						
Θ	< 🖹 10 Fe	eb 2021 - 10 Mar 2021 >	🕓 All day 🗸	🖶 All stores 👻	🚊 All emple	×	***
հե		All receipts		Sale	28		.00
ŵ		<b>U</b> 35		5 😼	4	Τ.	otal
1						Cashier: Louis POS: POS 07	
-	EXPORT +					Cake with strawberry 1 × 14.00	14.00
_	Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Total	14.00
*	8-1628	10 Mar 2021 11:42	Coffee shop	Louis	-	Visa0010(Chip) Reference #	14.00 TRQAGG4MVS
*						AID TVR	A000000031010 4240A08000
\$	8-1627	10 Mar 2021 11:37	Coffee shop	Louis	-	TSI Signature	E800 Not required
~	8-1626	10 Mar 2021 11:36	Coffee shop	Louis	-	10 Mar 2021 11:34	№ 8-1625
0							

You can export specific receipt types for the desired period in CSV file by clicking on the 'Export' button.



After you download the file to your computer, you can open it in Google Sheets.

•	File E	st view Inser	t Format D		idd-ons H	elp Last	edit was	second	8.890								a Share
	~ ~ 8	7 100% -	s % .0_	.0 <u>0</u> 123 <b>-</b> A	rial	▼ 10	- B	I S	<u>A</u> À 🖽	8 -  ≣-	<u>+</u> *  + *	17 × 00 ⊞	in Υ • Σ	- Үн -			
N16		5c Dine in															
	A	В	с	D	E	P	0	н	1	J	ĸ	L	м	N	0	P	Q
1	Date	Receipt number	Receipt type	Gross sales	Discounts	Net sales	Taxes	Tips	Total collected	Cost of goods	Gross profit	Payment type	Description	Dining option	POS	Store	Cashier nar
2	10/03/2021	8-1628	Sale	20.96	0.00	20.98	0.00	0.00	20.98	11.95	09.00	Sumup	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
2	10/03/2021	8-1627	Sale	20.98	0.00	20.98	0.00	0.00	20.98	11.95	09.03	Sumup	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	PO5 07	Coffee shop	Louis
4	10/03/2021	8-1626	Sale	20.98	0.00	20.98	0.00	0.00	20.98	11.95	09.00	Sumup	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
5	10/03/2021	8-1625	Sale	14.00	0.00	14.00	0.00	0.00	14.00	6.80	7.20	Sumup	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
6	09/03/2021	8-1624	Sale	14.00	0.00	14.00	0.00	0.00	14.00	6.80	7.20	Cash	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
7	09/03/2021	8-1623	Sale	20.98	0.00	20.98	0.00	0.00	20.98	11.95	09.03	Sumup	1 x Cake, 1 x	C Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
8	09/03/2021	8-1622	Sale	20.98	0.00	20.98	0.00	0.00	20.98	11.96	09.00	Sumup	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
9	03/03/2021	8-1621	Sale	33.09	0.00	33.09	0.00	0.00	33.09	11.70	21.39	Cash	1 x Cake with	s Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
10	01/03/2021	8-1620	Sale	24.29	0.00	24.29	0.00	0.00	24.29	11.80	12.49	Cash	1 x Capuccine	Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis
11	25/02/2021	33-1007	Sale	78.58	0.00	78.58	0.00	0.00	78.58	73.70	4.88	Card	1 x Banana, 1	Dine in	POS 16	Coffee shop	Louis
12	25/02/2021	33-1005	Sale	5.29	0.00	5.29	0.00	0.00	5.29	04.05	1.24	Cash	1 x Banana, 1	Dine in	POS 16	Coffee shop	lsaak
13	17/02/2021	11-1436	Sale	23.59	0.00	23.59	0.00	0.00	23.59	13.27	10.32	Cash	1.000 x Apple	Dine in	POS 01	Coffee shop	Louis
14	17/02/2021	11-1435	Sale	52.50	0.00	52.50	0.00	0.00	52.50	17.55	34.94	Cash	1 x Berry cake	Dine in	POS 01	Coffee shop	Louis
15	17/02/2021	11-1434	Sale	44.99	0.00	44.99	0.00	0.00	44.99	12.30	32.69	Card	1 x Chocolate	EDine in	POS 01	Coffee shop	Louis

You can filter or sort your sales by certain parameters, for example, See the Purchase History of Registered Customers.

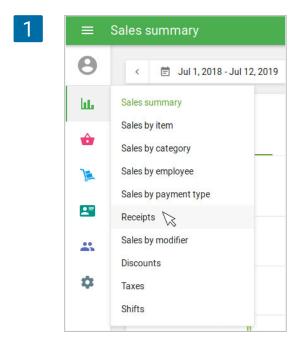


<u>A</u>	<u>Α</u> ♦. ⊞ ΞΞ - Ξ - ± - Η - Ϸ - G⊃ Ε μ ▼ - Σ - Υκ -								
-	М	N	0	Р	Q	R	s	т	
	Description	Dining option	POS	Store	Cashier name	Customer ne 🝸	Customer contac	Status	
	1 x Capuccino,	Dine in	POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	John Smith	ohn45678@gma	Closed	

## 7.5 How to Cancel Receipts in Loyverse Back Office

Cancellation of receipts is necessary when a sale/refund was made by mistake or for a test. When you cancel a receipt, it will not be accounted for in the reports, and all items will be returned to stock.

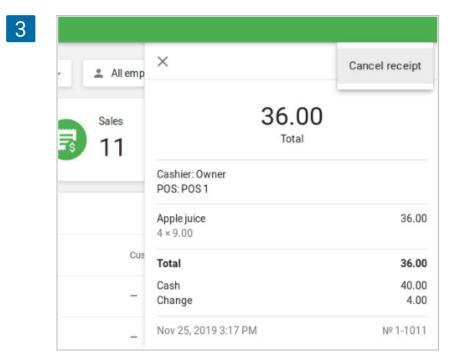
In the Back Office, go to the 'Receipts' section in the 'Reports' menu.



Click on the receipt that you want to cancel to see the receipt details. Click on the three dots menu in the upper right corner.

2	= F						
	Θ	< 🗇 Oct 2	7, 2019 - Nov 25, 2019 >	⊙ Aliday ≁	🚨 All emp	×	•••
	lui.		All receipts	_	Sales	36.00	
	ŵ		12		11	Total	
	)a					Cashier: Owner POS: POS 1	
	-	EXPORT *				Apple juice 4×9.00	36.00
		Receipt no.	Date	Employee	Cus	Total	36.00
	**	1-1011	Nov 25, 2019 3:17 PM	Owner	-	Cash Change	40.00 4.00
	٠	1-1010	Nov 25, 2019 3:17 PM	Owner	-	Nov 25, 2019 3:17 PM	№ 1-1011
	0						

Click on the "Cancel receipt" button.



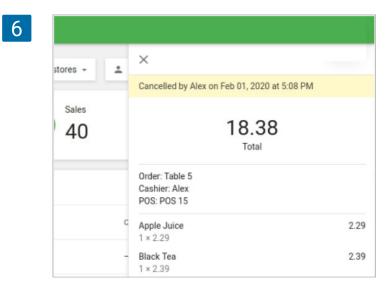
Confirm cancellation in the dialog screen.

4				1 v 2.29
	Cance	receipt		: <b>k Tea</b> 2.39
		t will not be accounted in reports vill be returned to stock		ot Fresh 1.99
	020 11:57	ure you want to continue?		uccino 5.30
	020 11:54	N	D YE	le Juice
	020 11:53 AM Co	Itee shop Alex	-	Subtotal

5 0 < 🗇 Oct 27, 2019 - Nov 25, 2019 🕓 All day -😩 All employees 👻 hh All receipts Sales Refunds E 11 = 12 1 ŵ E EXPORT -Q **1**= Receipt no. Date Employee Customer Туре Total ----1-1011 Nov 25, 2019 3:17 PM Owner Sale (cancelled) 36.00 ¢. 1-1010 Nov 25, 2019 3:17 PM Sale 29.00 Owner 0 1-1009 Nov 25, 2019 3:16 PM 17.00 Owner Refund 1-1008 Nov 25, 2019 3:16 PM Owner Sale 57.00

Now, this receipt is marked as cancelled in the receipts list.

And in the receipt details, you can see who cancelled it and when it was cancelled.



Cancellation of receipts can be performed by users with "Cancel receipts" rights. By default, this right is set for Owner and Administrator groups.

7	≡	Edit group	
	Θ		Change settings
	ևե		Access to live chat support
	ŵ		Back office Employees can log in to the back office using their
	)		email and password
			View sales reports
			Cancel receipts
	**		Items
	-		Manage employees

#### After the cancellation of the receipt:

- Amounts from cancelled receipts are not taken into account when calculating data in reports in the Back Office.
- Amounts from cancelled receipts are not taken into account in both the current and closed shifts.
- The quantity of sold items is returned to the stock, but when cancelling a refund receipt, the quantity of items is deducted from the stock.

#### Note

The cancellation of a receipt cannot be reversed.

You cannot cancel the receipt that was fully or partially refunded without the cancellation of the refund receipt first.

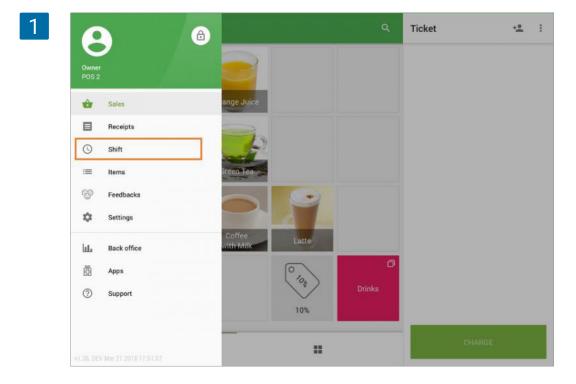
In case of cancellation of the receipts with integrated card payments, funds will not be returned to the customer's card.

## 7.6 Shift Report with Sales Summary at the POS

It is possible to see the shift report when the option 'Shifts' is switched on in the System settings in the Back Office.

You can print a shift report if at least one receipt printer has been added in the POS app settings with the option to print receipts and bills.

You can access the current shift report by tapping the 'Shift' button in the main menu.



The **report of the current shift** contains data of the cash drawer and the current sales summary (X-report). You can print this report on your receipt printer by tapping the 'Print' icon.

CASH MANAGEMENT	CLOSE SHIFT
Shift opened: Owner	3/22/18, 2:44 PM
Cash drawer	
Starting cash	100.0
Cash payments	85.0
Cash refunds	2.0
Paid in	0.0
Paid out	5.0
Expected cash amount	178.0
Sales summary	
Gross sales	116.8
Refunds	5.8
Discounts	1.3
Net sales	109.7
Cash	83.0
Cash rounding	-0.1
Card	27.6

The closed shift report contains data of the cash drawer and the sales summary at the closing of the shift, including the actual amount of cash and the difference in comparison with the expected amount (Z-report). To get the **closed shift report**, tap the 'Close shift' button.

CASH MANAGEMENT	CLOSE SHIFT
Shift opened: Owner	3/22/18, 4:10 PM
Cash drawer	
Starting cash	100.00
Cash payments	148.00
Cash refunds	6.00
Paid in	0.00
Paid out	5.00
Expected cash amount	237.00
Sales summary	
Gross sales	162.67

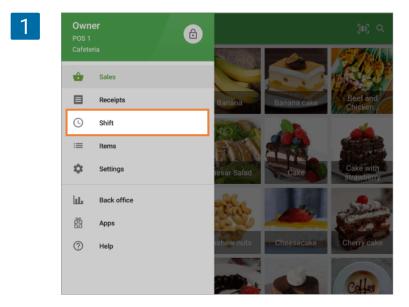
If the user has rights, he/she can see the 'Expected amount of cash' that is calculated from sales, refunds, and cash paid in/out during the shift. Enter the 'Actual cash amount' that is in the cash drawer, and tap the 'Close shift' button.

4	≡ Shift	× Close shift		ə
		Expected cash amount	237.00	
		Actual cash amount	237.00	
		Difference	-	
		Print report		
		CLOSE SHIFT		

Shif	treport
Store: Shop 2	
POS: POS 2	
Shift opened:	
Owner	3/22/18, 4:10 PM
Shift closed:	
Owner	3/22/18, 4:15 PM
Cast	drawer
Starting cash	100.00
Cash payments	148.00
Cash refunds	6.00
Paid in	0.00
Paid out	5.00
Expected cash amour	t 237.00
Actual cash amount	237.00
Difference	
Sales	summary
Gross sales	162.67
Refunds	13.38
Discounts	0.00
Net sales	149.29
Cash	142.00
Cash rounding	-0.83
Card	7.49
	3/22/18, 4:15 PM

The closed shift report will be printed on your receipt printer.

You can access the shift history by tapping the 'Shift' button in the main menu.



You will see the report of the current shift. Tap on the 'history' icon to access the shift history.

CASH MANAGEMENT	CLOSE SHIFT
Shift opened: Owner	14/07/2018, 17:56
Cash drawer	
Starting cash	50.00
Cash payments	74.00
Cash refunds	0.00
Paid in	20.00
Paid out	0.00
Expected cash amount	144.00
Sales summary	
Gross sales	122.58
Refunds	0.00
Discounts	0.00

Shifts from the current POS will be displayed in the list. Non-synchronized shifts (unsynchronized events, such as openings, closing, pay-ins, payouts) will say 'Unsynced'.



Tap on the shift in the list to see its details. You can print this report on your receipt printer by tapping the 'Print' icon.

<mark>4</mark> ≡ shi	ά ← Shift	ē	
	Opened: Owner	14/07/18,17:52 pm	
	Closed: Owner	14/07/18,17:54 pm	
	Cash drawer		
	Starting cash	100.00	
	Cash payments	71.00	
	Cash refunds	0.00	
	Paid in	0.00	
	Paid out	0.00	
	Expected cash amount	71.00	
	Actual cash amount	171.00	
	Difference	100.00	
	Sales summary		
	Gross sales	101.49	
	Refunds	0.00	

Note

Viewing the shift history is available to all employees who have the "View shift report" access right.

## 7.8 How Taxes are Calculated

There are two types of taxes that can be applied to items at Loyverse POS 'added to the price' and 'included in the price'.

An example of 'added to the price' tax is sales tax in the USA - where all the prices are listed without the sales tax, but during checkout, the sales tax is added to the price, and the customer pays the price of the item plus the sales tax.

An example of 'included in the price' tax is value-added tax (VAT) in EU countries, also known as goods and services tax (GST) in India, Australia, Canada, Malaysia, New Zealand, and Singapore - where the tax is already included in the price listed.

#### 7.8.1 Calculation of 'added to the price' tax

To calculate the value of the 'added to the price' tax, you have to multiply the item price by the tax rate in decimal form.

**For example**, if the tax rate is 6%, multiply the item's price by 0.06. So if the item is 20, the value of the 'added to the price' tax will be 20×0.06= 1.20.

PAYMENT	:
21.20	)
Cashier: Alex POS: POS 02	
Sandwich 1 × 20.00	20.00
Subtotal	20.00
Sales Tax 6%	1.20
<b>Total</b> Cash	<b>21.2</b> 0 21.20
Mar 01, 2019 2:09 PM	№ 12-1184

#### 7.8.2 Calculation of 'included in the price' tax

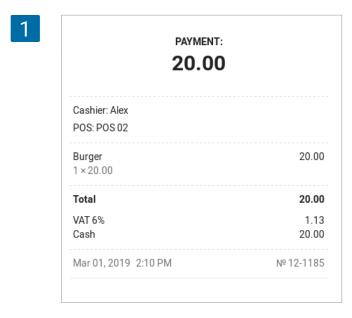
In the case of '*included in the price*' tax, the item price consists of pre-tax price value plus the tax value.

Price = PretaxPrice + Tax

And the tax will be applied to the pre-tax price.

To calculate the item's pre-tax price, divide the price by 1 + the tax rate in decimal form. To find the value of the tax that is included in the item's price, you have to subtract the pre-tax price from the item price.

**For example**, if the tax rate is 6%, divide the item's price by 1.06. So if the item is 20 with the 'included in the price' tax, then the value of the pre-tax price is 20/1.06 = 18.87 (rounded), and the value of the 'included in the price' tax is 20-18.87=1.13.



#### 7.8.3 Application of several taxes at the same time

#### How to calculate the tax value if multiple 'added to the price' taxes were applied to an item.

The value of multiple 'added to the price' taxes of an item is calculated in the same way as if only one tax is applied (see above).

**For example**, if you sell an item at 12.00 with added tax A=20% and added tax B=5%, the tax values will be 2.40 and 0.60 respectively:

TA = 12×0.20=2.4; TB = 12×0.05=0.6

PAYMENT:	
15.00	
Cashier: Alex POS: POS 02	
Bread 1 × 12.00	12.00
Subtotal	12.00
Tax B 5%	0.60
Tax A 20%	2.40
<b>Total</b> Cash	<b>15.00</b> 15.00
Mar 01, 2019 2:56 PM	№ 12-1186

#### How to calculate the tax value if multiple 'included in the price' taxes were applied to an item

The value of 'included in the price' tax of an item is calculated as the multiplication of the price of the item and the tax rate, divided by the sum of the rates of all included taxes plus one:

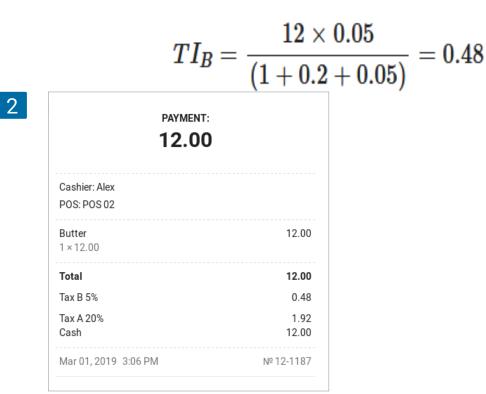
$$TI = rac{p imes TIPV}{(1 + \sum_i TIPV_i)}$$

where

TI = the value of the 'included in the price' tax
p = the price of the item
TIPV = the included tax rate in decimal form
i = the number of tax rates included in the price

**For example**, if you sell an item at 12.00 with included tax A=20% and included tax B=5%, the value of TI will be 1.92 and 0.48 respectively:

$$TI_A = rac{12 imes 0.2}{(1+0.2+0.05)} = 1.92$$



#### How to calculate the value of the 'added to the price' tax if the price has included taxes

The value of the 'added to the price' tax of an item is calculated as the multiplication of the rate of the added tax by the price of the goods reduced by the sum amount of the included taxes:

$$TA = TAPV imes (p - \sum_i TI_i)$$

where

TA = the value of the 'added to the price' tax
p = the price of the item
TAPV = the added tax rate in decimal form (1%=0.01)
TI = the value of the 'included in the price' tax
i = the number of tax rates included in the price

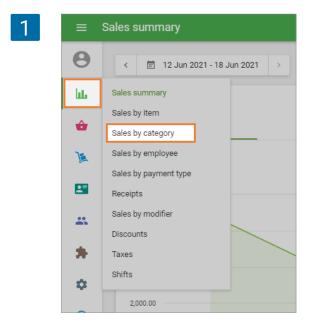
**For example**, if you sell an item at 12.00 with included tax A=20% and included tax B=5%, and also added tax C=10%, the value of TA will be 0.96:

## $TA = 0.1 \times (12 - (1.92 + 0.48)) = 0.96$

PAYMENT:	
12.96	
Cashier: Alex POS: POS 02	
Sausage 1 × 12.00	12.00
Subtotal	12.00
Tax B (included) 5%	0.48
Tax A (included) 20%	1.92
Tax C 10%	0.96
Total	12.96
Cash	12.96

## 7.9 How to Export Data from Reports and Open in Excel

Select your Report in Back Office, in the "Reports" section. For example, view "Sales by category".



After selection of the required period, press the "Export" button.

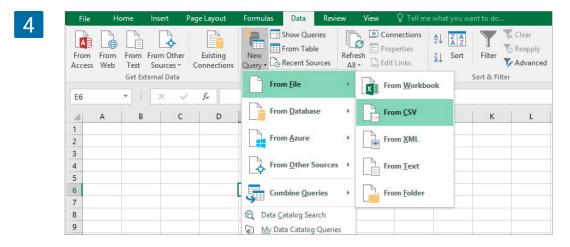
2	≡	Sales by category		
	Θ	< 📄 12 Jun 2021 - 18 Jun 2021	I > () All day - In All stores -	💄 All employees 👻
	հե	EXPORT		
	ŵ	Category	Items sold	Net sales
	)	Desserts	39	530.05
		Drinks	175	4,239.08
	*	Fruits	241.5	5,584.61

And enter your filename. Loyverse POS can export data in the CSV spreadsheet. Now you have the file saved on your computer.

Next, you have to open your file through Microsoft Excel.



In Microsoft Exel, select 'Data - New Query... - From CSV'.



Select your CSV file and click 'Import'.

	and category st	ales-summary-2017	01 01 201	25.02.2017 12.10	Microsoft Excel C	1	КБ		
name	category-sa	les-summary-2017-	01-01-2017-02	2-18		~	CSV (Comm	a delimited)	

You will see a 'Query Editor' window with table.

File		Home Tr	ransform Add	t Column View								
Close Load Clos	a •	Refresh Preview *	Properties Advanced Editor Ivery	Choose Remove Columns Columns *	Keep Remove Rows * Rows *	Remove Du	2.000	Split Gre Column + B	Use First	Row As Headers -	Merge Queries	CONTRACTOR OF THE OWNER
	<b>m</b> .	Column1	· Column2	Column3 *	Column4	* Column5	* Column6	- Column7	Column8	· Column9	Column10 -	Column11 💌
12	1	Category	Items sold	Gross sales	Items refunded	Refunds	Discounts	Net sales	Cost of good	Is Gross profit	Margin	Taxes
Queries	2	Juice	156.000	2537.99	0.000	0,00	0.00	2537.99	2054.95	483.03	19.03%	38.01
a	3	Soft drinks	23,000	1035.08	0.000	0.00	0.00	1035.08	825.38	209.70	20.26%	0.35
	4	Hot Drinks	169.000	4325.55	0.000	0.00	0.00	4325.68	2909.58	1416.10	32.74%	48.45
	5	Fruits	151.000	4004.33	0.000	0.00	0.00	4004.33	3193.40	810.93	20.25%	66.34
	6	Sandwiches	74.000	1665.07	0.000	0.00	0.00	1665.07	1325.80	341.27	20.50%	17.35
	7	Sweets	107.000	2345.27	0.000	0.00	0.00	2345.27	1866.16	479.11	20.43%	61.81
	8	Salads	78.000	566.87	0.000	0.00	0.00	566.87	343.70	223.17	39.37%	44.49
	9	Meals	3.000	20.60	0.000	0.00	0.00	20.60	0.00	20.60	100.00%	1.80
	10	Pizza	39.000	207.21	0.000	0.00	0.00	207.21	102.36	104.85	50.60%	18.25
	11	No category	1.000	5.00	0.000	0.00	0.00	5.00	0.00	5.00	100.00%	0.44

Click 'Close & Load'.

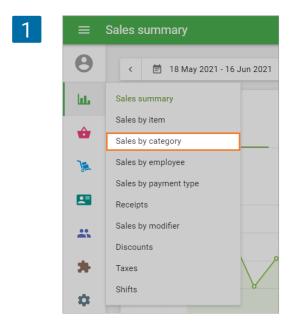
	_	Home	Transform	Add	Column	View																		
Close Load	*	10	Cuery	ditor	Choose Columns Manage		ie Is *	Keep Remov Rows * Rows R	1	Remove D	1933	Conception of the	1		H By	Data Type: Text	W A		I.	Aerge Quene Append Quer Combine Bin Combine	ies	Cà Re	w Sourc cent Sou	rces
¥.	-	Columna	Colur	nn2	- Colum	in3	-	Column4		* Column5	4	Column6		Column7	4	Column8		Column9		Column10	- 0	olumn11		
11 21	1	Category	/ Items	bloc	Gross	sales		Items refunded		Refunds		Discounts		Net sales		Cost of goods		Gross profit		Margin	Te	akes		
Queñ	2	Juice	150	00	2537.3	99	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		2537.99		2054.95		483.03		19.03%	31	B.01		
a	3	Soft drin	ks 23.00	0	1035.	98	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		1035.08		825.38		209.70		20.26%	0	35		
	4	Hot Drin	ks 169.0	00	4325.0	56	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		4325.68		2909.58		1415.10		32.74%	4	8.45		
	5	Fruits	131.0	000	4004	11	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		4004.33		3193.40		810.93		20.25%	6	6.34		
	б	Sandwid	hes 74.00	0	1665.	07		0.000		0.00		0.00		1665.07		1323.80		341.27		20.50%	1	7.35		
	7	Sweets	107.0	00	2345.3	27	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		2345.27		1866.16		479.11		20.43%	6	1.81		
	8	Salads	78.00	10	566.8	7	1	0.000		0.00		0.00		566.87		343.70		223.17		39.37%	4	1.49		
	9	Meals	3.000	0	20.60		4	0.000		0.00		0.00		20.60		0.00		20.60		100.00%	1	.80		
				1.00	10000											The second second				2201 C	1.1	6422		

As a result, you have opened the table with the exported sales report by category.

F	ile Hom	e Inse	rt Page Layo	ut Formulas	Data Rev	view View	🛿 Tell mev	vhat you want b	o do			
-	Do cur		Calibri	* 11 * A* A*	= = =	ø/• 🖶	Wrap Text	General	*	₽	Nor	mal
Pa	L Fa Copy ste Clipboard		В <u>I</u> <u>U</u> +	🖽 • 🔷 • 🔺 •	= = =	Alignment	Merge & Center		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Conditional Formatting *		ck Ce
N	22 *	1 >	√ f <sub>x</sub>									
a	A	В	C	D	E	F	G	н	1	j	ĸ	
1	Column1 -	Column	2 - Column3	• Column4 •	Column5	Column6 -	Column7 💌	Column8: 💌	Column9 -	Column10	· Column11 ·	
2	Category	Items so	d Gross sale	s Items refunded	Refunds	Discounts	Net sales	Cost of goods	Gross profit	Margin	Taxes	
3	Juice	156.000	2537.99	0.000	0.00	0.00	2537.99	2054.96	483.03	19.03%	38.01	
4	Soft drinks	23.000	1035.08	0.000	0.00	0.00	1035.08	825.38	209.70	20.26%	0.35	
5	Hot Drinks	169.000	4325.68	0.000	0.00	0.00	4325.68	2909.58	1416.10	32.74%	48.45	
6	Fruits	131.000	4004.33	0.000	0.00	0.00	4004.33	3193.40	810.93	20.25%	66.34	
7	Sandwiches	74.000	1665.07	0.000	0.00	0.00	1665.07	1323.80	341.27	20.50%	17.35	
8	Sweets	107.000	2345.27	0.000	0.00	0.00	2345.27	1866.16	479.11	20.43%	61.81	
9	Salads	78.000	566.87	0.000	0.00	0.00	566.87	343.70	223.17	39.37%	44.49	
10	Meals	3.000	20.60	0.000	0.00	0.00	20.60	0.00	20.60	100.00%	1.80	
11	Dizza	39.000	207 21	0.000	0.00	0.00	207 21	102.36	104.85	50 60%	18 23	

# 7.10 How to Export Data from Reports and Open in LibreOffice Calc or OpenOffice Calc

Select your Report in Back Office, in the 'Reports' section. For example, view 'Sales by category'.



2	≡ s	ales by category				
	Θ	< 📋 18 May 2021 - 16 Jun 202	1 > 🔘 All day 👻 📅 All stores 👻	🚊 All employees 👻		
	bb.	EXPORT				
	ŵ	Category	Items sold	Net sales	Cost of goods	Gross profit
	×	Desserts	223	2,944.49	136.89	2,807.60
	8	Drinks	895.7	22,915.44	17,911.00	5,004.44

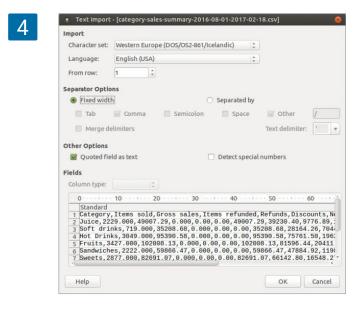
And enter your filename. Loyverse POS can export data in the CSV spreadsheet. Now you have the file saved on your computer.

Next, you have to open your file trough LibreOffice Calc (or OpenOffice Calc).



In LibreOffice Calc, select 'File - Open...' (CTRL + 0) and select your CSV file.

You will see a 'Text Import' window. You have to set up correct options to open the file.



Select 'Unicode (UTF-8)' encoding in 'Character set' drop-down list. In Separator Options, select 'Separated by' and select checkbox 'Comma'.

mport		
Character set:	Unicode (UTF-8)	•
Language:	Default - English (USA)	•
From row:	1 - +	
eparator Optio	ns	
<ul> <li>Fixed widtl</li> </ul>	n 🔘 Separa	ated by
🗆 Tab 🔇	Comma 🗌 Semicolon 🗌 Sp	oace 🗌 Othe
🗌 Merge de	limiters	Text deli

As soon as you set up correct options, you will see table with your data in the preview window.

	Standard	Standard	Standard	Standard		Standard
1	Category	Items sold	Gross sales	Items refunded	Refunds	Discoun
2	Juice	2229.000	49007.29	0.000	0.00	0.00
3	Soft drinks	719.000	35208.68	0.000	0.00	0.00
4	Hot Drinks	3049.000	95390.58	0.000	0.00	0.00
5	Fruits	3427.000	102008.13	0.000	0.00	0.00
6	Sandwiches	2222.000	59866.47	0.000	0.00	0.00
7	Sweets	2877.000	82691.07	0.000	0.00	0.00
8	Salads	747.000	3242.87	0.000	0.00	0.00
46	1. ·					

Click 'OK' botton to open file.

As a result, you have opened the table with the exported sales report by category.

	🔓 🔹 🔛 🔸 beration Sa			X 🖷 🕯	• 🏄	i] <b>4</b> 6 •	/» •   9	RBC 📰			R. Mz
									television in the second		
L	beration Sa										
	Der deron Su		10 🔻 🖌		Sa - 1			] 🗐 🖽 [	0 Å	± 1	%
									+ +		/0 .
A15		- f(x	$\Sigma =$	-							
AIS		* Jes	2 -								
	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	1	J	K
1	Category	Items sold	Gross sales	Items refunded	Refunds	Discounts	Net sales	Cost of goods	Gross profit	Margin	Taxes
2	Juice	2229	49007.29	C	C	0	49007.29	39230.4	9776.89	9 19.95%	38.0
-	Soft drinks	719	35208.68	C	0	0	35208.68	28164.26	7044.42	2 20.01%	0.3
3					2		05000 50				
3	Hot Drinks	3049	95390.58	C	C	0	95390.58	75761.5	19629.08	3 20.58%	48.4
		3049 3427					95390.58 102008.13				
4	Hot Drinks		102008.13				102008.13	81596.44	20411.69		66.3
4	Hot Drinks Fruits	3427	102008.13 59866.47	0		0	102008.13 59866.47	81596.44 47884.92	20411.69	9 20.01% 5 20.01%	66.3 17.3
4	Hot Drinks Fruits Sandwiches	3427 2222	102008.13 59866.47	0	0	0	102008.13 59866.47 82691.07	81596.44 47884.92 66142.8	20411.69 11981.55 16548.27	9 20.01% 5 20.01%	48.4 66.3 17.3 61.8 44.4

## 7.11 How to Open CSV File in Google Sheets

CSV files are used in the Back Office for exporting reports, importing-exporting items, and clients.

For opening this type of files, you can use Google Sheets.

Go to Google Sheets and click on the button 'Start a new spreadsheet'.

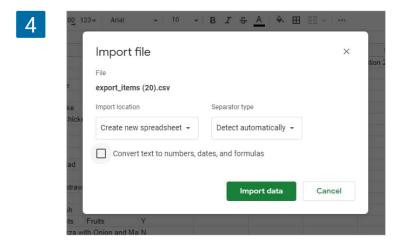
1	≡	Goog	e Sheets	٩			
			Start a new spi	readsheet			
			+		To be encoded and the second s		Annual Budget Intechan Andream Annual Annual Annual Marca Markaman Sanata Markaman Sanata Sanata Annual Sanata Margan
			Blank		To-do list	,	Annual budget

■	File	Edit View Insert F	ormat	Dat	a	Tools	Add-ons	Help
÷		Share	%	.0,	.0 <u>0</u>	123 -	Arial	
fx		New >						
		Open Ctrl+O		с			D	
1		SPOTS SPOTS						
2		Import						
3	Make a copy							
4								
5		Download as +						
6								
7								
8		Version history •						
9		Rename						
10								
11	Ξ.	Move to trash						
12		and the second second						
13		Publish to the web						
14		Email collaborators						
15								
16								
17		Spreadsheet settings						
18	-	Print Ctrl+P						
19	ъ,	Find CUI+P						
20								
21								

Go to the 'Upload' tab of the 'Open a file' window and select your file from your computer.

5	Open a file							
7								
8	My Drive	Shared with Me	Starred	Recent	Upload			
9					-			
11								
12								
13	1.							
14			Dra	g a file	horo			
15			Dia	y a me	here			
16	1			Or, if you prefer				
17	1.1		6 m	a file from your o				
18	1.1		buleat	a me nam yoar e	omparer			
19								
20								
21					-			
22								
23	_							
24 25	Open	Cancel						

In the Import file settings window, unselect the checkbox 'Convert text to numbers, dates, and formulas', and then click on the 'Import data' button.



As a result, you have opened CSV file as a table.

5

Ħ	File Edit V	iew Insert Fo	rmat Data To	ols Add-ons H	lelp Last edi	t was second	s ago		
	ゆうる	<b>100</b> % -	\$ % .0	.00 123 - Ari	al -	10 -	B I	<u>-</u> - €	⊞
fx	SKU								
	A	В	С	D	E	F		G	
1	SKU	Name	Category	Cost	Sold by weigh	Barcode		SKU of included	d Quanti
2	1001	Apple Juice	Hot Drinks	1.44	N	10544566	251001		
3	1018	Banana	Fruits	0.88	Y	10544566	251018	1	
4	10018	Bier	Drinks	7	Y				
5	10019	Bier 0.5	Drinks		N			10018	3
6	1014	Black Tea	Hot Drinks	1.24	N	10544566	251014		
7	1019	Cake	Sweets	1.59	N	10544566	251019	1	
8	10000	Capuccino	Hot Drinks	1	N	76222102	86772		
9	1002	Carrot Fresh	Juice	0 N		10544566	251002		
10	10009	Cashew nuts	Fruits	0	Y				
11	10015	Cheesecake	Sweets	4	N				
12	10008	Chicken Caesar	Salads	5.3	N				

Now you can edit this spreadsheet.

If you want to save the spreadsheet in the CSV format to your computer for further importing in the Loyverse Back Office, go to 'File' menu, select 'Download as' and click on 'Comma-separated values' button.

⊞	File	Edit View Insert	Fo	Format Data Tools Add-ons Help Last edit wa				
		Share		\$ % .0 <sub>4</sub>	.00 123 -	Aria	al - 10	) ~
fx	1	New						
		200		С	D		E	F
1	ī.	Open Ctrl+0		Category	Items sold 106 11251.129 0.5		Gross sales	Items ref
2	7	Rename Make a copy Move to Move to trash	1	Hot Drinks			1255.2	
3	ŧ		3	Fruits			25168.95	
4	E Ber		3	Drinks			6	
5	1 -		)	Drinks		7	39	
6	£		1	Hot Drinks	102		932.08	
7	E	Import	2	No category		3	51	
8	(			Sweets		99	998.4	
9	•	Version history	• 1	Hot Drinks		83	1104.45	
10	(		- 1	Juice		100	1206.96	4
11	(	Download as		Microsoft Excel (.xlsx)				
12	•	Publish to the web		OpenDocument format (.ods) PDF document (.pdf) Web page (.html, zipped)				
13	•	Email collaborators						
14	•	Email as attachment						
15	•	Email as auachment						
16	•	Document details		Comma-separated values (.csv, current sheet)				
17	(			Tab-separated values (.tsv, current sheet)				
18	(	Spreadsheet settings	1	Tab Separa	teu values (.ts		anent sheety	
19	10	Print Ctrl+I	P	Sweets		75	885.95	
20	Faura	112	m	Drinks		36	71.64	

Loyverse Dashboard App (Android, iOS) gives you instant access to your store's most valuable data. Complementing the Loyverse POS app, it puts key real-time information about your business at your fingertips allowing you to make important decisions immediately.

To start using <u>Loyverse Dashboard</u>, sign in with the same email and password you use to access Loyverse POS Back Office.

What you see right away is today's sales summary chart: the number of receipts, net sales figure and the average ticket size. The chart also shows a comparison to the previous day's data - this way you can quickly evaluate the two periods.



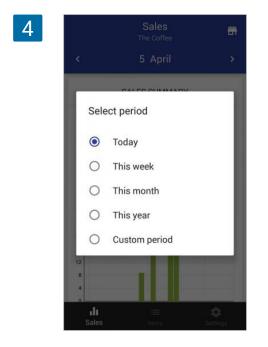
For more details just tap the chart to view sales breakdown.

2	← Sales summary The Coffee	5
	< 5 April	>
	Gross sales	67.29
	Refunds	0.00
	Discounts	0.00
	Net sales	67.29
	Tips	0.00
	Total tendered	67.29
	Cost of goods	27.25
	Gross profit	40.04
	ll ≔ Sales items	<b>\$</b> Settings

To return to the chart view, tap the Back arrow or Sales icon in the bottom menu. You can navigate back and forth in time by tapping the arrows left and right of the date.



When you'd like to analyze a longer period, tap the date and select this week, month, or even an entire year.



If you want to set a custom time period, use the calendar and tap the beginning and the ending dates. Depending on the selected time period, the sales bar chart will show data broken down by an hour, day, or month.

If you want to analyze your sales for some particular period during each day, click "Custom period" and turn off the toggle "All day".

5	÷		1 - 28	Janua	ary	A	PPLY
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
	26	27	28	29	30	31	
			Ja	nuary 20	)22		
							01
	02	03	04	05	06	07	08
	09	10	11	12	13	14	15
	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
	23	24	25	26	27	28	
						K	
	0	All day					

Then set the start and end times of the day you need.



Click the "Apply" button.

6

Pinch the bar chart to change its scale or tap it to see the exact values for selected bars.

Scroll down to view your sales by items, categories, and employees.

	Sales The Coffee	-
<	5 April	>
	ITEMS	
	Cake x 5	22.95
0)	Capuccino x 6	11.94
Carlois	Coca Cola x 5	9.95
1	Classic Cobb Salad x 1	7.59
٢	Cookies x 1	5.69
	CATEGORIES	

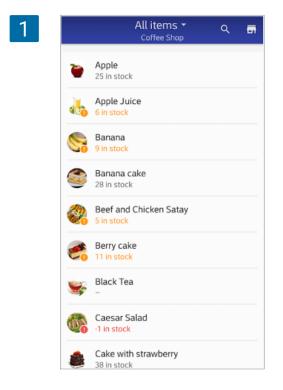
Again, if you want more details, tap the appropriate screen to drill down and tap the back arrow to return to the main screen. In each detailed view, it may be convenient to sort the list by tapping the sort arrow.

## 7.12.1 Stock Alerts

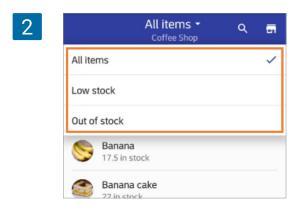
To keep on selling, you have to make sure your store carries sufficient stock. To check the stock status, switch to the Items tab.

Here you see items that are currently in stock, low on stock (yellow), or out of stock (red).

The symbol "-" near item means that the "Track stock" option for this item is off in the Back office.



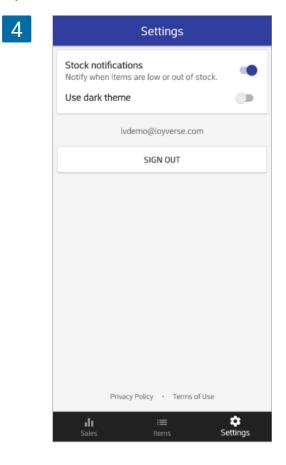
To refine the picture, you can use the filter to see only low-stock or out-of-stock items.



Whenever a sale is made, and the stock gets depleted, you will receive a push notification.

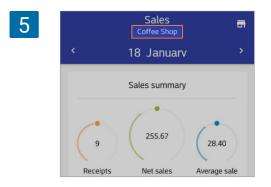


If you don't like to receive instant stock alerts, turn this feature off in the Settings tab.



In order to use the dark theme, turn the "Use dark theme" toggle on.

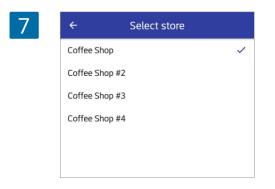
If you have more than one store you will see the name of current store at the top of the main screen.



In order to see the information from a different store, click the "Store" icon at the top right of the screen.



You will see the list of all your stores from which you can choose the needed one.



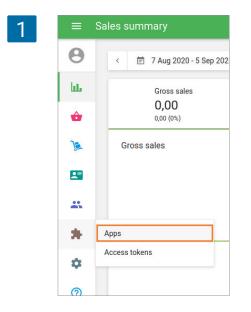
# 7.13 How to Connect Apps from the Marketplace to Loyverse

You can connect third-party apps to Loyverse to automate your business workflows.

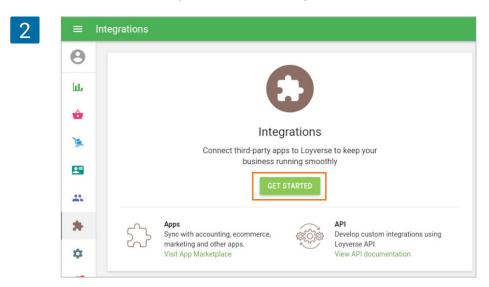
There are two options how to connect apps:

- 1. Choose an app from the marketplace and approve its access to your account;
- 2. Create tokens that provide full access to your account via API.

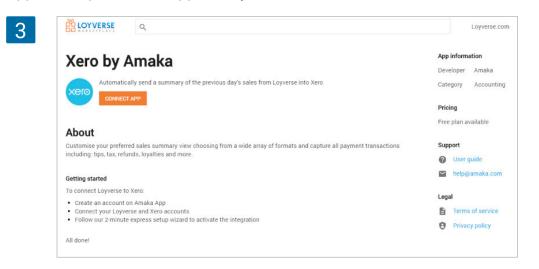
Enter the Back Office and open the 'Apps' section.



You have to start a trial period to use integrations features.



Once integration features are available in your account, you can go to the Loyverse App Marketplace. Find apps that you want to connect and click the 'Connect app' button.



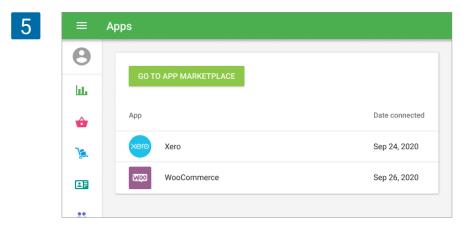
Follow the workflow of integration on the app developers' site.

While processing the integration, you will be asked to grant access to your Loyverse account. The permission request form will contain the list of permissions this app needs. To confirm permission request and proceed, click the 'Allow' button.

Permissions request
Xero is requesting permissions to do the following:
Read items, discounts, categories and modifiers
Read inventory information
Read customer information
Modify customer information
Create sales and refunds
Read taxes
Ready payment types
Read store information
Read POS devices information
CANCEL ALLO

After that, you will be redirected to an app to continue the integration setup. Follow the steps of an integration setup and complete it. In most cases, you will have to create an account in another system.

All connected apps will be displayed in your Back Office in the 'Apps' section.



At any time, you can disable the application and deny it access to the account.

6	≡ Ap	p details	
	Θ	< Apps	OPEN APP MORE 👻
	ht.		
	Ap	p details	
	Θ	< Apps	OPEN Disconnect app
	ht.		

Check Loyverse Marketplace for the apps that allow integration with different platforms:

#### Accounting:

- QuickBooks
- Xero

#### eCommerce and marketplaces:

- Shopify
- WooCommerce
- Magento
- BigCommerce
- Amazon
- eBay
- Lazada
- Wix
- OpenCart
- nopCommerce
- Google Shopping
- Fancy
- ChannelAdvisor
- Souq
- Wordpress
- and many others

#### **Online ordering:**

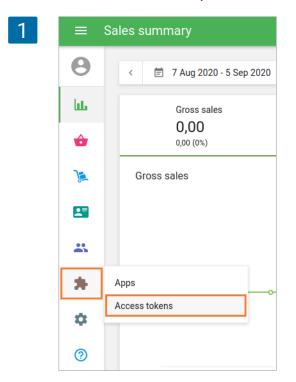
- UberEats
- Doordash
- Grubhub
- Zomato
- Glovo
- Rappi
- and many other regional players

#### Marketing:

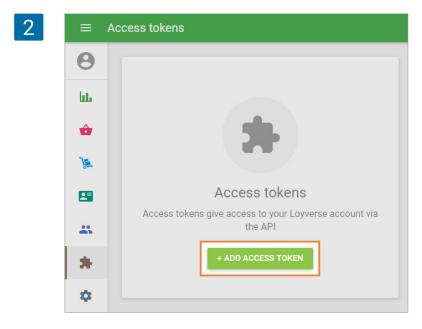
- Mailchimp
- Constant Contact
- Connectors:
- Google Data Studio
- Power BI
- Mailchimp
- Telegram
- Wave
- TradeGecko
- Google Drive
- Google Sheet

Access to the API is possible via https requests. Each request should contain the access key to the Loyverse account (token).

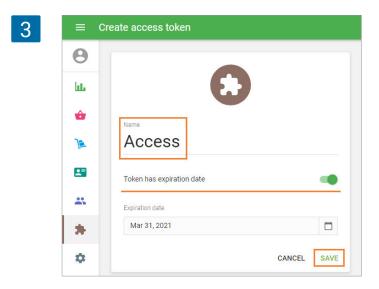
Enter the Back Office and open the 'Access Tokens' section.



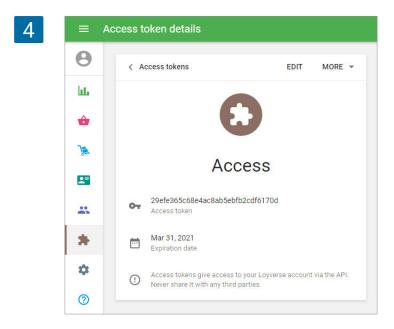
To create a new token, click on the '+ Add access token' button.



The form 'Create access tokens' will open for editing. Fill in the 'Name' field and set the token expiration date if needed. After clicking on the 'Save' button, the Access token will be created.



Here you can edit or delete the token and also copy the token for further use. If you delete the token, the access to the data by this token will be suspended. By clicking on the 'Access tokens,' you will return to the tokens list.



You can see created tokens and create new ones.

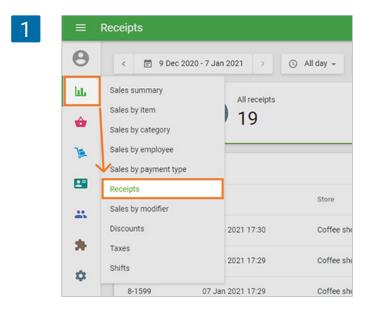
5								
	Θ							
	hi.	+ ADD ACCESS TOKEN						
	ŵ	Name	Expiration date					
	)	Access	Mar 31, 2021					

Note
The token gives unlimited access to all resources provided by the Loyverse API. Up to 20 tokens can be created for one account.

# 7.15 How to See the Purchase History of Registered Customers at the Back Office

After you have set up the <u>customer loyalty program</u> which <u>connects sale records to customers</u>, you may also want to see the purchase history of your regular customers. You can access information about customer purchases through the 'Receipts' report.

In the Back Office, go to the 'Receipts' section.



Click on the search icon.

2	≡ Receipt	s						
6	3	🗇 9 Dec 2	020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	🕞 All day 👻 📑 Al	i stores 👻 🔔 All emp	oloyees 🗸		
Lul	L I		All receipts			les	Refun	is
-			19		5 1	9	0 🐻	
Y		PORT +				_		
8			Date	Store	-	Customer		Total
-	s —	ceipt no.			Employee		Туре	
		1601	07 Jan 2021 17:30	Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69
		600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	43.83
	8-1	1599	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	32.99
C		598	07 Jan 2021 17:28	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	11.83

Tap your customer name and click <Enter> on the keyboard.

3	F 19		0 Refunds				
		Q Jackie		×			
En	nployee	Customer	Туре	Total			
Lo	uis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69			

You will see the list of receipts which are connected to the customer.

	Receipts							
Θ	< 10 9 Dec	2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	🔾 All day 🗸 📻 All	stores - 主 All empl	oyees +		×	
ևե 🗳		All receipts 5		5		G	11.83 Total	
A		•••		-			Cashier: Louis POS: POS 07	
	EXPORT +				Q, Jackie		Customer: Jackie Figueroa telfo_gall@bing.com	
	Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Туре	Dine in	
**	8-1600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Carrot Fresh	4,99
*	8-1599	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Cake	4.59
\$	8-1598	07 Jan 2021 17:28	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Croissant 1 × 2.25	2.25
0					16.000.000.0000	Sale	Points balance	10.65
	11-1013	06 Jul 2017 22:46	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Total	11.83
	1497	31 Dec 2015 19:00	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	Cash rounding	-0.17

If you click on a receipt row, the details will appear on the right side of the screen.

The other way to see the information about the customer is in the exported 'Receipts' report file. After exporting the report and opening it as a sheet, you can filter the customers.

Choose the desired period for the report. Export it as a CSV file by clicking on the 'Export' button.

5 =	Receipts						
Θ	< 🗇 9 Dec	2020 - 7 Jan 2021 > (	🕥 All day 🖌 📻 Al	i stores 🖌 🚊 All emj	ployees 👻		
- lute		All receipts			les	Refunds	
<b>\$</b>		19		5 1	9	0 🐻	
Ja.	EXPORT -	1					Q
-	Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Туре	Total
- 25							
	8-1601	07 Jan 2021 17:30	Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	Sale	9.69
•	8-1600	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	43.83
	8-1599	07 Jan 2021 17:29	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	Sale	32.99

#### Open the file in Google Sheets.

				Tools Add-on	is Help Last	edit was second	15.390				
*	202	100% - грн	00. 0. 0	123- Arial	- 10	- B I +	⊊ <u>A</u> ♦. B	9 58 -   <b>F</b> •	1 - 1÷ - 17	- co 🖻 🛛	-Σ-Υ
fx	Date										
	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	1	J	к
1	Date	Receipt number	Receipt type	Gross sales	Discounts	Net sales	Taxes	Tips	Total collected	Cost of goods	Gross profit
2	07/01/2021 17:3	8-1601	Sale	9.69	0.00	9.69	0.00	0.00	9.69	2.75	6.94
3	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1600	Sale	43.83	0.00	43.83	0.00	0.00	43.83	15.41	28.42
4	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1599	Sale	32.99	0.00	32.99	0.00	0.00	32.99	10.90	22.
5	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1598	Sale	11.83	0.00	11.83	0.00	0.00	11.83	10.30	1.53
6	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1597	Sale	14.79	0.00	14.79	0.00	0.00	14.79	5.87	8.92
7	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1596	Sale	26.60	0.00	26.60	0.00	0.00	26.60	10.52	16.
8	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1595	Sale	44.51	0.00	44.51	0.00	0.00	44.51	1.29	43.22
9	07/01/2021 17:2	8-1594	Sale	25.88	0.00	25.88	0.00	0.00	25.88	2.40	23.48
10	29/12/2020 19:1	11-1426	Sale	132.59	0.00	132.59	0.00	0.00	132.59	72.25	60.34
11	19/12/2020 10:2	11-1425	Sale	43.02	0.00	43.02	0.00	0.00	43.02	14.51	28.51

Find and select the column 'Customer name' and apply a filter to it.

7

	Filter views			
Р	Q	R	s	Т
Store	Cashier name	Customer na \Xi	Customer contac	Status
Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	mary@mail.com	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	Mary Johnson	mary@mail.com	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	John Smith	john45678@gma	Closed
Coffee shop	Louis	John Smith	john45678@gma	Closed
offee shop	Louis		iohn45678@om:	Closed

Then, click on the filter icon in the column name and select only the desired customer from the list and apply the filter by clicking the 'OK' button.

0	P	Q	R	S			
POS	Store	Cashier name	Customer n	n <del>≂</del> Customer cont			
POS 07	Cort A	Sort $A \rightarrow Z$					
POS 07	SOIL A -	→ Z		telfo_gall@bin			
POS 07	Sort Z -	Sort $Z \rightarrow A$					
POS 07							
POS 07	Sort by	Sort by color					
POS 07				john45678@gr			
POS 07	Filter by	Filter by color					
POS 07		<ul> <li>Filter by condition</li> </ul>					
POS 01	Filter by						
POS 01	- Filter by	- Filter by values					
POS 01		Select all - Clear					
POS 01	Select all - C						
POS 01							
POS 01			Q				
POS 16							
POS 16	(Bla	anks)					
POS 16	✓ Jac	✓ Jackie Figueroa					
POS 01							
POS 01	Joh	nn Smith					
	Ma	ry Johnson					
				_			
	_	Cancel	ок				

When the filter is applied, you can see purchases made by that specified customer.

± +  ÷ +	ፇ-⇔∄[	ι 🔻 - Σ-	Үн -		
0	P	Q	R	S	т
POS	Store	Cashier name	Customer na 🝸	Customer contac	Status
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed
POS 07	Coffee shop	Louis	Jackie Figueroa	telfo_gall@bing.	Closed

# 8. Settings



# 8.1 Configuring Payment Types in Loyverse POS

When you launch Loyverse POS for the first time, it already has default presets for two of the most common types of payment: cash and card. If you accept other methods of payment and want to see a detailed sales report for each payment type, you can easily customize or add other payment types.

Log in to the Back Office, click the "Settings" menu and then "Payment types". Click the "Add payment type" button to add a new type of payment.

1	≡ Se	ettings	
	Θ	Settings System settings	+ ADD PAYMENT TYPE
	bb.		+ ADD PATMENT TIPE
	ŵ	Features	Name
	1	Billing & subscriptions	Cash
	-	Payment types	Card
		Loyalty	SumUp
	*	Taxes	
	*	Receipt	
	\$	Open tickets	
	0	Kitchen printers	

In the Create Payment Type window, select a payment type from the drop-down list. For each payment type you can specify a unique name, which will appear in the report. Cash is the default payment type and cannot be changed. Save your changes when done.

2	≡	Create payment type
	0	
	bb.	
	ŵ	
	)	Payment type Check
	<b>.</b>	Name Check
	*	CANCEL SAVE

If you have multiple stores, you can manage the availability of each payment type for each store.

=	Create payment type
Θ	
h.	
ŵ	
)æ	Payment type Check
2	Name Check
**	
*	Stores
\$	Available in all stores
0	Shop
	Store 2
	SHOW LESS

At the final stage of the sale transaction in the Loyverse POS app (Play Market or App Store), you can choose the type of payment.

Ticket	<u>)</u> +	÷	SPLIT
Carrot Fresh x 1 Cookles x 1 Fruit Salad x 1	4.99 5.69 8.49	20.85 Total amount d	
Tax	1.68	Cash received 20.85	CHARGE
Total	20.85	21.00 25.00	30.00 40.00
		E CARD	
		Е снеск	
		SUMUP	

If there are no payment types available for a certain store in the POS, you will see a message with a proposition to enable payment type in Back office settings.

5	Ticket	+2	← SPLIT
	Coca Cola x 2	30.00	
	Americano x 1	15.00	435.57 Total amount due
	Chicken salad × 2	60.00	iotal amount que
	Hamburger x 1	32.00	
	Cheeseburger x 1	35.00	
	Discounts	10.00	
	Tax	16.20	Please enable payment types in settings
	Total	178.20	

The information about the payment type will be shown on the receipt.

6	Coffee shop 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, Unite We Love Coffee!!	ed States
	Cashier: Rima POS: POS 1	
	Carrot Fresh 1 x 4.99	4.99
	Cookies 1 x 5.69	5.69
	Fruit Salad 1 x 8.49	8.49
	Subtotal	19.17
	Sales tax, 8.75%	1.68
	Total	20.85
	Card	20.85
	Receipt currency: US Dollars	
	6/4/2021 13:29	#52 <b>-1</b> 009

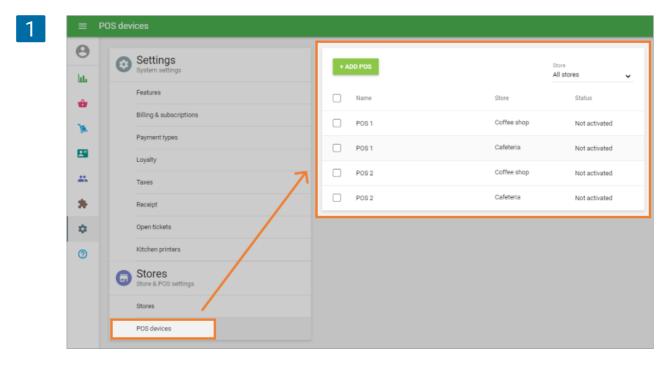
Finally, the "Sales by Payment Type" report in the Back Office will show your sales numbers sorted by payment type.

7	≡	Sales by payment t	уре				
	θ	< 🛱 4 May 202	21 - 4 Jun 2021 >	⑤ All day 👻 📻 A	All stores 👻 🔔 All en	nployees 👻	
	հե	EXPORT					
	ŵ	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount
	)	Card	1	20.85	0	0.00	20.85
		Cash	17	881.97	0	0.00	881.97
	**	Total	18	902.82	0	0.00	902.82

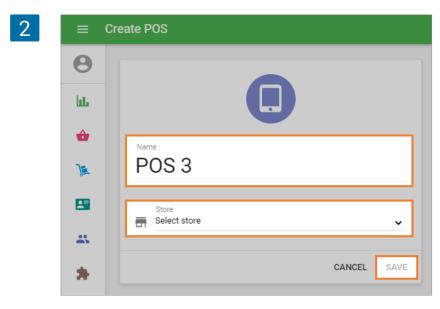
If you delete or rename a payment type, the historical data will not change: you will still see the payment type name as it appeared at the time of purchase in all the receipts that were synchronized before the change.

### 8.2.1 How to Create new POS

At the Back Office you can add a new POS in the 'POS devices' section.



In the 'Create POS' form insert the Field Name and select the Store where it will work. Don't forget to click on the 'Save' button.



## 8.2.2 How to Activate POS

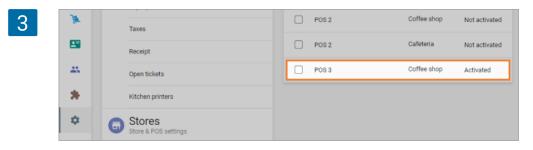
After you create a new POS at the Back Office, it will appear at the list of your POS devices, with the status 'Not Activated'.

1	= 1	POS devices		
	е	Settings System settings	+ ADD POS	Store All stores
	ŵ	Features	Name Name	Store Status
	¥.	Billing & subscriptions Payment types	POS 1	Coffee shop Not activated
	-	Loyalty	POS 1	Cafeteria Not activated
	*	Taxes Receipt	POS 2	Cafeteria Not activated
	۵	Open tickets	POS 3	Coffee shop Not activated
	0	Kitchen printers		
		Stores Store & POS settings		
		Stores POS devices		

To activate it you have to login to your new POS on your mobile device with the E-mail and password of the store owner. After that the owner can <u>switch the user account to a different</u> <u>employee</u>.

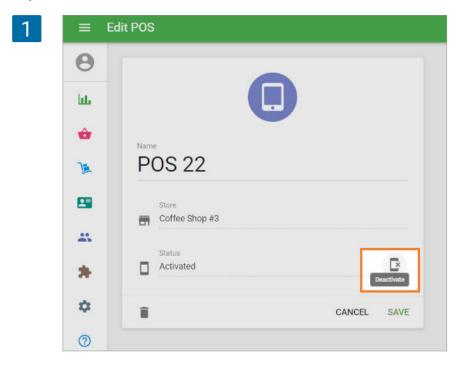
← Select POS			
	POS 1	-	
	POS 2		
	POS 3		

Afterwards, in your Back Office, the new POS will change its status to Activated.

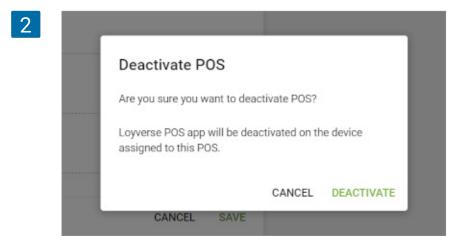


### 8.2.3 How to Deactivate POS

Such a situation may occur when the mobile device with the Loyverse POS app is lost or broken. Deactivation means disconnecting the Loyverse POS app on the device from the Loyverse account and back office.



Confirm your intention by clicking on the 'Deactivate' button in the dialog window.



After that, the status of the POS will be changed to 'Not Activated' and you can log in to this POS on a new device.

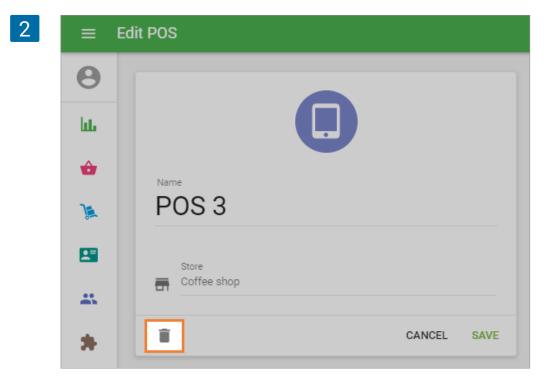
## 8.2.4 How to delete POS

**Important!** Before deleting your POS from the Back Office: close all open tickets and close shift in your POS on the Mobile device.

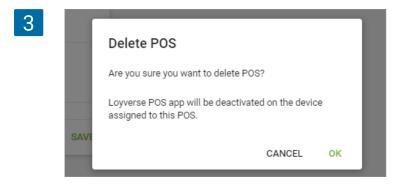
Also make sure that all sale records made on the Mobile device have been synchronized with the Back Office. To do this, at the Back Office, open your 'Receipts' list and check your receipts. Click on the receipt and after it opens at the right check the POS name. If you have any missing receipts, connect your mobile device to the Internet and all data from your POS will be synchronized with the Back Office.

1	≡	Receipts						
	Θ	< 🛱 4 May	2021 - 2 Jun 2021 >	🕓 All day 👻	📅 All stores 👻	🚊 All empl	×	•••
	հե		All receipts			les	22.8	
	ŵ		18		1	8	Tota	1
	1						Cashier: Owner POS: POS 3	
		EXPORT 👻					Banana 1 × 3.00	3.00
		Receipt no.	Date	Store	Employee	Customer	Cherry cake 1 × 14.50	14.50
		58-1000	02 Jun 2021 12:06	Coffee shop	Owner	-	Capuccino 1 × 5.30	5.30
	*	52-1008	24 May 2021 19:44	Coffee shop	Owner	-	Total Cash	<b>22.80</b> 22.80
	¢	53-1004	22 May 2021 08:10	Coffee shop	Owner	-	02 Jun 2021 12:06	№ 58-1000
	G	52-1007	19 May 2021 18:17	Coffee shop	Owner	-		

To delete POS find it in the 'POS devices' list, enter it for editing and click the trash icon.



In the pop up window, confirm your intentions by clicking on 'OK' button.



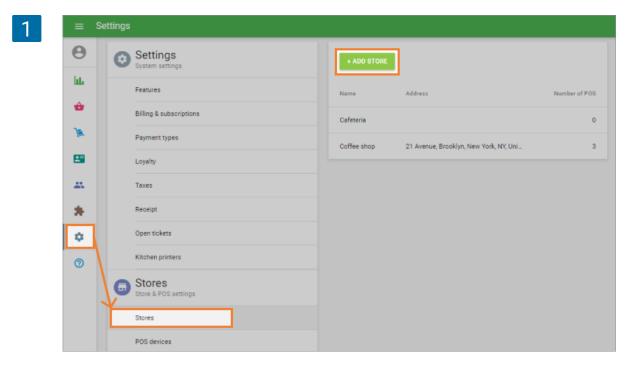
After you delete your POS at the back office, you will still have all of the receipts created on this POS, if they were synchronized before the deletion. However, this POS will be deactivated on the device.

# 8.3 How to Create and Manage Multiple Stores under One Account

With Loyverse POS you can manage multiple stores under one account. Track your sales, <u>inventory</u>, <u>employees</u>, and customers — everything you need to know in one place.

### 8.3.1 Adding a new store

To add a new store in the Back Office, go to Settings and click on the 'Stores' button. Click on the 'Add Store' button to create a new store. Fill in the information about the new store and save.



After that, your store appears at the store list, and you can create and assign a new POS device for this store.

#### 8.3.2 Items management

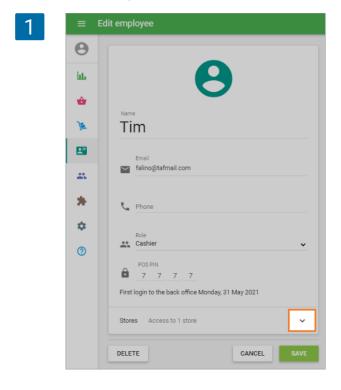
You can manage the item parameters for each store. Open your item for editing, find the 'Stores' section, and change the price, in-stock quantity, and low-stock notification.

1	≡ Ed	it item					
	Θ	🕀 ADD V	ARIANTS				
	հե	Stores					
	ŵ	🔽 Thei	tem is available for sale	in all stores			
	)a	v iner	tern is available for sale	in all stores			
		Available	Store	Price	In stock	Low stock	Optimal stock
			Cafeteria	12.50	0		
	*		Coffee shop	12.50	100	3	

At the item list, if you select a store filter, you will see the items available in this store and also the ingredients that belong to composite items, available in the selected store. The item list also shows the actual price and in stock values for the selected store.

2	≡	Item list							
	Θ			Store		Category		Stock alert	
	հե	+ ADD ITEM IMPORT EXPORT ···		All s Cafe	tores	All items	•	All items	• ٩
	÷	Item name	Category		ee shop	Cost	Margin	In stock	
	)a	Apple	Fruits	•	Variable	15.69	-	20	
		Apple Juice	Drinks	•	Variable	2.50	-	72	
		Papaga	Fruits	-	Variable	1.55		26	

#### 8.3.3 Employee management



You can manage your employee access to your stores. For this, go to the 'Employee list' and choose one for editing. At the bottom of the form, find the 'Stores' line and click on the down arrow. Afterward, an additional window will slide down with the list of your stores. You can assign your employee to a particular store.

2			
	*	Stores Access to all stores Cafeteria	^
	?	Coffee shop	SHOW LESS
		DELETE	CANCEL SAVE

Don't forget to save changes.

### 8.3.4 Sales reports

In the Back office, you can see all of your sales reports by selecting a filter for all or selected stores.

≡	Sales summary
Θ	< 🖻 6 May 2021 - 4 Jun 2021 > 🕓 All day 🗸 📻 All stores 🗸 🗶 All employees 🗸
hi.	Gross sales Refunds Disc t sales Gross profit
ŵ	885.96 0.00 3.4 Cafeteria 39 Cafeteria 797 (+437.79%) 482.18 +405.32 (+527.35%)
)k	Gross sales Days
8	600.00
*	9
*	400.00
\$	200.00
0	

#### 8.3.5 Customers

You can easily manage your clients at the Back office in a single list, across all of your stores for the loyalty program.

Customers are visible, and customer points are available for redemption in all of your stores.

## 8.4 How to Add Logo to the Receipts

Enter the Back Office. Click on 'Settings', then go to the 'Receipts' section.

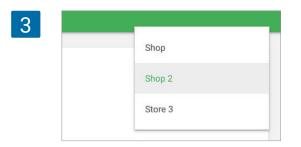
There are two fields for entering a logo. For the logo, which will appear on the emailed receipt, it is better to use a color image. Upload the digital logo by selecting an image file from your computer.

≡ S	ettings		
e Lu	System settings	Receipt settings	Store Cafeteria 🗸
•	Features	Logo Emailed receipt Printed receipt	
74	Billing & subscriptions Payment types		
	Loyalty		
*	Taxes Receipt	Header	
۵	Open tickets		0 / 500
0	Kitchen printers	Footer	
	Stores Store & POS settings		0 / 500
	Stores	Show customer info	() ()
	POS devices	Peoreipt language English	
		Lingson	<b>~</b>
			CANCEL SAVE

Logo for 'Printed receipt' should be a black and white image. If you upload the color logo, the system will generate a black and white picture from it.

Receipt settings	Store
Logo	
Emailed receipt Printed receipt	
Coffee Shop Coffee Shop	
Header	0/500
Footer	
	0/500
Show customer info	
Show comments	
Recept language	
English	

If you have several stores, select the other stores from the drop-down list at the top righthand corner and upload the logos for each store in the same way.



Don't forget to save your changes.

Now your printed logo will appear on the printed receipts as shown below:

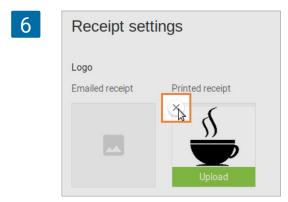
Coffee Sh 5045 Silver Lake Rd NE, St An	
State:	
Receipt currency	: US Dollars
Employee: Andy POS: POS 1	
Dine in	
Berry cake 1 x \$8.00	\$8.00
Black Tea 2 x \$2.00 + Cinnnamon	\$4.00
Green Tea 1 x \$2.00	\$2.00
Sandwich 1 x \$5.00	\$5.00
Total	\$19.00
Cash	\$20.00
Change	\$1.00
29/12/2023 14:56	#86-1002

Note Logo will not be printed on receipts and bills if the *Text mode* is selected in *Advanced* printer settings.

The logo for Emailed receipt will appear on e-receipts.

5045 Silver Lake	Coffe Shop #2 Rd NE, St Anthony, MN 55561, United States
Rec	eipt currency: US Dollars
	\$19.00 Total
Employee: Andy POS: POS 1	
Dine in	
Berry cake	\$8.00
Black Tea 2 × \$2.00 +Cinnnamon	\$4.00
Green Tea 1 × \$2.00	\$2.00
Sandwich 1 × \$5.00	\$5.00
Total	\$19.00
Cash Change	\$20.00 \$1.00
	We Love Coffee!!
29/12/2023 14:56	№ 86-1002

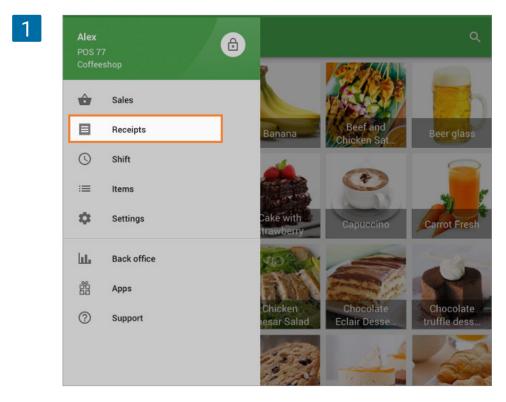
If you don't want your logo to appear on the printed or emailed receipt, you can delete it in the Back Office for the selected store.



## 8.5 How to Sign out from Loyverse POS

Note Note! If you make sales and sign out while your device has been disconnected from the Internet (offline mode), you can lose your receipts. So, before signing out from Loyverse POS, make sure that all your receipts have been transferred to the Back Office.

To do this, go to the 'Receipts' section.

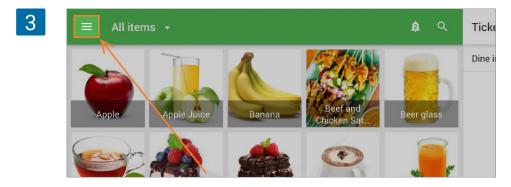


If you see some receipts that are non-synchronized (sales that are made during the time when there was no Internet connection) and marked 'Unsynced', do not log out. Otherwise, your unsynced receipts will be lost.

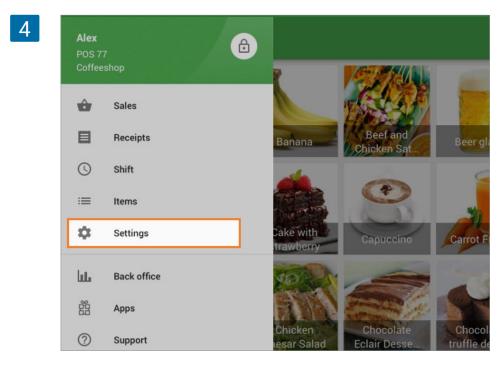
=	Receipts	#4-1002	REFUND
Mond	No internet connection	20.00	Unsynced
0	20.00 #4-1002 11:40 AM Unsynced	Total Cashier: Owner	
۵	21.29 #4-1001 11:40 AM Unsynced	T-shirt (L / Yellow) 1 x 20.00	20.00
0	5.45 #4-1000 11.39 AM	Total Cash	<b>20.00</b> 20.00
0	4.16 #1-1032 11:34 AM	3/19/18, 11:40 AM	#4-1002
Sund	lay, 18 March 2018		
٩	21.29 #1-1031 4:39 PM		
⊟	5.16 #1-1030 4:22 PM		
0	1.29 #1-1029 4:22 PM		
	1.20 #1.1020		

Try to restore the Internet connection and get the list of all receipts synced.

To sign out from your account, go to Menu.



Select 'Settings'.



Click 'Sign out' button.

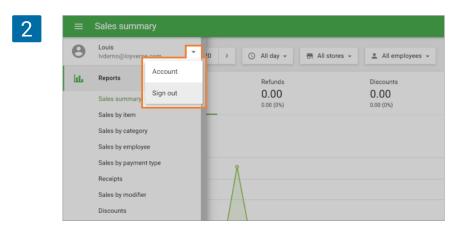
•	Printers	Bar Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)
	Customer displays	BT Star TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth) Receipts and bill
۵	General	
		KDS Kitchen display
	lvdemo@loyverse.com	

## 8.6 How to Exit from Back Office

For sign out from your account in <u>Back office</u>, go to menu.

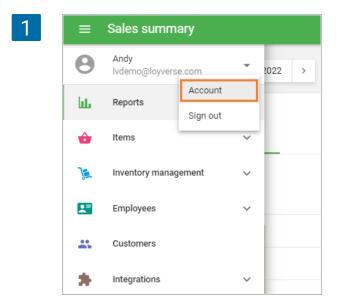
1	≡	Sales summary
	θ	G All day + All stores + All employees +
	ш	Gross sales Refunds Discounts
	ŵ	2,549.02 0.00 0.00 2,356.66 (+1,225.13%) 0.00 (0%) 0.00 (0%)
	)e	Gross sales
		2,500.00
	*	2,000.00
	*	1,500.00
	\$	1,000.00
	7	
		0.00

By clicking on account email you will see drop down botton 'Sign out'. Click on it.

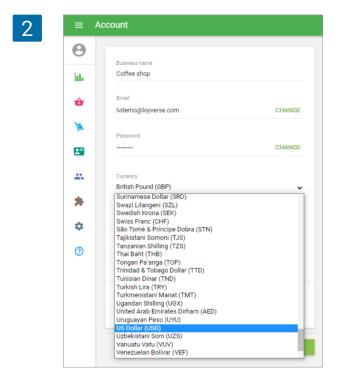


By default, the system sets the currency of the account depending on the country of registration. The owner of the account can change it.

Click on the 'Account' button in the Back Office's main menu.



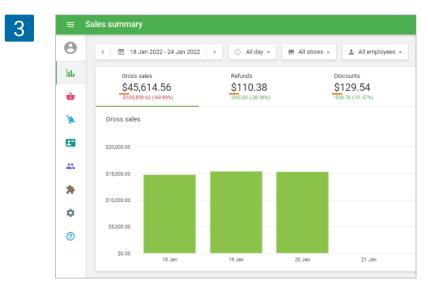
Select the needed currency in the 'Currency' field.



Do not forget to save changes.

Note

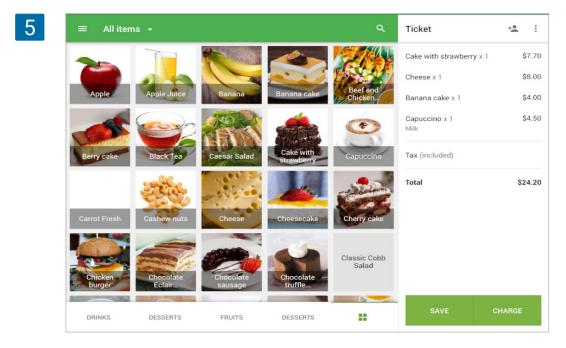
The changing of the currency will also set the corresponding currency format (with decimals or without decimals and form of decimal separator) for the account. Now you can see the currency symbol or name in the Reports sections of the Back office.



And also in the price and cost fields in the Back office.

4	-	The item is available for sale	
	*	Sold by   Each  Weight/Volume	
	*	Price	Cost
	\$	\$12.00 Leave the field blank to indicate the price upon sale	\$5.00
	0	SKU 10021	Barcode
			beroore

The currency symbol will also be shown with all monetary values in the POS, Dashboard, and CDS.



And on the printed receipts and bills.

	<b>RSE</b> verse
Carefull mother	
Receipt currency: US Do	llars
Employee: Owner POS: POS 1	
Tiramisu 1 x \$8.00	\$8.00
Pudding elegant 1 x \$6.00	\$6.00
Cheesecake 1 x \$16.00	\$16.00
Cappuccino 2 x \$7.00 With brown sugar	\$14.00
Total	\$44.00
Cash Change 	\$50.00 \$6.00
25/01/2024 13:52	#1-1011

6

#### Note

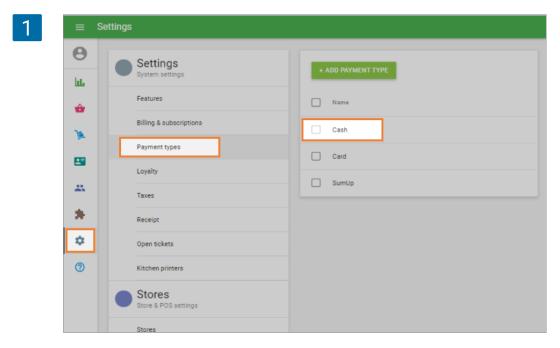
If you change the currency of the account, you have to sign out from Loyverse POS and then sign in again to apply the changes on each POS.

# 8.8 How to Work with Cash Rounding

When the cash rounding is applied, the amount payable for a cash transaction is rounded to the nearest rounding interval with specified rounding rule, whereas transactions paid in other ways are not rounded.

Cash rounding can be used in countries where coins are withdrawn from circulation. Also in some countries, rounding is allowed at the discretion of the merchant (for example, if the merchant wants to reduce the amount of small change in revenue). Rounding does not affect the amount of taxes.

Log in to the Back Office, click the Settings menu and then Payment types. Click the Cash type of payment.



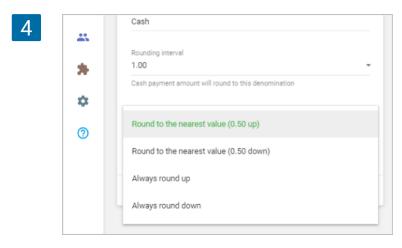
The form 'Edit payment type' will open for editing.

2	≡	Edit payment type
	0	
	հե	
	ô	
	)	Payment type Cash
	<b>1</b> "	Name Cash
	*	Rounding interval
	*	0.01 Cash payment amount will round to this denomination
	۵	Cash payment amount will round to this denomination
	0	CANCEL SAVE

You can select the rounding interval from the drop-down list. For countries with decimal currency: 0.01, 0.05, 0.10, 0.50, 1.00 . For countries without decimals: 1, 5, 10, 50, 100.

3		Name Cash		
	*	0.01		
	•	0.05		
	0	0.10		
		0.50		
		1.00		

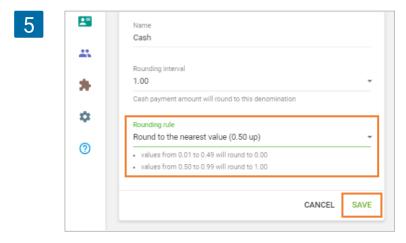
If you set a value other than the default value of 0.01 (or 1 for countries without decimals), you can select the 'Rounding rule' from the drop-down list. In other words, you cannot select a rounding rule if you select a rounding interval of 0.01 or 1.



By default, the rule 'Round to the nearest value (average value up)' is selected, but you can also choose:

- Round to the nearest value (average value down)
- Always round up
- Always round down

You will see the explanation of how the selected rounding rule works.



Don't forget to save the setting.

	ïcket	+**	÷			
Apple x 1       1.29       Total amount due         Total       21.29       Cash received       CHAN         25.00       30.00       40.00       50.00		20.00		21	.29	
25.00 30.00 40.00 50.0	pple x 1	1.29				
	otal	21.29	21.00			CHARGE
E CARD			25.00	30.00	40.00	50.00
CARD CARD						
				8	CARD	

If you enter the value of the received amount of cash and tap 'Charge', you will see the change in the next screen with the consideration of rounding.



+ <u>*</u>				
20.00		21.00	4.00	
1.29		Total paid	Change	
21.29				
	Enter email			SEND RECEIP
	20.00	20.00 1.29 21.29	20.00 1.29 21.29	20.00 1.29 21.29 21.29

The receipt contains information about rounding.

=	Receipts	#29-1004 REFUN	
Q	Search	01.00	
Thursda	y, May 23, 2019	21.29 Total	
۵	<b>21.29</b> #29-100 4:55 PM	4 Cashier: Alex POS: POS 09	
۵	<b>69.52</b> #8-156 4:09 PM	5 T-shirt (Red / S) 20.00 1 x 20.00	
Wednes	day, May 22, 2019	Apple 1.29	
ē	<b>842.39</b> #11-121 11:08 AM	Cash rounding 0.29	
۹	23.39 #11-121 11:08 AM	Cash 25.00 5 Change 4.00	
Tuesday	r, May 14, 2019	5/23/19 4:55 PM #29-1004	
٦	<b>16.50</b> #11-121 7:31 PM	4	
8	<b>17.92</b> #11-121 4:10 PM	3	

You will also see the information about rounding in the Sales by Payment Type report in the Back Office.

≡ s	ales by payment ty	ре				
θ	< 🗐 4 Dec 2020	) - 2 Jan 2021 >	🕓 All day 👻	📅 All stores 👻	🚊 All employees	-
ևե	EXPORT					
ŵ	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount
)	Card	8	224.54	0	0.00	224.54
	Cash	3	217.41	0	0.00	217.41
**	Cash rounding	3	0.41	0	0.00	0.41
*	Total	11	441.95	0	0.00	441.95
<b>±</b>						

# 8.9 How to Change/Recover Your Password for the Back Office

To change or recover your password, go to your Back Office login form: <u>https://loyverse.com/en/login</u> and click "Forgot password?".

LOYALTY UNIVERSE	
Sign in to your Loyverse	e account
Email	
Password	
Remember me	SIGN
Forgot password? New to Loyverse?	

Type your Email into the Reset password form and press the 'Continue' button.

Reset password
Enter your email to receive instructions to reset your password
Email
CONTINUE
Back to Sign In form
English 🔻

Check your email and click on the "Continue" button.

Log in to Loyverse
Email
test@mail.com
Continue
Sign up
By continuing, you confirm you have read and agree to the <u>privacy policy</u> and <u>terms and conditions</u> that govern your usage of Teya services and <u>privacy</u> policy and <u>terms and conditions</u> that govern your usage of Loyverse services.

Click on the 'Forgot your password?' link.

	SE ERSE eya
Log in to Loyverse	
Email	
test@mail.com	Change
Password	
	0
Log in	
Forgot your pass	word?
By continuing, you confirm you have read and <u>terms and conditions</u> that govern your usage <u>policy</u> and <u>terms and conditions</u> that govern y	of Teya services and <u>privacy</u>

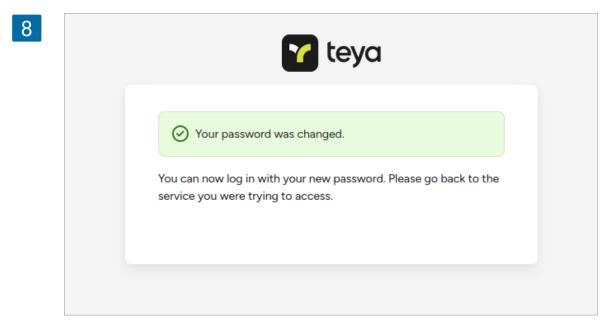
### Click on the "Send reset email" button.

	Reset your password
	Email
	test@mail.com
	Send reset email
	🝸 teya
т	eya password reset
w	eya password reset
w	eya password reset
W	e ya password reset e got a request to reset the password for your account. To continue please tap e button below.
W	eya password reset e got a request to reset the password for your account. To continue please tap e button below. Reset password
W th If	eya password reset e got a request to reset the password for your account. To continue please tap e button below. Reset password

Now check the password recovery instructions which are sent to your email. Sometimes emails are filtered as spam, so if it's missing from your inbox, try the spam folder. Once you're in the email, click on the 'Reset password' link. You will be directed to the "Set a new password" form. Type your new password into the field and click the 'Set password' button.

Your password must be a minimum of 8 characters long contain at least: • One lowercase letter (a-z). • One uppercase letter (A-Z).
• One uppercase letter (A-Z).
(0, 0)
• One number (0-9).
New password

You will see the confirmation message of the resetting password.



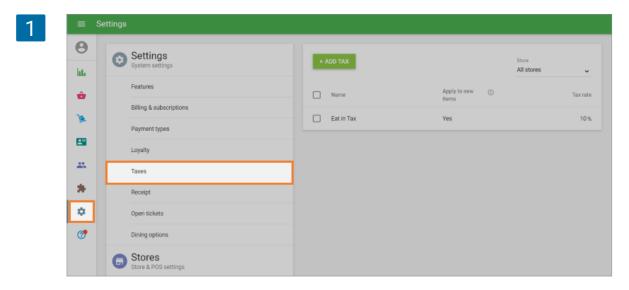
Now you can log in with the new password to the Back office.

# 8.10 How to Apply Taxes Depending on the Dining Options

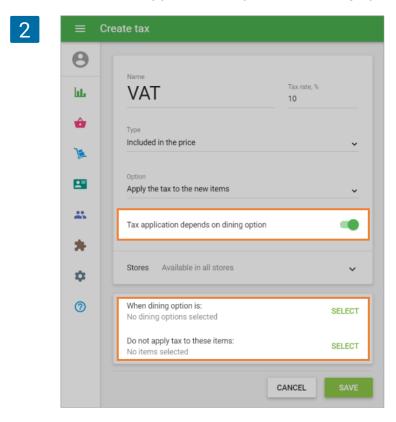
In some countries, the tax on certain goods depends on the dining options. For example, if the customer orders food for takeout, it is not taxed. But in the case of consuming the same food inside the cafe, it is taxed.

Please be sure that the Dining Options is activated in the Back Office.

Go to the 'Taxes' section in the 'Settings' in the Back Office. Open the existing tax to edit or create a new one.



Switch on the 'Tax application depends on dining option'.



Click on the 'Select' button to choose the **dining option for which an exemption of the tax applies.** 

For example, if you want your tax to apply only for 'Dine in', select all other options: 'Takeout' and 'Delivery'.

ion of tax d	Sel	ect dining options		
ION OF LOX G		Dine in		
ptions for v	2	Takeout		
, Delivery		Delivery		
s selected			CANCEL	DON

Don't forget to save your settings by clicking 'Done'.

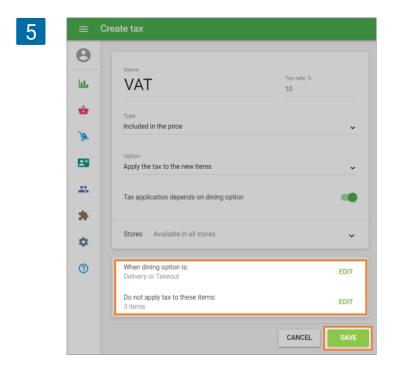
Click on the 'Select' button to choose items not subject to tax.

Se	ect items		
Q	Search		
•	Clothes All items selected		>
	Drinks No items selected		>
	Fruits No items selected		>
	Hot Drinks No items selected		>
	Juice No items selected		>
	Meals No items selected		>
0	Pizza No items selected		>
	Salads No items selected		>
	Sandwiches No items selected		>
		CANCEL	DOT

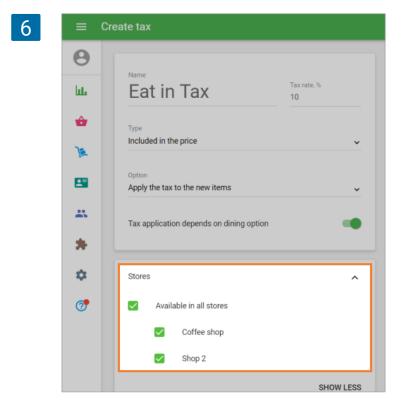
You can select the whole category or certain items that are excluded from tax.

Don't forget to save your settings by clicking 'Done'.

After you have set the exceptions for application of your tax, you will see their short description. You can edit them or save changes.



If you have several stores, you can select the availability of the tax for each store.



You will also see the information about the applied dining option in the item edit card.

During a sale, the system removes the tax from items in the ticket to which it should not be applied according to the settings and exceptions made for the dining option, so that the cashier does not need to remove it manually.

#### Note

The cashier can also change the application of the tax to the item manually during the sale, but this change would be applied only to the items in the current ticket.

# 8.11.1 Changing Language in Loyverse POS app

The language of the Loyverse POS app on your device depends on the language of the device. Currently, Loyverse POS app supports the following languages: Albanian, Arabic, Bengali, Bulgarian, Chinese Simplified, Chinese Traditional, Croatian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, Estonian, Finnish, French, Georgian, German, Greek, Hebrew, Hindi, Hungarian, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Khmer, Korean, Laotian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Macedonian, Malay, Mongolian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Serbian (Latin), Spanish, Swedish, Thai, Turkish, Urdu, Uzbek.

If you want to change the language for the Loyverse POS app, change the device language in the mobile device settings.

For iOS devices, open Settings, and go to the 'General' section. Open the 'Language and Region' menu to change the language.

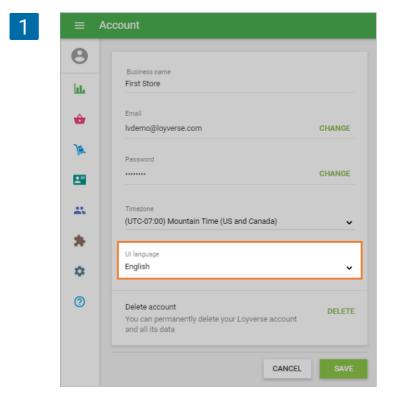
Settings		General	
Airplane Mode		About	>
🛜 Wi-Fi	LVRS	Software Update	>
Bluetooth	On		
(1) Cellular Data	Off	AirDrop	>
		AirPlay & Handoff	>
Notifications			
Sounds		iPad Storage	>
C Do Not Disturb		Background App Refresh	>
Screen Time			
		Date & Time	>
O General		Keyboard	>
Control Center		Fonts	>
AA Display & Brightness		Language & Region	>
Home Screen & Dock		Dictionary	>

For Android devices, open Settings, and go to the 'General management' or 'System' section. Open the 'Language and input' menu to change the language.

SET	TINGS	GENERAL MANAGEMENT	
ш	Lock screen	LANGUAGE AND TIME	
Ø	Cloud and accounts Samsung Cloud, Backup and restore	Language and input	
G	Google Google settings	Date and time	
ŵ	Accessibility Vision, Hearing, Dexterity and interaction	Report diagnostic information	
	General management Language and input, Date and time, Reset	Marketing information	
6	Software update Download updates, Scheduled software updates	Reset	

# 8.11.2 Setting Language in the Back office

You can choose a language for the Back Office in the Account settings. Loyverse currently provides more than 20 different languages: English, Spanish, French, German, Russian, Portugues, Polish, Romanian, Italian, Indonesian, Japanese, Korean, Chinese, and others.



Note The language settings of the Back Office will not influence the language of the Loyverse POS app.

# 8.11.3 Receipt Language

In the Receipt section of the Back Office Settings, you can set the language on the receipt for each store. The receipt language may vary from the POS and Back Office language and will be applied to the printed receipt as well as emailed one and in the Receipt menu.

1		Settings		
	<b>()</b>	Settings System settings	Receipt settings	Store Cafeteria 🗸
	ŵ M	Features Billing & subscriptions	Logo Emailed receipt Printed receipt	
	8	Payment types Loyalty		
	*	Taxes Receipt	Header	0 / 500
	0	Open tickets Kitchen primters	Footer	0 / 500
		Stores Store & POS settings Stores	Show customer info Show comments	(3) (3)
		POS devices	Receipt language English	v
				CANCEL SAVE

- 1. Trial period
- 2. <u>Subscription to Employee management</u>
- 3. Subscription for Advanced inventory
- 4. Subscription for Integrations
- 5. Adding payment method
- 6. Payments for subscriptions
- 7. Unsubscribing

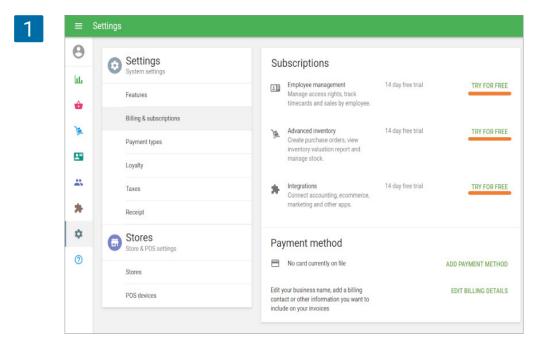
Add-on services of Loyverse POS includes subscriptions to Employee management, Advanced inventory and Integrations.

### 8.12.1 Trial period

All add-on services have a 14-day free trial period. Starting a trial period does not require a card.

To start a trial, login to the Back Office, click on the 'Billing & subscriptions' button from the Settings menu.

Click on the 'Try for free' buttons to start a 14-day free trial period for Employee management, Advanced inventory or Integrations.



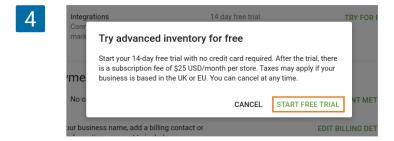
For **Employee management trial**, you will be asked to add employees in the Employees list. When adding an employee, a pop-up window with terms and conditions will appear on your screen. Click on the 'Start free trial' button' button.

2		
	Try employee management for free	
	Start your 14-day free trial with no credit card required is a subscription fee of \$25 USD/month per store. Tay business is based in the UK or EU. You can cancel at a	kes may apply if your
	CANCEL	START FREE TRIAL

You will see the information about the trial expiration date. If you want to continue using the service, after finishing the trial, activate the subscription by clicking on the 'Activate' button. At any time, you can cancel the trial with the 'Unsubscribe' button.

Su	bscriptions		
<b>.</b>	Employee management Manage access rights, track	Trial expiration date: March 06, 2018	ACTIVATE
	timecards and sales by employee.		UNSUBSCRIBE
1	Advanced inventory	14 day free trial	SUBSCRIBE
	Create purchase orders, view		
	inventory valuation report and manage stock.		

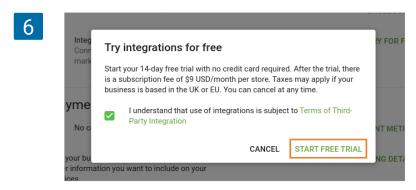
Likewise, for Advanced inventory trial, a pop-up window with terms and conditions will appear on your screen. Click on the 'Start free trial' button.



You will see the information about the trial expiration date. If you want to continue using the service, after finishing the trial, activate the subscription by clicking on the 'Activate' button. At any time, you can cancel the trial with the 'Unsubscribe' button.

Sı	Ibscriptions			
1	Employee management Manage access rights, track timecards and sales by employee.	Trial expiration date: March 06, 2018	ACTIVATE UNSUBSCRIBE	
1	Advanced inventory Create purchase orders, view inventory valuation report and manage stock.	Trial expiration date: March 06, 2018	ACTIVATE	

Likewise, for the Integrations trial, a pop-up window with terms and conditions will appear on your screen. Read the Terms of Third-Party Integration, and agree with them by selecting the check box. Click on the 'Start free trial' button.



You will see the information about the trial expiration date. If you want to continue using the service, after finishing the trial, activate the subscription by clicking on the 'Activate' button. At any time, you can cancel the trial with the 'Unsubscribe' button.

Jui	bscriptions		
1	Employee management Manage access rights, track timecards and sales by employee.		SUBSCRIE
)	Advanced inventory Create purchase orders, view inventory valuation report and manage stock.	14 day free trial	SUBSCRIE
*	Integrations Connect accounting,	Trial expiration date: 16 Jan 2021	ACTIVAT
	ecommerce, marketing and other apps.		UNSUBSCRIB

### 8.12.2 Subscription to Employee management

When you click on the 'Activate' button at the 'Billing & subscriptions' section, a pop-up window will appear to inform you about the subscription conditions. Select your pricing plan and click on the 'Continue' button to start your subscription.

1	Ira
- 1	Activate employee management
	Manage access rights, track timecards and sales by employee.
- 1	2 Select your pricing plan:
_	€5/month per employee   ee
- 1	€50/year per employee
- 1	Enter coupon code
	You may also be charged tax if your billing country is UK or in the EU.
	You will be charged automatically at the start of each billing period until you cancel.
- 1	No card currently on file
	CANCEL CONTINUE

If you have not yet added a payment method, you will be redirected to the Add payment method form.

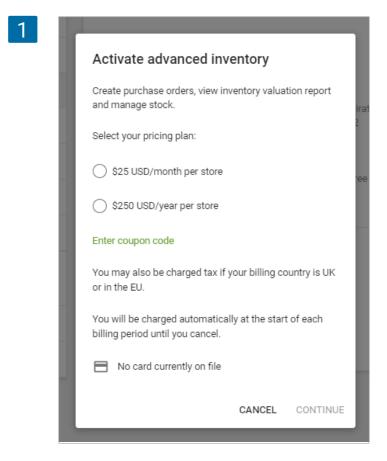
After you finish the subscription process at the 'Subscriptions' box, you can see the information about your active subscription for Employee management.



# 8.12.3 Subscription for Advanced inventory

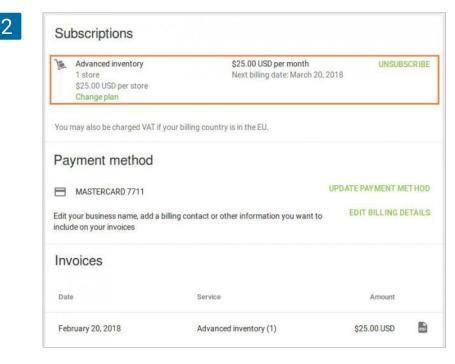
Click on the 'Activate' button for 'Advanced inventory' in the 'Billing & subscriptions' section to start a subscription.

On the pop-up window, choose the desired pricing plan and click on the 'Continue' button.



If you have not yet added a payment method, you will be redirected to the Add payment method form.

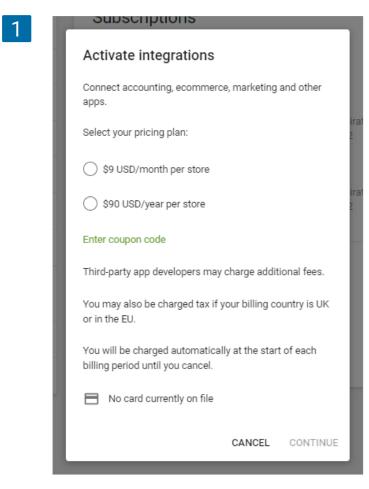
After you finish the subscription process at the 'Subscription' box, you will see the information about your active subscription for Advanced inventory.



# 8.12.4 Subscription for Integrations

Click on the 'Activate' button for 'Integrations' in the 'Billing & subscriptions' section to start a subscription.

On the pop-up window, choose the desired pricing plan and click on the 'Continue' button.



If you have not yet added a payment method, you will be redirected to the Add payment method form.

After you finish the subscription process at the 'Subscription' box, you will see the information about your active subscription for Integration.

# 8.12.5 Adding payment method

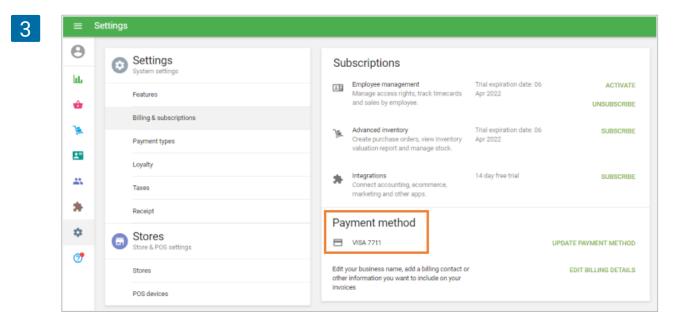
Click on the 'Add payment method' button to add your card information.

=	Settings		
Θ	Settings System settings	Subscriptions	
bb.	Features	Employee management 14 day free trial Manage access rights, track timecards	SUBSCRIBE
<b>*</b>	Billing & subscriptions	and sales by employee. Advanced inventory Trial expiration date: 05	ACTIVATE
-	Payment types	Advanced inventory Trial expiration date: 05 Create purchase orders, view inventory Apr 2022 valuation report and manage stock.	UNSUBSCRIBE
25	Loyalty Taxes	Integrations 14 day free trial Connect accounting, economerce,	SUBSCRIBE
*	Receipt	marketing and other apps. Payment method	
\$	G Stores Store & POS settings		ADD PAYMENT METHOD
0	Stores	Edit your business name, add a billing contact or other information you want to include on your	EDIT BILLING DETAILS
	POS devices	Invoices	

Fill in all fields and click on the 'Save' button. All information will be verified. If any information is missing or incorrect, a pop-up message will notify you what needs to be corrected.

=	Add payment method
Θ	
bb.	
ŵ	
1	Card number 5111 1111 1101 7711
<b>1</b>	Expiration date
*	
*	evv 111
•	Country of business registration
7	United States
	CANCEL SAVE

If all the information is correct, your card will appear as a payment method.



# 8.12.6 Payments for subscriptions

Now, all fees for your subscribed plans will be automatically charged to your bank card that is entered in the 'Payment method'.

All your payment history, as well as warnings about failed payments, will be shown in the 'Invoices' box of the 'Billing' section.

Date Service Amo	
	nt
Dec 1, 2017 Employee management (5) \$25.	10

### Note

You may also be charged VAT if your billing country is UK or in the EU. You can cancel your Employee management subscription at any time by deleting extra employees in the 'Employee list' section. However, please note that the paid amount is non-refundable and non-transferable. Therefore, if you delete any employees before the paid period ends, the paid amount cannot be refunded and may not be transferred to be used for another employee.

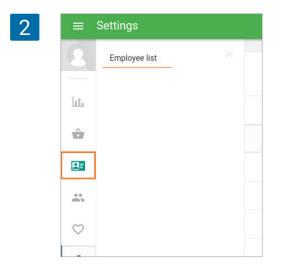
# 8.12.7 Unsubscribing

When your trial or subscription period has finished, everything in the Back Office will be locked except for the 'Billing & subscriptions' section. For those using it as a trial, the Back Office will become locked immediately after finishing the trial period if you do not take any action. For those who are already subscribed and the subscription period has ended, the system will allow you to continue using the service in debt for 7 additional days. If during this time, you do not pay for the subscription, the Back Office will be locked on the 8th day. To continue working in the Back Office, you have to choose to 'activate' the subscription or 'unsubscribe'.

If you click 'Unsubscribe' from the **Employee management**, all your employees will be deleted from the Employees list except for the owner, and you can continue using the Back Office.

-	Settings System settings			
late	General			
ŵ	Billing & subscriptions		Ŧ	
	Payment types		ment subscription expired today.	
#15.	Loyalty	Please activate subscr	ription to continue using the service	
$\heartsuit$	Taxes	Subscriptions		
\$	Receipt	Employee management	Trial ended on: February 19,	ACTIVA
	Open tickets	Manage access rights, track timecards and sales by employee,	2018	UNSUBSCRI
	Kitchen printers	Advanced inventory Create purchase orders, view		SUBSCRI
	Dining options	inventory valuation report and manage stock.		
	Stores Store & POS settings	Payment method		
	Stores	No credit card currently on file	ADD	PAYMENT METHO
	POS devices	Edit your business name, add a billing contai	ct or other information	DIT BILLING DETAIL

Or you can delete some employees by yourself by going to the 'Employee list' section in the Employees menu and pay for the remaining number of employees.



If you click 'Unsubscribe' from Advanced inventory, you will see the warning message about the loss of access to the Advanced inventory features.

3	=	Settings		
	<b>e</b>	Settings System settings	Advanced inventory subscription expired 27 days ago. Please activate subscription to continue using the service.	
	ŵ	Features	Subscriptions	
	Ja.	Billing & subscriptions	Employee management 14 day free trial SUBSCRIBE Manage access rights, track timecards	
		Payment types 	and sales by employee.	
		Taxes	Advanced inventory Trial ended on: ACTIVATE Create purchase orders, view inventory valuation report and manage stock. UNSUBSCRIBE	
	*	Receipt	Integrations 14 day free trial SUBSCRIBE	
	٥	Stores     Store & POS settings	Connect accounting, ecommerce, marketing and other apps.	
	0	Stores	Payment method  No card currently on file  ADD PAYMENT METHOD	
		POS devices	Edit your business name, add a billing contact or EDIT BILLING DETAILS other information you want to include on your involces	

Click on the 'Unsubscribe' button to continue.

4	Unsubscribe from advanced inventory
	Unsubscribing will result in a loss of access to all advanced inventory features including: purchase orders, stock transfers and inventory valuation report.
	CANCEL UNSUBSCRIBE
	oomeet decounting, econimerce,

In the locked state, the user also has access to the 'Stores' and 'POS devices' section in the Settings menu to manage (delete) stores.

#### Note

Unsubscribing will cancel any outstanding debt for the subscription. The system transfers the previously paid amounts to the customer's credit account when:

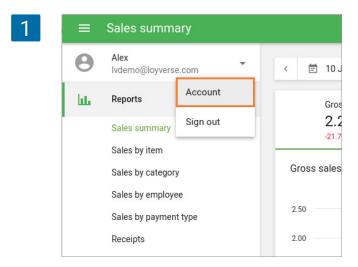
- changing the pricing plan to a lower one in the middle of the billing cycle
- reducing the number of employees and/or stores in the middle of the billing cycle
- unsubscribing in the middle of the billing cycle

You can use the money from your credit account for the paid services of Loyverse POS.

# 8.13 How to Manage Account Settings in the Back Office

Every Loyverse user (owner and employees) with access right to the Back Office has a page with account settings.

To access the account settings, click on the 'Account' button in the Back Office's main menu.



You can see the account profile form. You can change the Email, password, timezone, and language of a user interface for Back Office. Business name changes and deleting account options are available only for the account owner.

2	≡ Ao	count	
	0		
	ht	Business name Coffee shop	
	<b></b>	Email Ivdemo@loyverse.com	CHANGE
	3	Password	UNARCE
			CHANGE
	*	Timezone (UTC+01:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm	n, Vienna 🗸
	\$	UI language	
	7	English	~
		Delete account You can permanently delete your Loyverse account and all its data	DELETE
		CANCEL	SAVE

The Timezone settings affect the time for sending a <u>low stock notification</u>. The time zone for the owner and each employee may vary.

Each user can set his/her interface language for the Back office, and it will not affect the interface language of other users of the same account.

Changing Email, password, and deleting accounts require password confirmation for security reasons.

### Note

Deleting the account will unsubscribe from all paid services and email newsletters.

It is possible to increase the font size of the text in the Loyverse POS app on Android devices by increasing it in the device settings.

#### Note

The built-in functionality of Android implements this option; therefore, some words may be displayed incorrectly in some languages.

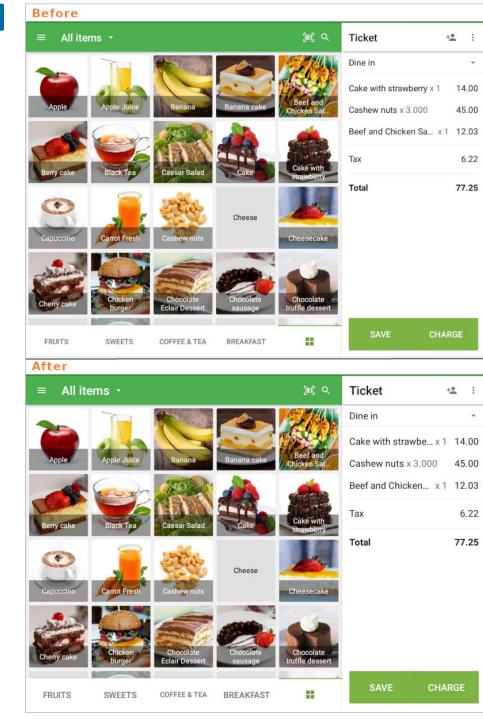
For Android devices, open Settings and go to the 'Display' section. Open the 'Screen zoom and font' or 'Font size' menu.

1	SETTIN	GS Q	DISPLAY
		onnections 1-Fi, Bluetooth, Data usage, Airplane mode	Brightness
	- D1	ounds and vibration ounds, Vibration, Do not disturb	
		lotifications ock, allow, prioritize	Auto brightness Adjust the screen brightness automatically based on the current lighting conditions.
		<b>isplay</b> ightness, Home screen	Screen mode Adaptive display
		<b>/allpaper</b> <sup>Iallpaper</sup>	Screen zoom and font Medium, Medium, Default
	2+5	dvanced features	Home screen
	(0) -	evice maintenance attery, Storage, Memory	Icon frames Icons with frames
		<b>pps</b> efault apps, App permissions	Status bar Screen timeout

Change the font size of your device.

SETTINGS		
Connections Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Data usage, .	Screen zoom and font	
Sounds and vibration	Connections	•
Sounds, Vibration, Do not dis	$\Rightarrow$ Sounds and vibration	
Block, allow, prioritize	Notifications	y based on the current
Display Brightness, Home screen	Display	
Mallanan	SCREEN ZOOM	
Wallpaper Wallpaper	Small Huge	
Advanced features	FONT SIZE	
Device maintenance Battery, Storage, Memory	Tiny Huge	
oo Apps	FONT STYLE	
OC Apps Default apps, App permission	CANCEL OK	

After saving the device settings, the font size of the text in the Loyverse POS app will change.



Note

Deleting the account will unsubscribe from all paid services and email newsletters.

3

To have a bigger font size of the items' names, choose the list option in the application settings 'Home screen item layout'.

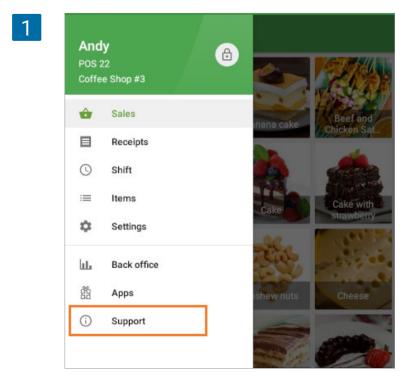
	All items -	(m) Q	Ticket	+±
4	Apple Juice	5.50	Delivery	
6	Banana	1 variant		
٢	Banana cake	4.00		
٢	Beef and Chicken Satay	6.20		
2	Berry cake	6.50		
¥,	Black Tea	1.20		
01	Caesar Salad	4.40		
	Cake	6.00		
	Cake	Ξ		
	Cake with strawberry	7.70		
01	Capuccino	4.00	OPEN	
	PAGE 1	:=	TICKETS	

# 8.15 How to Delete Loyverse Account

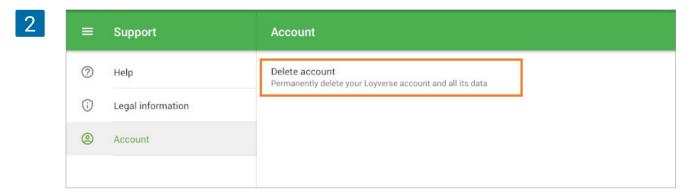
Deleting a Loyverse account is available only for the account owner.

# 8.15.1 Deleting account at Loyverse POS app

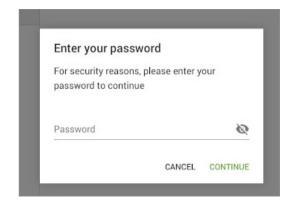
To delete the Loyverse account at POS installed on an Android or iOS device go to the 'Support' section.



Select 'Account' and tap on the 'Delete account' line.



2



3

Reason for account deletion			
0	Business closed		
0	High subscription prices		
0	Lack of features for my business		
0	The service is difficult to use		
0	Poor customer support		
0	My hardware is not supported		
0	It was an account for testing		
0	Found a better service		
0	Other reason		

Enter the owner password from the Loyverse account and click 'Continue.'

Loyverse will give you a small questionnaire to understand the reason for the deletion.

4

#### Delete account

Additional comments

After deleting your account, you will no longer be able to access any of its data. All subscriptions to Loyverse services will be cancelled.

CANCEL

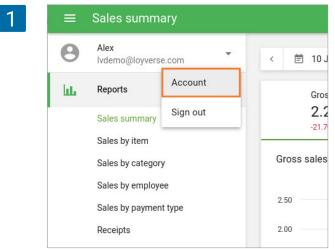
CONTINUE

Yes, I want to delete my Loyverse account and all its  $\checkmark$ data

> DELETE ACCOUNT CANCEL

Confirm the deletion by selecting the checkbox and then proceed by clicking the 'Delete account' button.

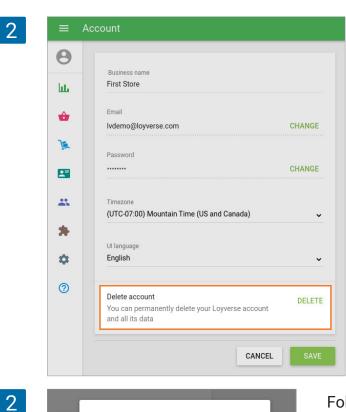
### 8.15.2 Deleting account at the Back office



The owner can also delete the Loyverse account at the Back Office in account settings.

To access the account settings, click the 'Account' button in the Back Office's main menu

Click on the 'Delete' button in the 'Delete account' row.



Enter your password For security reasons, please enter your password to ntain Tim continue Password 0 ..... CANCEL CONTINUE

Follow the steps for deleting the account: enter the owner's password from the account, select the reason for deletion, and confirm deleting the account.

#### Note

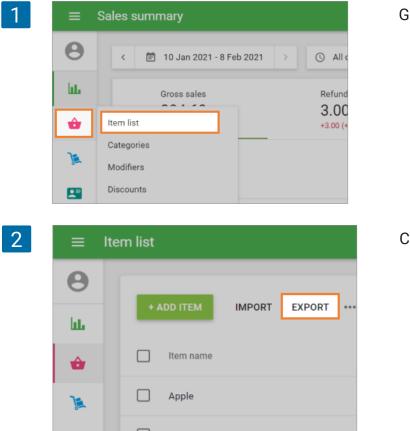
Deleting the account will permanently remove all your sales data, account settings, and all entities, such as items, discounts, taxes, customers, etc. If you want to keep this information, export your data before deleting your account. Deleting the account will also cause you to unsubscribe from all paid services and

email newsletters.

# 8.16 How to Export Data from Loyverse Account

You can export data in CSV format from the Loyverse account at the <u>Back office</u>. There are such data to export: items, customers, receipts, and reports. If you use Advance Inventory, there are also reports to download as CSV and various documents that you can download one by one as PDF or CSV files.

### 8.16.1 Exporting Items List



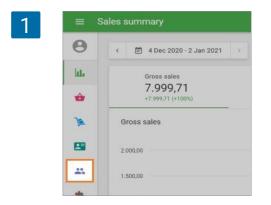
Go to the 'Item list' at the Back Office.

Click on the 'Export' button.

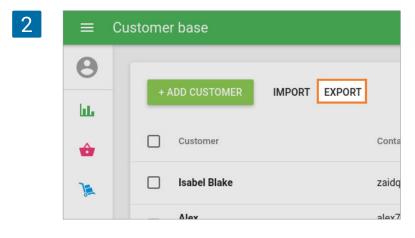
The system will download the CSV file with all items to your device.

Note There are no images in the exported file and no possibility to export them

# 8.16.2 Exporting Customers List



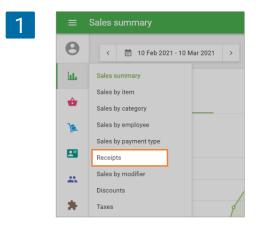
Go to the 'Customers' menu at the Back Office.



Click on the 'Export' button

The system will download the CSV file with all customers to your device.

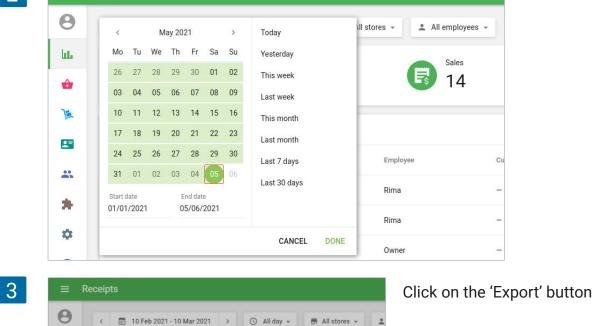
# 8.16.3 Exporting Receipts List



Go to the 'Receipts' section in the 'Reports' menu at the Back Office.

Select the period for which you wish to export receipts. If you want to export all receipts from your account, select the period from the first to the last day of your activity as well as 'All day,' 'All stores', and 'All employees' in the filter settings.

2



Sales

34

EXPORT -

All receipts

35

հե

ô

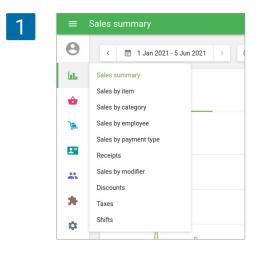
1

....

Select the exporting type: 'Receipts' or 'Receipts by item'. The 'Receipts by item' give a detailed view of each item at the ticket, such as price, discounts, and taxes applied to it.

4			The CSV file with receipts will be downloaded to your device.
	Receipts		
	Receipts by item	Date	
	52-1010	04 Jun 2021 13:37	

### 8.16.4 Exporting Reports



Each report at the Loyverse Back office has an export functionality. You can export reports: 'Sales summary, 'Sales by item', 'Sales by category', 'Sales by employee', 'Sales by payment type', 'Sales by modifier', 'Discounts', 'Taxes' and 'Shifts'.

Go to the needed section in the 'Reports' menu at the Back Office.

Select the period for which you wish to export the report. If you want to export the report for the whole period, select the period from the first to the last day of your activity in Loyverse, as well as 'All day', 'All stores', and 'All employees' in the filter settings. Click on the 'Export' button.

2	Sales summary
e	< 🖻 1 Jan 2021 - 5 Jun 2021 > 🕓 All day - 📻 All stores - ᆂ All employees -
Lui Iui	Giossistics Returns Discourts
	3,076.62         17.50         15.44           +2,639.39 (+003.66%)         +17.50 (+100%)         +15.44 (+100%)
J	Gross sales
8	600.00
-	
	400.00
¢	200.00
(	δ τθασσοσορό όρος διατιστορος το διαστορό το δια διαστοροστατο δια τη παρατιστική το διαστορό το δια διαστορό το δια
	EXPORT
	Date Gross sales Refunds I

The system will download the CSV file with the report to your device.

# 8.16.5 Exporting Reports and Documents of the Advanced Inventory

If you use Advance Inventory, there are also Inventory history and Inventory valuation reports that you can download as CSV files by clicking on the 'Export' button.

1	≡	Inventory history			
	0	< 🖹 7 May 2021	- 5 Jun 2021 > 📅 All s	stores 👻 🚨 All emp	loyees 👻 📼
	hte	EXPORT			
	ŵ	Date	Item	Store	Employee
	٦	Purchase orders	tant Coffee	Coffee shop	Owner
	Stock adjustments		it Salad	Coffee shop	Rima
		Inventory counts Productions	okies	Coffee shop	Rima
	*	Suppliers	it Salad	Coffee shop	Rima
	۵	Inventory history Inventory valuation	okies	Coffee shop	Rima
	0	02 Jun 2021 12:05	Cherry cake	Coffee shop	Owner

If you use Advance Inventory, there are various documents, such as Purchase orders, Transfer orders, Stock adjustments, Inventory counts, Productions that you can download one by one as PDF or CSV files.

You have to open each document and click on the 'More' drop-down menu.

≡ Pι	ırchase order details			
θ	< Purchase orders		SEND	MORE 👻
ш	P01042		Received 4 of	of 4
ŵ	Closed (18 May 2021) Date: 18 May 2021			
)	Ordered by: Owner Supplier:	Destination store:		
	John 1122334455	Cafeteria		
*	happyco@gmail.com			
\$	Items			
0	Item	Quantity	Purchase cost	Amount
Ŭ	Acqua, scatola 0,5 litri, 25 p. SKU 10017	4	125.00	500.00
			Total	500.00

There are operations available with the document in the 'More' menu: 'Save as PDF', 'Save as CSV'.



Note

The best way to open your CSV file is in Google Sheets, but you can also use other tools, such as LibreOffice Calc or OpenOffice Calc and Excel.

# 9. Hardware



# 9.1 Supported Printers

### Note

Please pay attention not only to the printer model but also on the interface through which this model works. If some model of the printer works with one interface, it may not work through another interface.

# 9.1.1 Supported Printers for Android

Receipt printers compatible with Loyverse POS on Android devices:

- Star TSP650II / TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth);
- GP-58130IIC (Bluetooth);
- GP-L80250II (Ethernet);
- GP-58130IIC (Ethernet);
- GP-U80300I (Ethernet);
- Star TSP 100 / TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet);
- Star mc-Print3 (USB, Bluetooth, Ethernet);
- Epson TM-T20II (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-88IV (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-T88V (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-m30 (USB, Bluetooth, Ethernet);
- Posiflex Aura 6900 (Ethernet);
- Xprinter XP-Q200 (Ethernet);
- XPrinter XP-Q800 (Ethernet);
- Star mPOP (Bluetooth);
- EastRoyce ER-58A (Bluetooth);
- EastRoyce ER-80A (Bluetooth);
- Sam4s GIANT-100D (Ethernet, USB);
- Seiko RP-F10 LAN (Ethernet);
- Seiko MP-B20 (Bluetooth);
- Seiko MP-B30 (Bluetooth);
- Citizen CT-E651ET(Ethernet);
- Citizen CT-E651BT(Bluetooth);
- Bematech LR2000 (Ethernet).

However, for Android, you can try to connect another model, not from the Supported printers list. But be aware that not every printer may work with Loyverse POS!

How to Set Up Other Printers in Loyverse POS

Loyverse POS also works on Android POS terminals <u>SunMi</u> and <u>iMin</u> that have built-in receipt printers.

# 9.1.2 Supported Printers for iOS

These are general requirements for a receipt printer to be compatible with Loyverse POS on **iOS devices:** 

- support ESC/POS protocol;
- have Ethernet, Bluetooth or USB (Bluetooth and USB only recommended models) interface.

Consult printer manual or manufacturer website to see if your receipt printer fits these requirements. If so, the printer may work with Loyverse POS, however, there might be special cases. To be 100% sure, please use a printer from the list of recommended models below:

- Star TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth);
- Star mPOP (Bluetooth);
- Star TSP 100 (Ethernet);
- Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet);
- Star TSP654IILAN (Ethernet);
- Star SP742 (Ethernet) Note: this is matrix printer, it can print only kitchen orders and cannot print bills and receipts;
- Star TSP143IIIU (USB);
- Star mC-Print3 (USB, Bluetooth, Ethernet);
- Star SM-T300i (Bluetooth);
- Star SM-S210i (Bluetooth);
- Epson TM-T20II (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-T88VI-i (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-m30 (Ethernet);
- Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth);
- Epson TM-P20 (Bluetooth);
- Sam4s GIANT-100D (Ethernet);
- Seiko RP-F10 LAN (Ethernet);
- Citizen CT-E651ET(Ethernet).

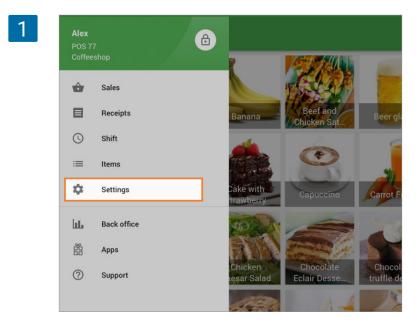
# 9.2 How to Set Up an Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS

For an Ethernet printer to work with Loyverse POS (Android, iOS), you will need the following:

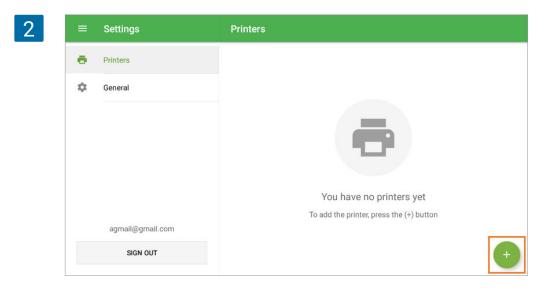
- Smartphone or tablet with the Loyverse POS app
- Ethernet printer, supported by the Loyverse POS app (see the list of Supported Printers)
- Wi-Fi router
- Ethernet cable

Plug one end of the ethernet cable into the 100/10 Base port of the printer, and the other end into the LAN-port of the router.

Then in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.



Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.



Type the title of your printer in the 'Name' field and select your printer model from the dropdown list.



Fill in the 'Printer IP-address' field that you can find in your printer's network configuration report (details: <u>Troubleshooting When Setting Up an Ethernet Printer</u>).

← Edit printer	
Name	
Pos	
Printer model	
Epson TM-T20II (Ethernet)	•
Printer IP-address	
Print receipts and bills	()
Print orders	())
ē Pī	INT TEST

Some printers have the 'Search' button to search for the IP address of your printer automatically. If your Ethernet printer has it, just tap it without filling in the 'Printer IP-address' field.

5	← Edit printer	SAVE
	Name Pos	
	Printer model Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	
	Printer IP-address Print receipts and bills	
	Print orders	

In the following pop up window, you will see the search result with the printer model and its IP address. Tap on it to select the IP-address and then close the window.

Star TSP143IIIL	Search for a printer	 ;
Printer IP-address		
	TSP143 (STR_T-001)	
	192.168.126.101	
Print receipts and		

Tap the 'Print test' button to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

Emergency calls only \$	0		∦೩ 😤 🗈 27% 💌
← Edit p	printer		S/
	Pos		
	Printer model Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	•	
	Printer IP-address 192.168.	SEARCH	
	Print receipts and bills	()#	
	Print orders		
	PRINT TEST		
	B DELETE PRINTER		

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.

8				
	Carefull mother			
	Employee: Owner POS: POS 1			
	Test receipt			
	25/01/2024 13:40			

Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all settings at the end by tapping the 'Save' button.

9 ←	Edit pri	nter		SAVE
		Printer model Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	÷	
		Printer IP-address 192.168.	SEARCH	
		Print receipts and bills	•	
		Print orders		
		Automatically print receipt		
		PRINT TEST		
		DELETE PRINTER		

Now you can see your printer in the list. Nice work!

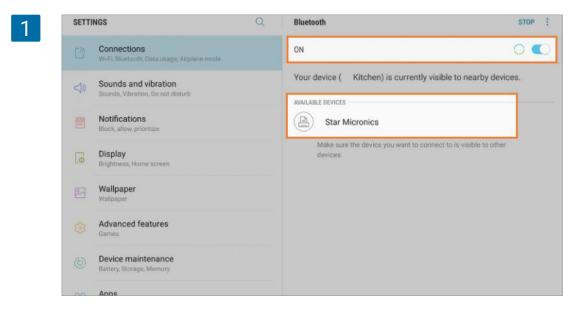


### 9.3 How to Set Up Bluetooth Receipt Printer with Loyverse POS

This guidance applies to printers on our supported printers list.

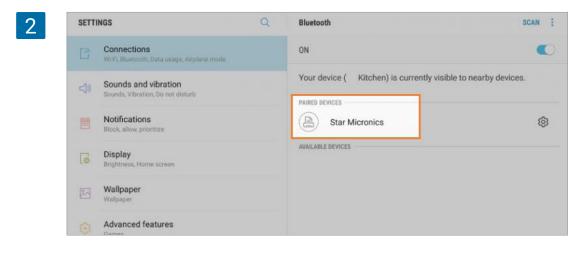
First, you have to pair a printer with your mobile device.

Turn on your printer. In your mobile device, go to Settings > Bluetooth, and turn the 'Bluetooth' on. A Bluetooth device search will begin, and you will see your printer on the list.

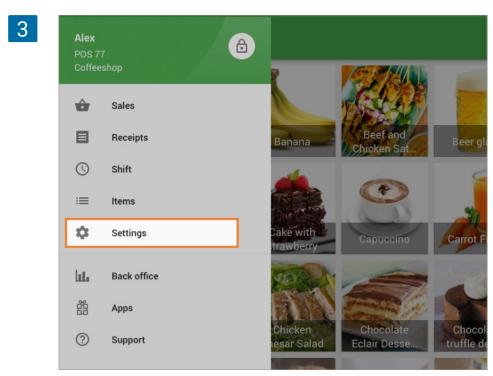


Push the 'Pair' button on your printer.

On your mobile device, choose your printer's model from the list of 'Devices'. After a few seconds, the 'Not Paired' status will change to 'Connected' or 'Paired'.



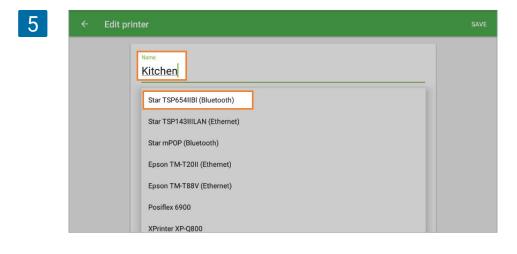
Then, in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.



Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.

4	=	Settings	Printers
	•	Printers	
	ф	General	
			You have no printers yet
			To add the printer, press the (+) button
		agmail@gmail.com	
		SIGN OUT	•

Type the title of your printer in the 'Name' field and select its model from the drop-down menu.



Tap the 'Search' button to search for your printer.

6	← Edit printer		
	Name Kitchen		
	Printer model Star TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth)	<b>.</b>	
	Bluetooth printer Choose the device	SEARCH	
	Print receipts and bills	() <b>3</b>	
	Print orders		
	🖶 PRINT TEST		

In the following pop up window, you will see the search result with the printer model. Tap to select and close the window.

SP6 Searching bluetooth printer	C
Star Micronics	
ceip.	CANCE

Tap the 'Print test' button to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

8	← Edit printer				SAVE
	Nam Kit	chen			
		er model TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth)		•	
		iooth printer 12:F3:1E:27:BF		SEARCH	
	Prin	t receipts and bills		(1)	
	Prin	t orders		()	
			PRINT TEST		

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.



Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all settings at the end by tapping the 'Save' button.

10 <	Edit pri	nter			SAVE
_		Bluetooth printer 00:12:F3:1E:27:BF		SEARCH	
		Print receipts and bills		•	
		Print orders		-	
		Automatically print receipt			
		PRINT -	rest		
		Printer groups			
		Kitchen			

Now you can see your printer in the list. Nice work!

11	≡	Settings	Printers
	•	Printers	Star TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth)
	ф	General	

## 9.4 How to Set Up a USB Printer with an iOS Device

For a USB printer to work with Loyverse POS on iOS, you will need the following:

- iPad or iPhone with the Loyverse POS app
- USB printer, supported by the Loyverse POS app on iOS devices (currently only supports Star TSP143IIIU (USB) and Star mc-Print3 (USB) models. Other USB printers will not work. See Supported Printers list)
- Lightning cable please use a genuine cable manufactured by Apple or one that is MFi certified

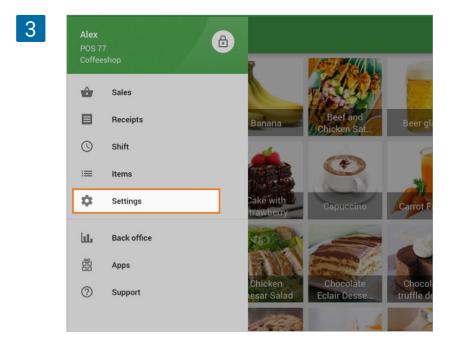
Connect the Lightning cable to the USB Type-A port of the printer.



Connect the other end of the cable to the smartphone/tablet.



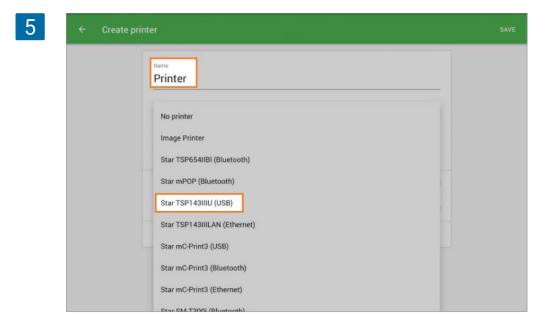
Then in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.



Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.

4	=	Settings	Printers
	•	Printers	
	\$	General	
			You have no printers yet
			To add the printer, press the (+) button
		agmail@gmail.com	
		SIGN OUT	

Name your printer in the 'Name' field and select the model of your USB printer from the 'Printer model' list.



Tap the 'Search' button to search for your printer.

Name		
Print	ter	
Printer n	nodel	
Star T	SP143IIIU (USB)	•
USB p	rinter	SEARCH
Print r	eceipts and bills	$\bigcirc$
Print o	orders	$\bigcirc$

In the following pop up window, you will see the search result with the printer model. Tap to select and close the window by tapping 'OK'.

7				
	er	USB printer		
	pts and	TSP143IIIU GY		
	S		ок	
		PRINT TEST		

Tap the 'Print test' button to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

Name	
Printer	
Printer model	
Star TSP143IIIU (USB)	<b>•</b>
USB printer	
TSP143IIIU GY	SEARCH
Print receipts and bills	$\bigcirc$
Print orders	$\bigcirc$

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.

9	LOYALTY UNIVERSE
	Test receipt
	3.03.2017 15:56

Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all of the settings at the end by tapping the 'Save' button.

Nar		
Pi	rinter	
Prir	iter model	
Sta	ar TSP143IIIU (USB)	•
usi	3 printer	
TS	P143IIIU GY	SEARCH
Pri	nt receipts and bills	C
Pri	nt orders	$\bigcirc$
Au	tomatically print receipt	$\cap$

Now you can see your printer in the list. Nice work!

≡	Settings	Printers	
•	Printers	Printer TSP143IIIU GY	Receipts and bills
	Customer displays		
	Payment types		
۵	General		

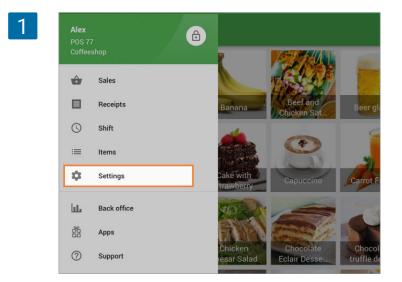
## 9.5 How to Set Up a USB Printer with an Android Device

For a USB printer to work with Loyverse POS, you will need the following

- Smartphone or tablet (with OTG support) with the Loyverse POS app
- USB printer, supported by the Loyverse POS app (should support ESC/POS protocol, see also a list of Supported Printers)
- USB type A to type B cable (goes together with the printer)
- USB OTG adapter or cable
- · USB Hub if you want to connect several printers

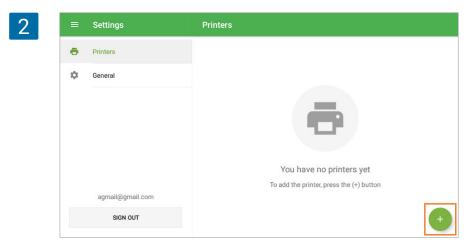
Plug one end of the USB cable into the USB port of the printer, and the other end into the female USB connector of an OTG adapter or cable. Then, plug the micro-USB end of the OTG adapter or cable into the micro-USB port of your mobile device, and wait for the system to recognize the printer.

If you want to connect several printers, connect them via the USB Hub. The USB Hub connects to your mobile device through a USB OTG adapter or a cable.



Then, in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.

Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.



Name your printer in the 'Name' field and select 'Other model' from the 'Printer model' list.

← Create printer	SAVE
Name Pos	
Posiflex 6900 XPrinter XP-Q800	
GP-58130IIC GP-U80300I	
GP-L80250I Other model	
	Name           Pos           Epson TM-T88V (Ethernet)           Posiflex 6900           XPrinter XP-Q800           GP-58130IIC           GP-U80300I           GP-L80250I

Select 'USB' in the 'Interface' field.

Name	
Pos	
Printer model	
Other model	Ŧ
Interface	
Ethernet	
Bluetooth	
USB	
USB	

Now, select your printer from the drop-down menu. USB Printers are named in USB:VID-PID format. VID stands for Vendor ID, and PID is the Product ID.

5	← Create	e printer	SAVE
		Name Pos	
		Other model	
		Interface USB	
		USB printer USB:8137-8214	
		Paper width 80 mm	

Tap the 'Print test' button to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

← Cr	eate printer		SAV
	USB	·	
	USB printer USB:8137-8214	•	
	Paper width 80 mm	•	
	Advanced settings		
	Print receipts and bills		
	Print orders		

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.

C	
	ᇆLOYVERSI
	LOYALTY UNIVERS
	Test receipt
3.03	3.2017 15:56

Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all of the settings at the end, by tapping on the 'Save' button.

← Cr	eate printer		SAVE
	USB printer USB:8137-8214	•	
	Paper width 80 mm		
	Advanced settings		
	Print receipts and bills	•	
	Print orders		
	Automatically print receipt	()))	
	🖶 PRINT TEST		

Now you can see your printer in the list. Nice work!

9	≡	Settings	Printers	
	•	Printers	e Pos Other model	Receipts and bills
	\$	General		

# 9.6 How to Set Up Other Printers in Loyverse POS on Android

Loyverse POS works with receipt printers on the <u>Supported Printers list</u>. However, for Android, you can try to connect to models that are not on the Supported Printers list. But be aware that not every printer may work with Loyverse POS!

These are the general requirements for a receipt printer to be compatible with Loyverse POS on Android devices:

- support ESC/POS commands that are the same as Epson printers;
- have either Ethernet, WiFi, Bluetooth or USB interface;
- support the status commands or similar functions to check that the transmitted data has been completely printed.

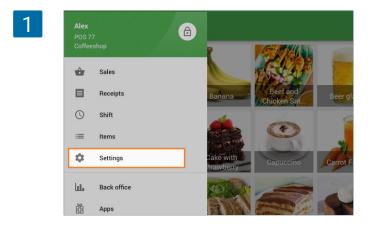
Consult the printer manual or the manufacturer website to see if your receipt printer fits these requirements. If so, the printer may work with Loyverse POS; however, there might be special cases.

#### Connect or pair your printer with a mobile device

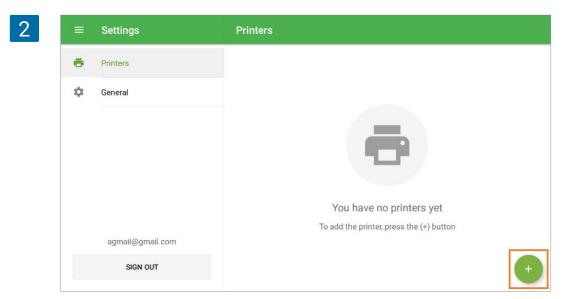
**For Ethernet printer:** connect your mobile device to the Wi-Fi router and connect your Ethernet printer to the router via an ethernet cable (details: How to Set Up an Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS).

**For Bluetooth printer:** pair a printer with your mobile device (details: How to Set Up Bluetooth Receipt Printer with Loyverse POS).

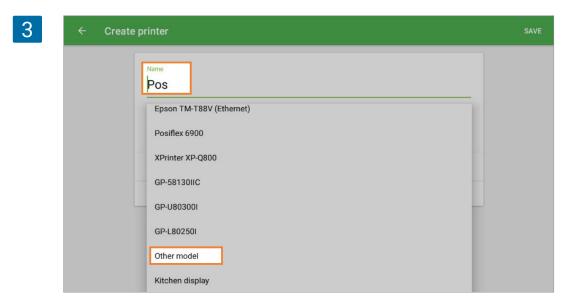
**For USB printer:** connect your mobile device to the USB printer via a USB cable and OTG adapter or cable (details: How to Set Up a USB Printer with an Android Device). Then, in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.



Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.



Name your printer in the 'Name' field and select 'Other model' from the drop-down list of printer model.



Select your printer interface in the 'Interface' field.

Name		
Pos		
Printer model Other model	•	
 Interface		
Ethernet		
Bluetooth		
USB		
Paper width		
80 mm	<b>v</b>	

**For Ethernet printer**, fill in the 'Printer IP-address' field, which can be found in your printer's network configuration report (details: <u>Troubleshooting When Setting Up an Ethernet Printer</u>)

Name		
Pos		
Printer model		
Other model	· · ·	
Interface		
Ethernet	· · ·	
Printer IP-address		

**For Bluetooth printer**, tap the 'Search' button to search for your printer and in the following pop-up window, select your printer.

	Kitchen		
	Printer model Star TSP654IIBI (Bluetooth)	•	
	Bluetooth printer Choose the device	SEARCH	
	Print receipts and bills	()#	
	Print orders		
	PRINT TEST		
SP6 th pi	Searching bluetooth printer		(
SP6 th pi se th			(

**For USB printer**, select your printer from the drop-down menu. USB Printers are named in USB: VID-PID format. VID stands for Vendor ID, and PID is the Product ID.

← Create printer	
Name Pos	
Printer model Other model	
Interface USB	
USB printer USB:8137-8214	

Chose the paper width of your printer.

9	Paper width	
	80 mm	
	58 mm	

Tap the 'Print test' button to check your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

Print receipts and bills	
Print orders	()))
- PRINT TEST	]

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.



Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all settings at the end by tapping the 'Save' button.

Print receipts and bills	
Print orders	
Automatically print receipt	

Now you can see your printer on the list. You are ready to start selling and printing receipts or orders.



## 9.7 How to Set Up Other Printers in Loyverse POS on iOS

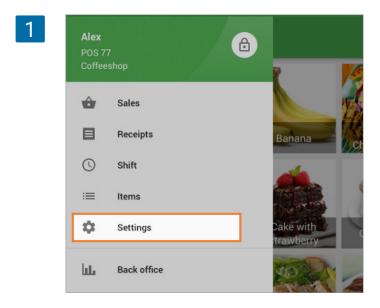
Loyverse POS works with receipt printers on the Supported Printers list. However, for iOS devices, you can try to connect Ethernet receipt printers' models that are not on the Supported Printers list. But be aware that not every printer may work with Loyverse POS!

These are the general requirements for a receipt printer to be compatible with Loyverse POS on iOS devices:

- support ESC/POS commands that are the same as Epson printers;

- have an Ethernet interface.

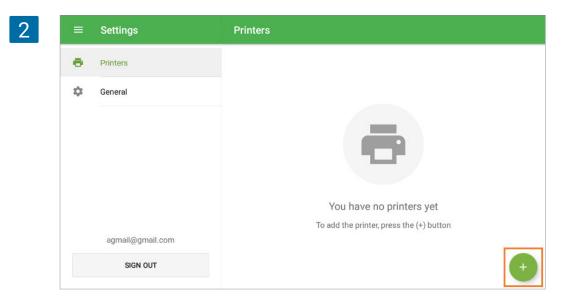
Consult the printer manual or the manufacturer's website to see if your receipt printer fits these requirements. If so, the printer may work with Loyverse POS; however, there might be special cases.



Connect your mobile device to the Wi-Fi router and connect your Ethernet printer to the router via an Ethernet cable (details: How to Set Up an Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS).

Then, in the Loyverse POS app, go to Settings.

Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.



Name your printer in the 'Name' field and select 'Other model' from the drop-down list of printer models.

3	← Create printer	SAVE
3	<ul> <li>Create printer</li> <li>Name</li> <li>Pos</li> <li>Epson TM-T88V (Ethernet)</li> <li>Posiflex 6900</li> <li>XPrinter XP-Q800</li> <li>GP-58130IIC</li> <li>GP-L80250I</li> </ul>	SAVE
	Other model Kitchen display	
	Other model Kitchen display	

Fill in the 'Printer IP-address' field, which can be found in your printer's network configuration report (details: Troubleshooting When Setting Up an Ethernet Printer)

P	DS		
			-3
	ter model	•	
	ner model (Ethernet)		
Prin	ter IP-address		

Choose the paper width of your printer.

5	Paper width	
	80 mm	
	58 mm	t

Tap the 'Print test' button to check your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

Print receipts and bills	
Print orders	())
PRINT TEST	

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.

7	
	$\mathbf{\omega}$
	모모 LOYVERSE
	LOYALTY UNIVERSE
	Test receipt
	3.03.2017 15:56
	0.00.2017 10.00

Choose the settings for your printer depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all settings at the end by tapping the 'Save' button.

8	Auvanceu settings	
	Print receipts and bills	•
	Print orders	•
	Automatically print receipt	•
	PRINT TEST	

Now you can see your printer on the list. You are ready to start selling and printing receipts or orders.

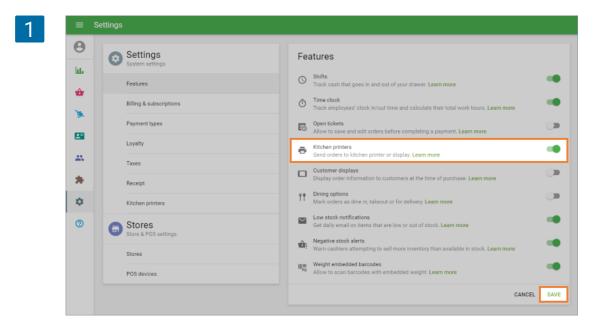
=	Settings	Printers	
ē	Printers	Pos Other model	Receipts and bills
\$	General		
	•	Printers	Printers Pos Other model

## 9.8 Using Kitchen Printers with Loyverse POS

Cafes and restaurants use kitchen printers to inform the cooking staff what to prepare from an order.

#### 9.8.1 Configuring Loyverse Back Office

Log in to the Back Office, navigate to the Settings menu, Features section, and switch on the 'Kitchen Printers' slider.



Click the Kitchen Printers menu and create a printer group.

2	≡	Settings		
	0	O	Settings System settings	
	ш. 👉 ≽		Features Billing & subscriptions	Kitchen printers
	<b></b>		Payment types Loyalty Taxes	Add a printer group to print orders for the kitchen.
	*		Receipt	
L	<b>¢</b>		Open tickets Kitchen printers	
		G	Stores Store & POS settings	

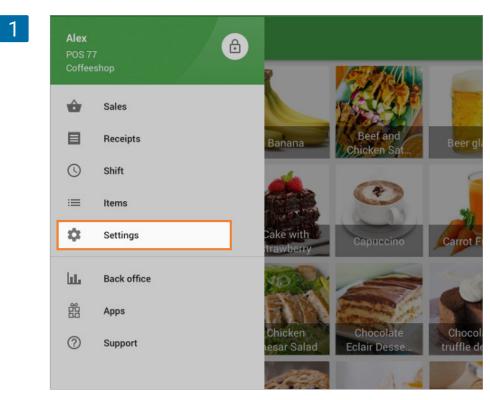
Give the printer group a meaningful name. A printer group typically corresponds to the printer location - bar, kitchen, kitchen station, etc. Therefore, the recommended practice is to use the printer location as the printer group name.

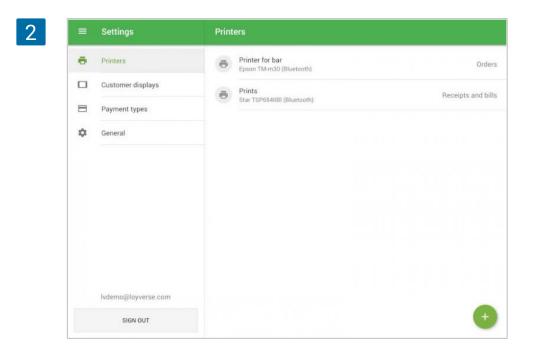
Tick item categories that should be included in this printer group and save your selection.

3	≡ C	eate printer group	
	Θ	Name	
	ht.	Bar	_
	*	Categories Categories printed on this printer group	
	* 8	Desserts	
	45	Drinks     Fruits	
	٥	Hot Drinks	
		Juice     Meais	
		No category	
		Pizza     Salads	
		Sandwiches	
		Sweets	
		CANCEL	

#### 9.8.2 Setting Up the Loyverse POS App

Using the Loyverse POS app, assign an actual printer to a certain printer group. Open the Settings menu and select the printer you will use to print the orders for the kitchen or add a new one. (How to set up Star ethernet printer in Loyverse POS)

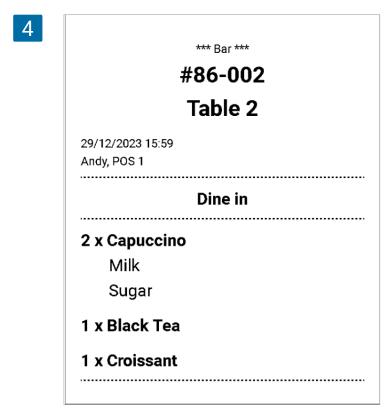




Specify that this printer will print orders. Switch on "Print orders", select the proper printer group and save your settings.

Name		
Prin	iter for bar	
Printer	model	
Epsor	n TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	
	oth printer	_
Epsor	n TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	SEARC
Print	receipts and bills	Ç
Print	orders	
	PRINT TEST	
Printer	r groups	
Bar		

Now, when a customer orders, the kitchen printer automatically produces a ticket with the list of items to prepare. If you use open tickets, the kitchen ticket will print as soon as you save the open ticket.



If you correct an open ticket by deleting or adding an item, the kitchen printer will print a corresponding ticket.

5	*** VOIDED *** *** Bar *** #86-005	*** Bar *** #86-005 Table 1
	Table 1	29/12/2023 16:33 Andy, POS 1
	29/12/2023 16:32 Andy, POS 1	Dine in
	Dine in	1 x Croissant
	1 x Green Tea	

Sometimes, it is convenient to print each item in the order separately instead of having the whole order printed at once. To do that (for iOS only) turn the toggle "Print single item per order ticket" on, and then each item in the order will be printed as a separate ticket.

6	Print receipts and bills	
	Print orders	
	Print single item per order ticket	
	🖶 PRINT TEST	
	Printer groups	

You can reprint the kitchen orders (for iOS only). To do this, open the saved ticket and tap 'Reprint order' from the three dots menu.



*** REPRINT ***	
*** Bar ***	
#86-002	
Table 2	
29/12/2023 16:06 Andy, POS 1	
Dine in	
2 x Capuccino	
Milk	
Sugar	
1 x Black Tea	
1 x Croissant	
	*** Bar *** #86-002 Table 2 29/12/2023 16:06 Andy, POS 1 Dine in 2 x Capuccino Milk Sugar 1 x Black Tea 1 x Croissant

The kitchen printer will reprint the ticket with the mark 'Reprint'.

You can reprint the kitchen orders for 2 hours after closing the open ticket from the Receipts section.

$\equiv$ Receipts		#13-1090	e	Print receip
Q Enter receipt nur	nber		€.	Reprint ord
Tuesday, 31 July 2018		42.11 Total		Send receip
H	#13-1090	Order. Table 5		
71.72 1:42 PM	#13-1089	Cashier Alex POS: POS 03		
10 70.84 1:41 PM	#13-1088	Dine in		
20.98 1:40 PM	#13-1087	Carrot Fresh 1 x 8.00		8.00
11.85 1:11 PM	#8-1325	Classic Cobb Salad 1 x 7.59 Chocolate truffle dessert 1 x 8.50		7.59 8.50
30.20 1:09 PM	#8-1324	Croissant 1 x 2.25		2.25
9.20	#8-1323	Four Cheese Pizza 1 x 4 99		4.99

## 9.9 Troubleshooting When Setting Up an Ethernet Printer

When you cannot set up an Ethernet printer with Loyverse POS, it's a good possibility that either the printer is experiencing a hardware issue, or you have a network related issue. We always recommend testing the printer for hardware issues before testing the network.

#### Testing hardware issues

- Check that the paper is loaded and that there are no paper jams.
- Check the cable connections; both power and ethernet cables going from the printer and Wi-Fi router.
- Ensure that the printer and router power indication lights are on.
- Verify that the printer has no flashing lights or Red lights since this usually occurs with malfunctions.

#### Network related issues

1) Check if your mobile device is connected to the Wi-Fi network provided by the Wi-Fi router, plugged into the receipt printer.

In the settings on your mobile device check the network you are connected to.

			🕈 🛜 📶 94% 🗎 5:52 PM
Settings			
💿 Wi-Fi	On		••
Bluetooth	1	Office Connected	
Airplane mode	(7	Project	
Mobile hotspot and tethe	ring	Lab	
bata usage	6	Class	

If not connected to your Wi-Fi router, choose your Wi-Fi network to connect to it.

#### 2) Next, verify that the receipt printer and the router are on the same subnet.

On your receipt printer, you need to print a network configuration report by following these steps:

- Turn the printer's power switch off
- Hold down the FEED button located on the front of the printer
- While continuing to hold the FEED button down, turn the power switch on
- The lights should flash for a few seconds, and then one or two pages should print out with a configuration report
- You can now release the FEED button

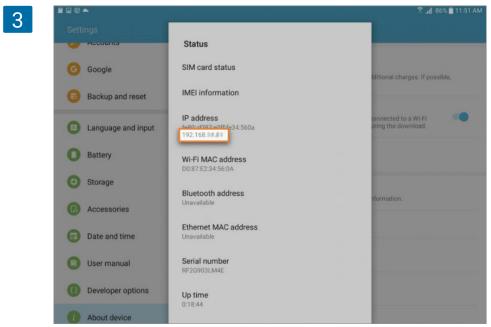
You can find the IP address of your printer under the "Current IP Parameters Status" section (underlined by orange below).

	***************
Network Conf	iguration
*****	**************
MAC Addr : 00:11:62:07	7:17:EA
IP Address	:0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	:0.0.0.0
Default Gateway	:0.0.0.0
DHCP	:ENABLE
"user" Login Password	:"guest"
"root" Login Password	:"*******
9100 Multi Session	:ENABLE
Disconnect Message	:ENABLE
*****	*****
Current IP Parame	eters Status
***************	**************
IP Address : 192.	168.000.000 (DHCP
Subnet Mask : 255.	
	168.126.1

Then, you have to check the IP address of your router network. It is possible to do on your mobile device, connected to your router's Wi-Fi.

2

On **Android mobile devices**, go to Settings, and in the 'About device' menu, tap Status and check the IP address line.



2. IP address of your router

On Apple mobile devices go to Settings and just tap your active Wi-Fi connection.

Settings		🗙 Wi-Fi	Office	
Q Settings				
		Forget This Network		
>>> Airplane Mode	$\bigcirc$	IP ADDRESS		
ᅙ Wi-Fi	Office	DHCP	BootP	Static
Bluetooth	On	IP Address		192.168.
😡 Cellular Data		Subnet Mask		255.255.255.
Carrier		Router		192.168.57.254
-		DNS		8.8.8.8, 8.8.4.4
Notifications		Search Domains		

3. IP address of your router

Compare the two IP addresses: receipt printer 1 and router 2 or 3.

Both of the first three groups of numbers should be the same. If they are not, that means the two devices are on the different subnet.

You have to change the IP address either at the receipt printer or at your router. How to do it, refer to user manuals of these devices or contact your network administrator.

4th groups of numbers have to be different.

Note

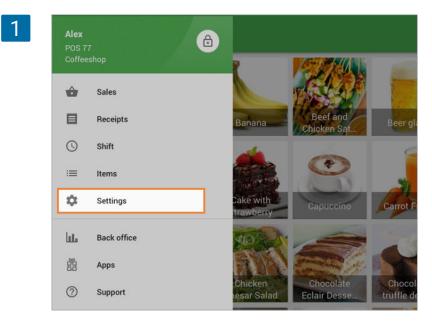
Loyverse POS communicates with an Ethernet receipt printer via port 9100. If your printer has been set to another port, change the printer settings to port 9100. Refer to user manuals of a printer for information on how to do this.

Loyverse POS app for Android is compatible with built-in printers on Sunmi devices.

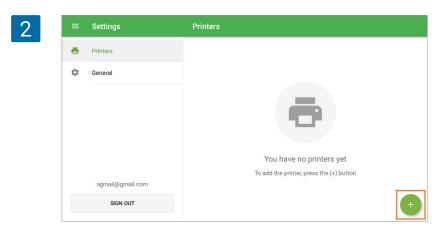
The list of supported Sunmi devices:

- Sunmi V1
- Sunmi V1S
- Sunmi V2
- Sunmi V2 pro
- Sunmi T1 mini
- Sunmi T2 mini
- Sunmi D2 mini
- Sunmi T2 (**Note:** The second screen on this device will not work as the customer display (CDS).)
- Sunmi S2 (**Note:** The second screen on this device will not work as the customer display (CDS).)
- Sunmi M2

To connect internal printer on SUNMI device, start the Loyverse POS app and go to Settings.



Create a printer by tapping on the '+' button.



Type the title of your printer in the 'Name' field and select SUNMI from the drop-down menu of printers models.

Name Sunmi	
Printer model	
Epson TM-T88V (Ethernet)	
Epson TM-m30	
Sunmi	
Posiflex 6900	
XPrinter XP-Q800	
GP-58130IIC	

Select 'Paper width' of the printer.

Sunmi	 
Printer model Sunmi	
Paper width 80 mm	
58 mm	
Print orders	

Tap the 'Print test' button to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app.

4 ← Edit p	inter		SAVE
	Name Sunmi Printer model SUNMI Paper width		
	80 mm Print receipts and bills	•	
	Print orders Automatically print receipt		
	PRINT TEST		
	Printer groups 1	0	

If a test receipt prints out successfully, then your printer is set up correctly.



Choose the settings for your printer, depending on how you want to use it. Don't forget to save all of the settings at the end, by tapping on the 'Save' button.

← Edit printer			SAVE
	<sub>Name</sub> <u>Sunmi</u>		
	Printer model SUNMI	÷	
	Paper width 80 mm	÷	
	Print receipts and bills	۰	
	Print orders		
	Automatically print receipt		
	PRINT TEST		
	Printer groups		
	1		

Now you can see your printer in the list.

7	=	Settings	Printers	
	ē.	Printers		Sunmi SUNMI Receipts and bills, Orders
		Customer displays		
	۵	General		

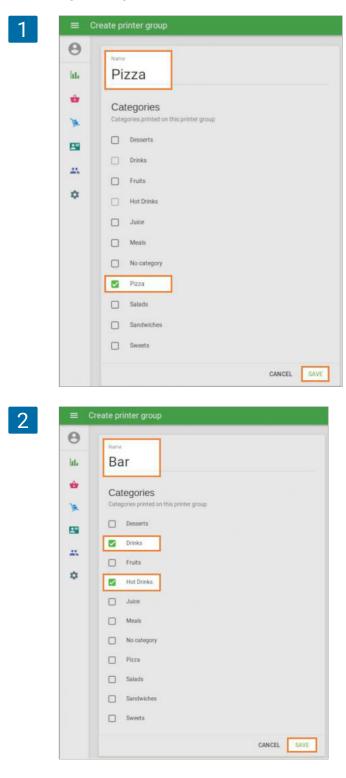
Note

It is impossible to connect and print receipts from other mobile devices at the built-in printer of Sunmi device.

# 9.11 How to Set Up Kitchen Printer for Each Kitchen Station

**Before Setting Up:** The 'Use Kitchen Printers' option should be activated in your Back Office (see <u>Using Kitchen Printers with Loyverse POS</u>), and printers should be set up in the Loyverse POS app (see <u>How to set up Star ethernet printer in Loyverse POS</u>).

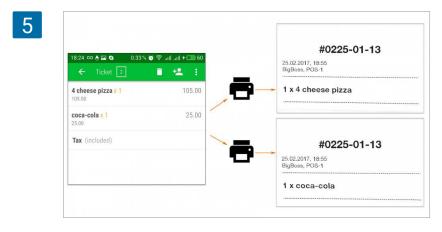
If you want to set up a separate kitchen printer for each kitchen station, create printer groups and assign categories to them in the Back Office.



On the Loyverse POS app, assign each printer to its own printer group.

← Edit printer	
Name Printer for pizza	
Printer model	
Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	*
Bluetooth printer	
Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	SEARCH
Print receipts and bills	D
Print orders	
PRINT TEST	
Printer groups	
Bar	Ø
Pizza	
i cossi free	
DELETE PRINTER	
DELETE PRINTER	
Edit printer	[
Edit printer	[
- Edit printer	[
Edit printer Printer for bar	[
Edit printer	
Edit printer Name Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	
- Edit printer Name Printer for bar Printer model	C SEARCH
Edit printer Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	
Edit printer Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	
Edit printer Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth) Bluetooth printer Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	
Edit printer Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth) Bluetooth printer Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth) Print receipts and bills	
Edit printer Printer for bar Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth) Bluetooth printer Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth) Print receipts and bills Print orders  Print orders	
Edit printer      Warre      Printer for bar      Printer for bar      Printer model      Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)      Buetooth printer:      Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)      Print receipts and bills      Print orders      Print egroups:	
Edit printer  Printer for bar  Printer model  Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)  Bluetooth pinter  Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)  Print receipts and bills Print orders  Printer groups Bar	
Edit printer      Itanie      Printer for bar      Printer model      Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)      Bluetooth printer      Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)      Print receipts and bills      Print orders      Printer groups	
Edit printer  Printer for bar  Printer model  Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)  Bluetooth pinter  Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)  Print receipts and bills Print orders  Printer groups Bar	

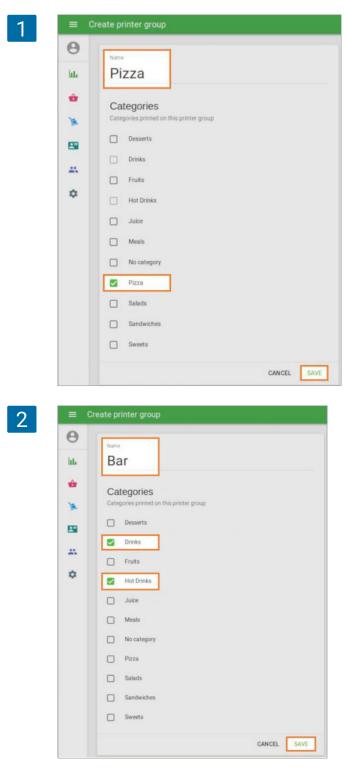
Now, when a customer orders, two kitchen printers produce tickets with the list of items from their categories.



## 9.12 How to Set Up Multiple Kitchen Stations to Share One Printer

**Before Setting Up:** The 'Use Kitchen Printers' option should be activated in your Back Office (see <u>Using Kitchen Printers with Loyverse POS</u>), and printers should be set up in the Loyverse POS app (see <u>How to Set Up Ethernet Printer in Loyverse POS</u>).

If you want to print tickets from multiple kitchen stations with one printer, create a few printer groups and assign categories to them in the Back Office.



On the Loyverse POS app, assign each individual printer to both printer groups.

Kitchen	
Printer model Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	~
Illustooth printer Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	SEARCH
Print receipts and bills	
Print orders	
PRINT TEST	
Bar	
Pizza	O

Now, when a customer orders, the kitchen printer will create two tickets for both kitchen stations with their own list of items.

	0 🗊 + 🔲 60	#0225-01-13 25.02.2017, 18:55
← Ticket 2	📲 🤹 💷	BigBoss, POS-1
<b>4 cheese pizza x 1</b> 105.00	105.00	1 x 4 cheese pizza
<b>coca-cola x 1</b> 25.00	25.00	<b>9</b>
Tax (included)		""Drinkables"" #0225-01-13
		25.02.2017, 18:55 BigBoss, POS-1
		1 x coca-cola

## 9.13 How to Connect Kitchen Printer Bell (Buzzer)

A bell (buzzer) can be connected to your kitchen printer to attract the attention of the cooking staff to the printed order.

Most of the receipt printers have a special cash drawer socket, usually of RJ11 type. Refer to your receipt printer and kitchen printer bell (buzzer) manuals to make sure they are compatible. As long as they are, and the receipt printer is supported by Loyverse POS, such kitchen printer bell (buzzer) can be used with Loyverse POS as well.

Before connecting a bell, make sure that your kitchen printer has been paired with Loyverse POS. Also in the Back Office settings, the 'Use Kitchen Printers' option has to be on, and the printer group has to be created with the associated categories of items.

In your printer settings in the POS switch on the 'Print orders' option and some printer groups.

#### Note

If you use the printer to 'Print receipts and bills' and 'Print Orders', the RJ11 socket will work only to open the cash drawer and will not work to ring the bell.

1	← Create printer	SAVE
	Name Printer	
	Printer madel Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	
	Printer IP-address 168.198.1.1	SEARCH
	Print receipts and bills	Ø
	Print orders	
	Printer groups	
	Bar	00
	Pizza Kitchen	

Find the RJ11 socket on your receipt printer.



Plug the bell (buzzer) cable into the socket.



Turn on the printer and tap 'Print test' to make sure that all the settings are correct.

← Create printer	SAV
Name	
Printer	
Printer model	
Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Printer IP-address	
168.198.1.1	SEARCH
Print receipts and bills	Ø
Print orders	
	PRINT TEST
Printer groups	
Bar	$\bigcirc$
Pizza	
Kitchen	

The kitchen printer bell (buzzer) will ring before the test order is printed.



After all the settings are completed, the kitchen bell (buzzer) will ring every time the order is printed in the kitchen. Also, the bell (buzzer) will ring when the printed order is cancelled.

Loyverse POS for Android works with scanners supporting HID protocol. You can use scanners with Bluetooth interface or USB scanners via a USB OTG adapter/cable. Loyverse POS on IOS devices supports only following scanner models:

- Socket Mobile 7Ci
- Socket Mobile 7Qi
- Socket Mobile S700
- Socket Mobile S740
- Socket Mobile S800
- BCR-POP1 mPOP scanner only connected through mPOP printer

## 9.15 How to Connect a USB Barcode Scanner to an Android Device

If your Android smartphone or tablet supports a USB on-the-go, or OTG, you can use a USB barcode scanner with the Loyverse POS app.

To use a USB scanner with Loyverse POS on an Android device, you will need a USB OTG adapter or cable. It has a female USB connector on one end and a male micro USB connector on the other.



First plug the USB barcode scanner to the female USB connector of an OTG adapter or a cable.

Then plug the the micro-USB end of the OTG adapter or cable into the micro-USB port of your mobile device and wait for the system to recognize the scanner.



Now you can add barcodes to your items and sell items with a barcode scanner.

# 9.16 How to Setup Motorola CS3070 (Bluetooth) Barcode Scanner

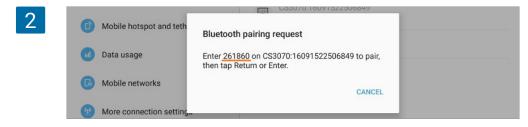
Press the scan button (+) to wake the scanner.

Press and hold the Bluetooth button (round button) for five seconds. The scanner beeps and the Bluetooth button starts blinking quickly to indicate that the scanner is discoverable by the host.

On your mobile device, turn on Bluetooth and let it search for devices. You will see your scanner in the list.



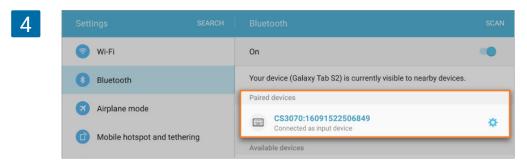
Select the CS3070 from the discovered device list. The Bluetooth application will prompt you to scan the pass key it generated.



Scan Numeric Barcodes corresponding to the pass key, one by one, then scan the Enter code.



The Bluetooth button blinks slowly to indicate that the scanner is paired with the host.



Now, in your Loyverse POS app, go to the 'Sales' menu. When you scan the item with a barcode, this item will be added to the ticket.

## 9.17 Socket 7Qi/7Ci (Bluetooth) Barcode Scanner Setup

### 9.17.1 Connecting scanner to Android Mobile Device

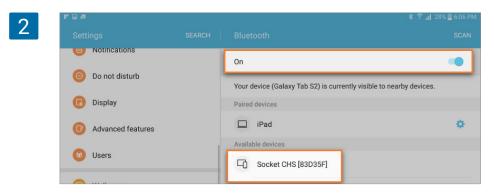
When working with the Loyverse POS app on your Android Mobile Device, the Socket 7Qi/7Ci (Bluetooth) scanner should be connected in the Human Interface Device (HID) Basic Mode.

Power on the scanner and configure it to the connection mode by scaning this barcode:



Turn Bluetooth on in your device. Go to Settings > Bluetooth. A Bluetooth Device search will begin.

You will see your scanner in the list.



Configure the scanner to Human Interface Device (HID) Basic Mode, as Keyboard class device, by scanning this barcode:



The scanner icon will be changed to the keyboard.

Λ				% 🚊 6:07 PM
4	Settings			SCAN
			On	•
	<ul> <li>Notifications</li> <li>Do not disturb</li> <li>Display</li> <li>Advanced features</li> </ul>	Your device (Galaxy Tab S2) is currently visible to nearby devices.		
	🐻 Display		Paired devices	
	Advanced features		🛄 iPad	\$
	😡 Users		Available devices	
			Socket CHS [83D35F]	
	Wallpaper		_	

Tap on your Socket scanner in the list of Devices. After a few seconds, the "Not Paired" status will change to "Connected" or "Paired" and the scanner Blue LED will start blinking every 3 seconds, confirming the connection.

5	erae	🚸 🛜 📶 25% 🗮 6:13 PM
5	Settings SEARCH	Bluetooth STOP
	💿 Wi-Fi	On C 🖜
	Bluetooth	Your device (Galaxy Tab S2) is currently visible to nearby devices.
	Airplane mode	Paired devices
	Mobile hotspot and tethering	Connected as input device

Now, in your Loyverse POS app, go to the 'Sales' menu. When you scan the item with a barcode, this item will be added to the ticket.

### 9.17.2 Connecting scanner to Apple iOS device

When working with the Loyverse POS app on the Apple iOS device Socket 7Qi/7Ci (Bluetooth) scanner should be connected in Application Mode.

Power on the scanner. To change the profile to Application Mode, scan this barcode:



Turn on Bluetooth on the Apple device. Go to Settings > Bluetooth. The bluetooth device search will begin.

	Settings		Bluetooth	
	Q. Settings		Bluetooth	
≁	Airplane Mode	$\bigcirc$	NUW discoverable as i bollysis i Pad .	
Ŷ	Wi-Fi	Office	DEVICES and	
*	Bluetooth	On	Socket CHS [83D35F]	
( <sub>&amp;</sub> )	Cellular Data			

Tap on your Socket scanner in the list of Devices found. After a few seconds the "Not Paired" status will change to "Connected" or "Paired" and the scanner's blue LED will blink every 3 seconds, confirming the connection.

3	MY DEVICES	
	Socket CHS [83D35F]	Connected (i)

Now in you Loyverse POS app, go to the 'Sales' menu. When you scan the item with the barcode, this item will be added to the ticket.

## 9.18 Supported Cash Drawers

Loyverse POS can support printer-driven cash drawers, which means a cash drawer is connected to a printer, which in turn is connected to Loyverse POS. Therefore, you can use any cash drawer which can be driven by your receipt printer. Please consult cash drawer manual or manufacturer website to see if your cash drawer is compatible with your receipt printer.

Receipt printer and cash drawer should have the same voltage of power supply 12 or 24 V. If they have different voltage they will not be compatible.

Note

## 9.19 How to Connect a Cash Drawer

A cash drawer connects to your receipt printer, and is triggered to open automatically when you finish a cash sale.

Most of receipt printers have a special cash drawer connector, usually of RJ11 type. Refer to your receipt printer and cash drawer manuals to make sure they are compatible. As long as they are, and given the receipt printer is <u>supported by Loyverse POS</u>, such cash drawer can be used with Loyverse POS as well.

Before connecting a cash drawer, your printer should be <u>paired with Loyverse POS</u> using the Print Receipts and Bills option in your app settings.

Find the cash drawer socket on your receipt printer.

1



Plug the cash drawer cable into the socket.



Turn the printer on and ring up a cash sale using the Loyverse POS app. The cash drawer will open when the sale is completed.



A cash drawer also opens when:

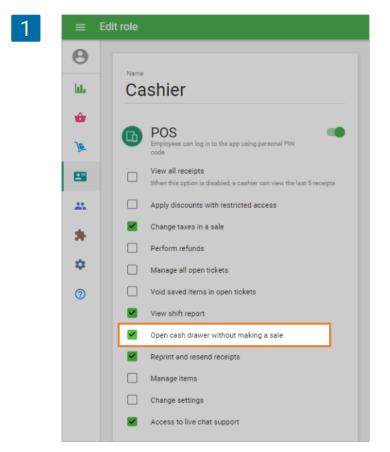
- A refund receipt is printed for cash refunds only
- Opening shifts for employees to enter the initial cash amount
- · Closing shifts for employees to calculate the final cash amount
- 'Pay In' and 'Pay Out' actions performed to put money into or take from the cash drawer
- Using the 'Print test' option to test your printer's connection with the Loyverse POS app

Note

Cash drawers APG: Vasario 1416 and Vasario 1616 should be connected with receipt printer only through the cable CD 102 A.

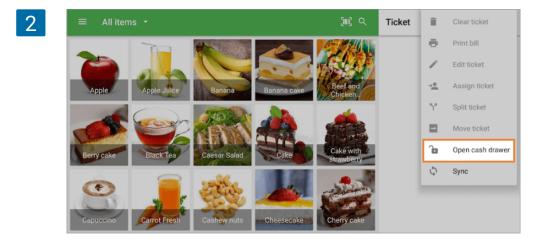
### 9.19.1 How to open cash drawer without making a sale

You can set the right to open cash drawer without making a sale for your employee group. Go to 'Access rights' menu at the 'Employee' section in the Back Office and open the group for the editing. Check the box 'Open cash drawer without making a sale' in the 'POS' section.



Don't forget to save.

You can find the 'Open cash drawer' button in the three vertical dots (:) menu at the Sale screen of your POS.



#### Note

The button 'Open cash drawer' is displayed only if there is at least one printer connected with the option 'Print receipts and bills'.

## Please refer to the <u>Loyverse KDS setup guide</u> and make sure you <u>Loyverse KDS</u> app is configured properly and test orders appear on kitchen display.

Now that you have Loyverse KDS set up, customer orders will appear on your kitchen display(s) as tickets with the list of items to prepare.

The first line of a ticket header contains either ticket number or ticket name for saved open tickets. Then there is time since the order was created and server's name.

Ticket #0328-02-02	Ticket number Open ticket name table	oen ticket I → Continued
03:10, John	Waiting time and employee name 00:05, Jo	hn
1 x Farro	Quantity and item name	
1 x Cavatelli	1 x Cav	1 x Lobster Bisque
1 x Cavatelli medium	Item modifier	vatelli take away
no salt	Itom commont	salt Ticket comment
1 x Mushroom Risotto	1 x Ros Sou	asted Tomato
		asted Fingerling
	Pot	atoes salt
	Long ticket break	$ued \rightarrow$
		man

If there are item modifiers and/or comments, they will be listed just under the item name. The ticket comment is shown in the footer.

Long tickets break down to several pieces so you can still see the entire ticket on one screen without scrolling.

As time passes, ticket header color will change from green to yellow to red, indicating orders that are almost or already late. The time period can be adjusted in Settings.

If you edit an open ticket and void an item, KDS will display the voided item in the ticket in red strikethrough font.

If you edit an open ticket, adding an item, it will be shown as a new ticket.

table7	$\rightarrow$ Continued	table9	table3
17:17, John		06:52, John	00:42, John
Voided (1)	1 x Roasted Tomato		
volueu (1)	Soup	1 x Tuna Tartare*	1 x Cavatelli Medium
1 x Apple, Pineapple,	1 x Local Heirloom	1 x Shrimp & Stone-	no salt
or Tomato Juice	Tomato Salad	Ground Creamy Grits	1 x Penne
1 x Farro	1 x Crispy Chicken		
	Livers	1 x Oysters	1 x Oysters
1 x Cavatelli		Rockefeller	Rockefelle
1 x Shrimp & Stone-	1 x Cheese	1 x Mushroom Risotto	
Ground Creamy		T X MUSHIOOTT HISOLLO	
Grits		1 x Crispy Chicken	
		Livers	
1 x Sampler of Spring			
Rolls		to go	

If you tick an item at the ticket, it will become strikethrough; you can use it to indicate that it is already cooked.



Tap on the ticket header to mark it complete when all the items are done.

To recall a closed ticket tap on the clock icon and tap the ticket you wish to recall.

To clear the entire list of completed tickets, tap 'Clear'.

0 orders	← Recall	CLEAR	Ð
	Completed in 05 minutes, 03 seconds		
	table1 20:36:16, John Completed in 05 minutes, 29 seconds		
	table2 20:38:25, John Completed in 07 minutes, 25 seconds		
	table5 20:41:33, John Completed in 05 minutes, 10 seconds		
	table4 20:39:48, John Completed in 07 minutes, 54 seconds		
	table6 20:45:13, John Completed in 05 minutes, 53 seconds		
	table8 20:48:38, John Completed in 08 minutes, 43 seconds		
	table2 20:52:06, John Completed in 05 minutes, 18 seconds		

## This guide will show you how to configure <u>Loyverse KDS</u>. To learn more about working with kitchen display systems, please read <u>How to Use Loyverse KDS Kitchen Display</u>.

Cafes and restaurants use kitchen display systems (KDS) instead of kitchen printers to inform the cooking staff what to prepare from an order.

To configure:

- 1. <u>Install Loyverse KDS app</u> on a separate tablet, and place it in the kitchen, in landscape mode.
- 2. <u>Specify device name</u> in systems settings.

## IMPORTANT: Make sure that both POS and KDS devices are connected to the same wifi network.

- 3. Configure Loyverse KDS app.
- 4. <u>Create a printer group</u> in the Back Office.
- 5. Pair kitchen display with Loyverse POS

That's it, you are ready to go!

### 9.21.1 Install Loyverse KDS app

Download the Loyverse <u>KDS for iPad</u> (the recommended version of **iOS is 11.0 or higher**) or Android (**5.0 or higher**) tablet. Although the minimum requirement is 7" display, it is recommended to use at least a 10" tablet for better visibility. The tablet should be positioned in landscape mode.

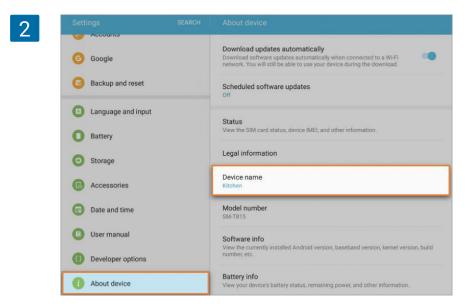
### 9.21.2 Specify a device name

Your Loyverse KDS app will inherit the device name. The default device name is not very informative, thus it is recommended (but not mandatory) to give your device a name reflecting its location — Kitchen, Bar, etc.

To configure the device name on an iPad, go to Settings > General > About. Tap the first line, which shows the name of your device. Rename your device, then tap Done.

Settings		< General	About
Airplane Mode	0	Name	Kitchen
ᅙ Wi-Fi	GFA-Project		
Bluetooth	Off	Network	Not Available
Cellular Data	No SIM	Songs	
		Videos	(
Notifications		Photos	157
Control Center		Applications	4
C Do Not Disturb		Capacity	59.24 GE
		Available	57.31 GE
🚫 General		Version	10.2.1 (14D27
AA Display & Brightness		Carrier	Carrier 27.0
Wallpaper		Model	MGHX2X/A
Sounds		Serial Number	DMPPQ2RZG5YI
🌅 Siri		Cellular Data Number	Unknown
Touch ID & Passcode		Wi-Fi Address	9C:35:EB:3C:19:C8

To configure a device name on an Android tablet, go to Settings > About device. On the next screen, tap Device Name, rename your device and tap OK.

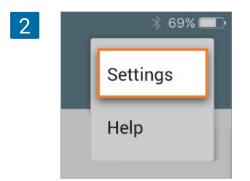


9.21.3 Configure Loyverse KDS app

Launch the app and log in with the same login and password as you use for Loyverse POS app.



Go to the menu at the right top corner (three dots) and tap Settings.



To use sound notifications, turn the 'Order notification sound' option on and choose a sound from your device. The sound will be played each time a new order appears.

You will also want to adjust the time intervals after which the ticket headers will change its color to warning (yellow) and late (red). Default values are 4 minutes (240 seconds) and 7 minutes (420 seconds).



### 9.21.4 Create a printer group

Loyverse POS treats kitchen display as a kitchen printer, therefore the Back Office configuration for a kitchen display is the same as for kitchen printers.

Log in to the Back Office, navigate to the Settings menu and switch on the "Kitchen Printers" slider in the "Features" section.

= \$	Settings			
<b>O</b>	0	Settings System settings	Fe	eatures
		Features	C	Shifts Track cash that goes in and out of your drawer. Learn more
Ŷ		Billing & subscriptions	Ō	Time clock Track employees' clock in/out time and calculate their total work hours. Learn more
7		Payment types	F	
-		Loyalty	La	Kitchen printers
		Taxes	Ľ	Send orders to kitchen printer or display. Learn more
*		Receipt		Display order information to customers at the time of purchase. Learn more
۵		Open tickets	ΤŤ	Dining options Mark orders as dine in, takeout or for delivery. Learn more
0		Kitchen printers		Get daily email on items that are low or out of stock. Learn more
	G	Stores Store & POS settings	ŵ	Negative stock alerts Warn cashiers attempting to sell more inventory than available in stock. Learn more
		Stores	U.S.	Weight embedded barcodes Allow to scan barcodes with embedded weight. Learn more
		POS devices		CANCEL SAV

Click the "Kitchen Printers" menu and create a printer group.

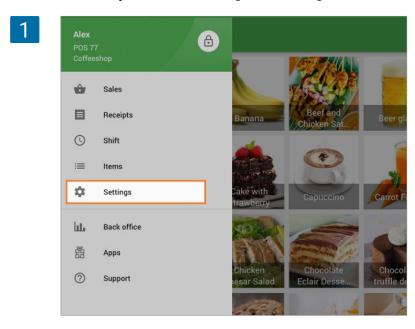
≡ Setti
<ul> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>→</li> <li>↓</li> /ul>

Give the printer group a name. Tick item categories that should be included in this printer group and save your selection.

=	Edit printer group	
Θ	Name	
ևե	Kitchen	
*	Categories Categories printed on this printer group	
-	Clothes	
	Desserts	
**	Drinks	
\$	M Fruits	
	Hot Drinks	
	🛃 Juice	
	🥪 Meals	
	No category	
	Pizza	
	Salads	
	Sandwiches	
	Sweets	
	1	CANCEL SAVE

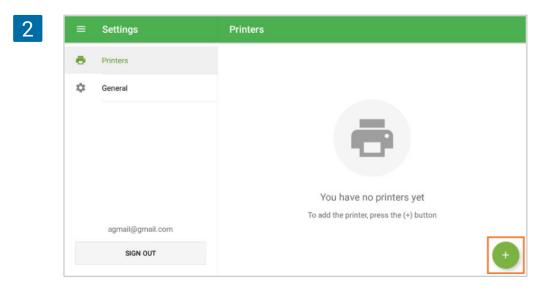
### 9.21.5 Pair kitchen display with Loyverse POS

First, make sure that all mobile devices with Loyverse KDS and Loyverse POS are connected to the same Wi-Fi router.



Then launch Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Printers.

Tap the '+' button to add a kitchen display as a printer.



Enter your kitchen display name into the 'Printer name' field and select Kitchen Display from the drop-down menu.

← Edit p	rinter	
	Name Kitchen display	
	Star TSP143IIILAN (Ethernet)	
	Star TSP654IILAN (Ethernet)	
	Star SP743LAN (Ethernet)	
	Epson TM-P20 (Bluetooth)	
	Epson TM-m30 (Bluetooth)	1
	Epson TM-T20II (Ethernet)	
	Epson TM-m30 (Ethernet)	-
	Epson TM-T88VI (Ethernet)	
	Other model (Ethernet)	
	Kitchen display	1

Tap the 'Search' button to search the network for available kitchen display devices.

4	← Edit printe	er	SAVE
		Name Kitchen display	
		Printer model Kitchen display	
		Kitchen display IP address	
		Print orders	

Select the appropriate kitchen display from the list of discovered devices and click OK.



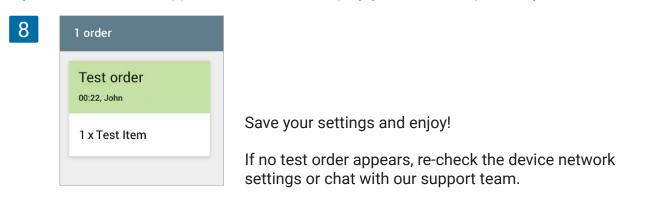
If automatic discovery fails, you can manually enter the IP address of the kitchen display device and proceed to the next step without tapping the 'Search' button.

6	Printer model Kitchen display	•
	Kitchen display IP address 192.168.	SEARCH
	Print orders	

Then switch 'Print orders' on, select a printer group and tap the 'Print test' button.

Name Kitchen display	
Printer model	
Kitchen display	
Kitchen display IP address	
192.168.	SEARCH
Print orders	
🖶 PRINT TEST	
Printer groups	
Kitchen	

If you see a test order appear on the kitchen display, you have configured Loyverse KDS correctly.



### 9.22.1 Separate Router

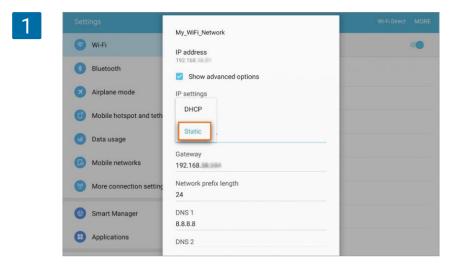
Often problems of losing the connection between Loyverse POS and KDS appear when there are many other Wi-Fi connections to the same Wi-Fi router.

We recommend having separate router with Wi-Fi connection only to the mobile device with Loyverse POS App and mobile devices with <u>KDS App</u>.

### 9.22.2 Assign a static IP address to the kitchen display tablet

Connect your device to the same WiFi network as the device with Loyverse POS is connected to, and make sure the connection is working. Then change your network settings DHCP (automatic) to static (manual).

On an <u>Android tablet</u>, go to Settings > WiFi, tap and hold the active network, then tap 'Manage network settings'. Tap 'Show advanced options' and scroll down to IP settings, then change 'DHCP' to 'Static'. Tap 'Save'.



On an <u>iPad</u>, go to Settings > WiFi.

Write down the IP address, Subnet mask, Router values that are in Automatic IP configuration mode.

Setting	s	< Wi-Fi	TP-Link_	2DFC_5G
Apple Arcade Free for 3 Mon	ths >	Forget this Ne	twork	
Apple TV+ Free Year Available	9 >	Auto-Join		
Aeroplane Mode		Private Addres	55	
ᅙ Wi-Fi	TP-Link_2DFC_5G	Wi-Fi Address		0A:1F:6F:E5:00:B4
Bluetooth	On	Using a private a	ddress helps reduce tracking of y	our iPad across different Wi-Fi networks.
VPN VPN	Not Connected	Low Data Mod	e	
Notifications		networks you set	elps reduce your iPad data usage ect. When Low Data Mode is turn yncing, are paused.	over your mobile network or specific Wi-Fi ed on, automatic updates and background tasks,
Sounds		Configure IP		Automatic >
C Do Not Disturb		IP Address		192.168.1.156
Screen Time		Subnet Mask		255.255.255.0
General		Router		192.168.1.1
Control Centre		Renew Lease		
Display & Brightness				

Then click on the Automatic button.

3	IPV4 ADDRESS	
	Configure IP	Automatic >
	IP Address	192.168.1.156

Switch the configuration mode to the Manual and enter values from Automatic IP configuration into respective fields. Then, tap the 'Save' button.

Settings	TP-Link_2DFC_5G	Configure IPv4	
Apple Arcade Free for 3 Months	Automatic		
Apple TV+ Free Year Available	Manual		$\checkmark$
	BootP		
Aeroplane Mode	MANUAL IP		
Wi-Fi TP-Link_2DFC_5G	IP Address		192.168.1.156
8 Bluetooth On	Subnet Mask		255.255.255.0
VFN VPN Not Connected	Router		192.168.1.1
Notifications			
(I) Sounds			

In the same way, switch the DNS settings from automatic to manual mode.

Settings	✓ Wi-Fi TP-Link_2DFC_5G	
Aeroplane Mode	Auto-Join	
S Wi-Fi TP-Link_2DFC_5G	Private Address	C
Bluetooth On	Wi-Fi Address	0A:1F:6F:E5:00:B
VPN VPN Not Connected	Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPad across different	Wi-Fi networks.
	Low Data Mode	
Notifications	Low Data Mode helps reduce your iPad data usage over your mobile netwo networks you select. When Low Data Mode is turned on, automatic update	
(I) Sounds	such as Photos syncing, are paused.	
C Do Not Disturb	Configure IP	Manual
Screen Time	IP Address	192.168.1.1
General	Subnet Mask	255.255.255
Control Centre	Router	192.168.
AA Display & Brightness	DNS	
Home Screen & Dock	Configure DNS	Automatic
Accessibility	HTTP PROXY	

And add the DNS server value. For example, you can use the value 8.8.8.8 for Google OpenDNS.

Automatic	
Manual	
DNS SERVERS	
8.8.8.8	
Add Server	
SEARCH DOMAINS	
Add Search Domain	

Now you have set your iOS to work in the static IP address mode.

Settings	VII-FI TP-Link_2DFC_5G
Aeroplane Mode	Forget this Network
WI-FI TP-Link_2DFC_5G	
Bluetooth On	Auto-Join
VPN VPN Not Connected	
	Private Address
Notifications	Wi-Fi Address 0A:1F:6F:E5:0
Sounds	Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPad across different Wi-Fi networks.
C Do Not Disturb	Low Data Mode
Screen Time	Low Data Mode helps reduce your iPad data usage over your mobile network or specific Wi-Fi networks you select. When Low Data Mode is turned on, automatic updates and background ta such as Photos syncing, are paused.
General	IPV4 ADDRESS Configure IP Manu
Control Centre	IP Address 192.168.
AA Display & Brightness	Subnet Mask 255.255.3
Home Screen & Dock	Router 192.10
() Accessibility	DNS
🛞 Wallpaper	Configure DNS Manu
Siri & Search	

# 10. Payment

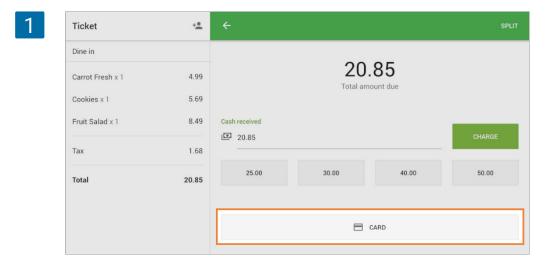


## 10.1 How to Work with Credit Card Payments

You can use any credit card processing system with Loyverse POS, without integration between them.

Loyverse POS can register payments made through a card processing system that is installed and operated separately.

On the final stage of the sale transaction, Loyverse POS gives you a choice between <u>credit</u> <u>card</u> or cash. But it does not connect to the credit card terminal itself and does not transfer the amount of purchase to the terminal. Therefore, at the card terminal, you need to enter the amount of sale manually and process the payment. Next, charge it to Loyverse POS by tapping the 'Card' button.



The information about payment and card type will be shown on the receipt.

$\mathbf{O}$	
-)	
_	

<b>The Coffee</b> 21 Avenue, Brooklyn, New York, NY, United States		
Order: #0303-01-05 Cashier: Alex POS: POS 1		
Carrot Fresh 1 x 4.99	4.99	
Cookies 1 x 5.69	5.69	
Fruit Salad 1 x 8.49	8.49	
Subtotal Sales Tax 8.75%	<b>19.17</b> 1.68	
Total	20.85	
Card	20.85	
3.03.2017 13:35	#2078	

In the back office in the 'Sales by Payment Type' menu, you can find the report about credit card sales.

3	$\equiv$ Sales by payment type		
	Θ	< 🖹 25 Feb 2017 - 3 Mar 2017 >	
	հե	Sales summary	
	•	Sales by item Sales by category Pay Sales by employee	
		Sales by payment type Receipts	
	*	Sales by modifier Discounts	
	*	Taxes	
	\$	Shifts	
	?		

4

≡ ٤	Sales by payment type					
Θ	< 🗑 25 Feb 2017 - 3 Mar 2017	7 > 🕓 All day 🗸	🖶 All stores 🗸 🔔 All	employees +		
ш	EXPORT					
÷	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount
)a	Card	8	224.54	0	0.00	224.54
8	Cash	3	217.41	0	0.00	217.41
	Cash rounding	3	0.41	0	0.00	0.41
*	Total	11	441.95	0	0.00	441.95
۵						

# 10.2 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and SumUp

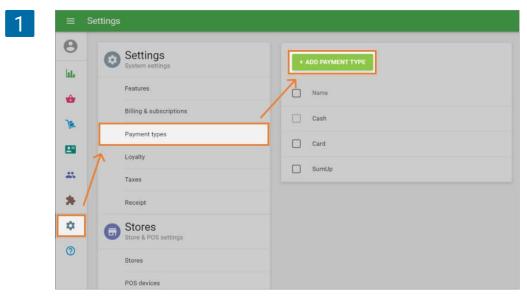
Loyverse POS merchants can accept credit card payments via <u>SumUp</u> and available to customers in 30+ countries: Austria, Belgium, Brazil, Bulgaria, Chile, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, The Netherlands, United Kingdom, United States.

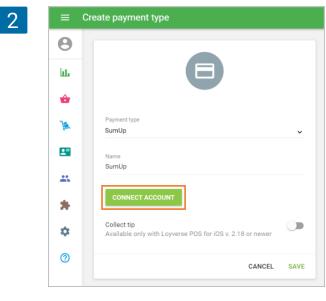
Before connecting a card reader, you have to create an account in SumUp and receive the device. Integration with Loyverse POS works on SumUp Air 1E000 and SumUp Solo card readers.

### 10.2.1 Connecting Card Reader

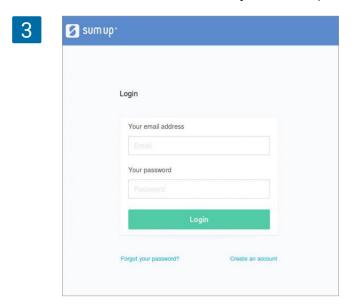
### 10.2.1.1 Creating a payment type

Log in to the Back Office, click the 'Settings' menu and then 'Payment types.' Click the 'Add payment type' button to add a new type of payment.





In the Add Payment Type window, select a 'SumUp' payment type from the drop-down list and tap 'Connect account' button. Enter Email and Password from your SumUp account.



Accept permissions request by clicking on 'authorize' button.

Loyverse is requesting permission to
Loyverse is requesting permission to
Accept payments on your behalf
Access and manage your mobile application settings
Access your transaction history
Access your user profile information
Cancel authorize
By clicking authorize, you allow this application and SumUp to use
information with their respective terms of service and privacy policies. You
change your account permissions at any time.

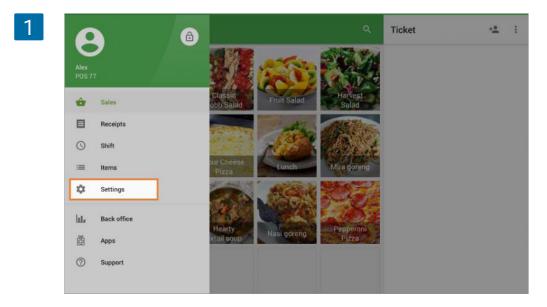
You will see the connected account message, click 'Save' button.

Θ	
ht.	8
ŵ	
)	Payment type SumUp
	Name SumUp
**	
*	Account 'loyverseuk@sumup.com' connected. Disconnect To configure card reader go to the settings menu in the Loyverse POS app.
۵	Collect tip Available only with Loyverse POS for iOS v. 2.18 or newer
0	

For the card reader SumUp Solo, remember to switch on the Bluetooth connection in the device settings.

### 10.2.1.2 Connecting with iOS devices

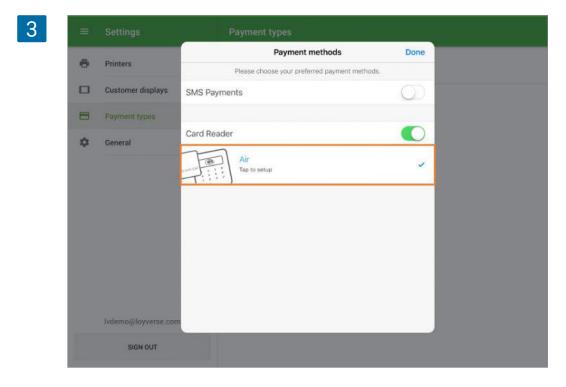
Then launch Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Payment Types.

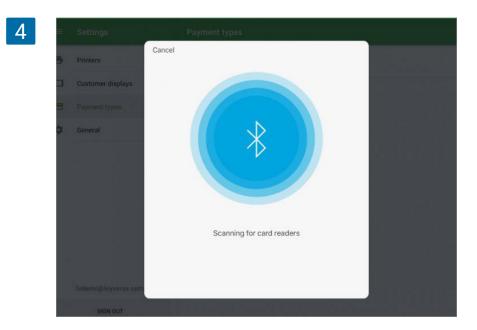


Tap the 'Sumup' button for account settings.

	Settings	Payment types
0	Printers	Sumup Log in to system
	Customer displays	
8	Payment types	
\$	General	

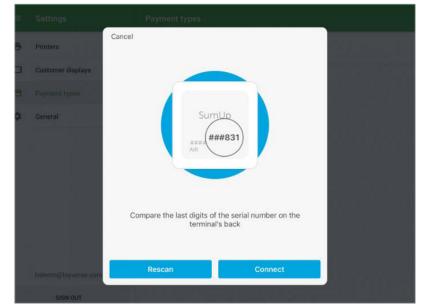
In the 'Payment methods' screen, select your card reader for set up.





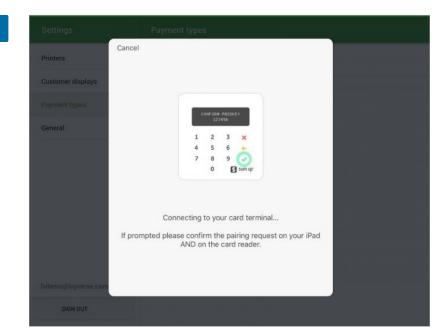
The application will start searching for SumUp card readers.

5



The application will show the last three digits of the found device. Tap 'Connect' button.

6



The application will ask you to confirm the pairing request on your card reader by pressing 'OK' button. After you complete request, you will see information that card reader is connected. Tap 'Done' button.

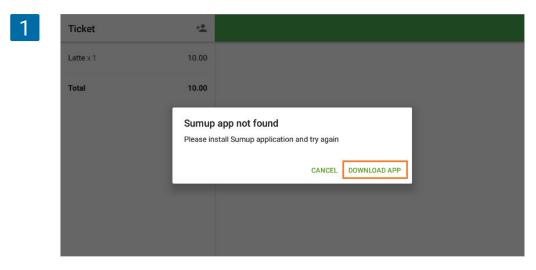
7	Settings	Payment types	
<u> </u>	Printers		
	Customer displays		
	Payment types		
	General		
		Connected!	
	lvdemo@loyverse.com	Done	
			Т

Now you are ready to accept card payments.

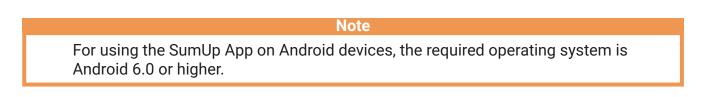
### 10.2.1.3 Connecting with Android devices

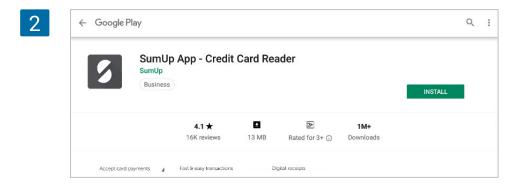
To connect SumUp card reader to Android devices make a test sales and select Sumup payment type.

You will see an invitation to download the Sumup app. Tap 'Download app' button.



You will be redirected to Google Play to SumUp app. Install the app to your device and launch it.





You will see the welcoming screen of SumUp app. Tap the 'Get Started' button.

Sum up°	the second se
Accept card payments with the SumUp App	£68.00
with the Sumop App	
	1234
	J Bray
	S VISA 📝 🦗 🛲
	u)) éPay

Enter Email and Password from your SumUp account.

Email address	
Password	ŵ
	Forgot password
LO	GIN
Don't have an a	account? Sign up

You will see an invitation to make payment through SumUp app.

5	≡ loyverse		绺
			£0.00
	Description (optional)		
	7	8	9
	4	5	6
	1	2	3
	0	00	<b>≪</b> ⊠

Now you can close this app and go to accept payments through Loyverse POS.

Note

SumUp works only with mobile devices which turned on geolocation.

### 10.2.2 Processing Payments

### 10.2.2.1 Payment

Add items to the ticket and press 'Charge.'

#### Select the SumUp payment type.

Ticket	÷.		
Mojito x 1	7.94	7.94	
Total	7.94	Total amount due	
		Cash received 8.00	CHARGE
		10.00 20.00	50.00 100.00
		CARD	
		E SUMUP	

Loyverse POS will wait for a response from the card reader, and you will see an invitation to tap, insert or swipe card on the card reader.

Ticket	+*	÷	
Mojito x 1	-	Checkout	
Total			
		γ	CHARGE
			100.00
		1 2 3 X 4 5 6 <del>4</del> 7 8 9 <del>-</del>	
		0	
	o	Please tap, insert or swipe card	,

Tap, insert or swipe customer card on the card reader. If the card needs the pin entry, give card reader to a customer to do that. If a card needs a signature, let customer sign on the iPad's screen.

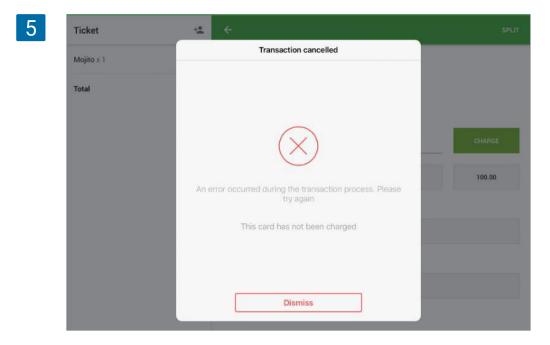
Ticket	** +	
Mojito x 1	Cancel loyverse	
Total		
	10	
	TEST I agree to pay the amount above to the mentioned merchant.	<u></u>
	Pay	

Tap 'Pay' button.

+2			
7.94		7.94	
7.94		Total paid	
	Enter email		SEND RECEIF
		PRINT RECEIPT	

If the transaction is successful, Loyverse POS will display final screen with the paid amount.

In case of an error in the transaction, Loyverse POS will show an error message.



Tap 'Dismiss' button, and you will return to selecting payment type screen. You can ask the customer to choose a different type of payment (for example 'Cash') or try another card.

### 10.2.2.2 Refund

You can only refund the whole amount of card transaction. The card reader is not used in the refund process.

At Loyverse POS go to 'Receipts' menu, and tap needed receipt.

Tap 'Refund' button.

۹	Enter receipt nur	nber	7.04	
Thurso	iay, 31 May 2018		7.94	•
8	<b>7.94</b> 16:24	#8-1250		
	16:24		Cashier. Alex	
	<b>9.02</b> 16:10	#8-1249	<b>Mojito</b> 1 x 7.94	7.94
ð	<b>26.86</b> 16:08	#8-1248	Total	7.94
			AMEX 2000 (Swiped) Reference #	7.94 TE6VYZX9G2
Wedne	sday, 30 May 2018		Signature	Verified
ø	<b>24.29</b> 15:36	#8-1247	31/05/2018, 16:24	#8-1250
ø	<b>24.29</b> 15:35	#8-1246		
۵	<b>20.80</b> 15:31	#8-1245		
٥	<b>13.83</b> 15.31	#8-1244		

Select all items of the card payment from left ticket to move them to the right-side 'Refund receipt' list and tap 'Refund' button.

Receipt #8-1250			Refund receipt	
Tap item to refund			Tap item to cancel refu	nd
Mojito x 1 Refund x 1	7.94		Mojito x 1	7.94
Total	7.94		Total	7.94
		+		

### 10.2.2.3 Reports

You can view the total number of transactions performed with the SumUp payment type. In the back office, select the 'Sales by payment type' report.

1 ≡ s	$\equiv$ Sales by payment type									
Θ	< 🛱 9 Feb 2021 - 9 M	Mar 2021 > 🛇	All day 👻 📅 All stor	es 👻 🚨 All employ	ees -					
hi.	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount				
<b>\$</b>	Cash	8	67.54	0	0.00	67.54				
)æ	Sumup	13	87.92	3	22.82	65.10				
	Total	21	155.46	3	22.82	132.64				

# 10.3 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and PayPal Zettle

Loyverse POS merchants can accept <u>credit card payments</u> via PayPal Zettle and it is available to customers in USA, Brazil, Denmark, Finland, Great Britain, Italy, Mexico, Norway, Spain, Sweden, and the Netherlands.

Before connecting a card reader, you need to create an account in PayPal Zettle and receive the device. Integration with Loyverse POS works on the card reader Zettle Reader 2.

#### Note

PayPal Zettle works only with mobile devices with turned-on geolocation.

### 10.3.1 Connecting the Card Reader

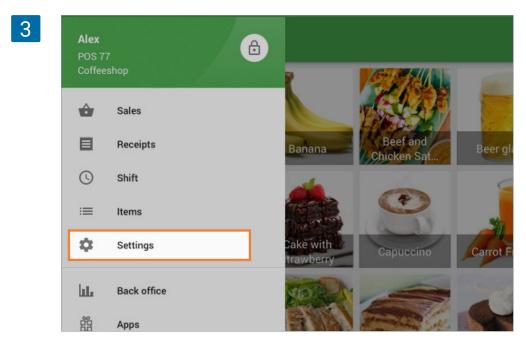
Log in to the Back Office, click the 'Settings' menu and then 'Payment types.' Click the 'Add payment type' button to add a new type of payment.

1	≡	Settings			
	Θ	0	Settings System settings	•	ADD PAYMENT TYPE
	ш. ф		Features	7	Name
	)k		Billing & subscriptions		Cash
	8	7	Payment types		Card
	*	/	Taxes		SumUp
	*	6	Stores		
	0		Store & POS settings Stores		
			POS devices		

In the 'Add Payment Type' window, select the 'Zettle' payment type from the drop-down list. Save your changes when done.

2	≡	Create payment type	
	0		
	հե	Θ	
	ŵ		
	1	Payment type Zettle	•
	<b>1</b>	Name Zettle	
	*	Collect tip Available only with Loyverse POS for iOS v. 2.19 or newer	
	\$	CANCEL	SAVE

Then launch the Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Payment Types.



Tap the 'Zettle' button for account settings.

4	≡	Settings	Payment types
	ē	Printers	Zettle Account settings
		Customer displays	
		Payment types	
	¢	General	

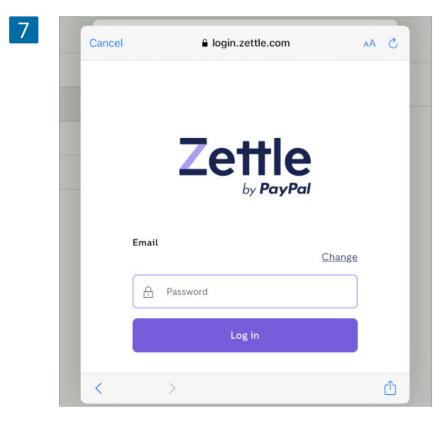
In the 'Choose account' window, confirm the access right to sign in to the Zettle account from Loyverse POS by tapping on the 'Continue' button.

5	Close	Choose account	
		"LPOSDev" Wants to Use "izettle.com" to Sign In This allows the app and website to share information about you.	
		Cancel Continue	
		Add account	

Enter the Email of your Zettle account and tap the 'Next' button.

5	Cancel	login.zettle.com	5 AA
			- 1
		Zettle	
		by <b>PayPal</b>	
		Enter your account email	
		🗹 Email	
		Next	
	<	>	Ċ)

Enter the password of your Zettle account and tap the 'Login' button.



8 Close Sign Out Settings Izettle shop Hardware Card readers > Others Support pages > (i) General terms and conditions > Acknowledgements > Zettle SDK v3.2.0

You will log in to your Zettle account. Tap the 'Card readers' button.

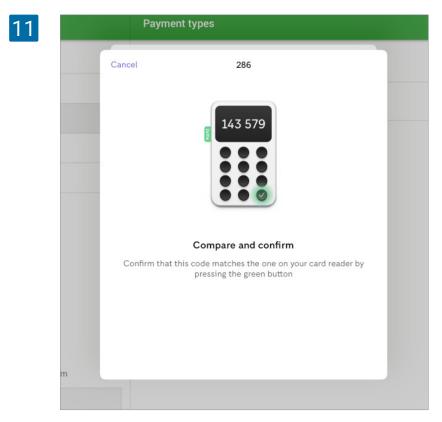
Select your type of card reader.

9	<del>(</del>	Connect card reader	
	Select	your card reader	
		Zettle Reader 2 9 1 reader detected	>
		Zettle Reader Bluetooth	>

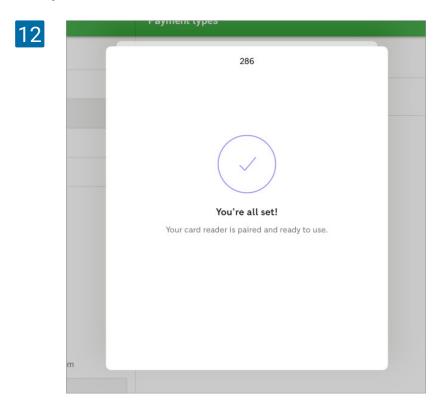
Follow the instruction on the screen: start your card reader. The system will detect your card reader. Tap on it to select.

10		
	Cancel Zettle Reader 2	
	Start and select your reader If you don't see its number, tap on the power button	
	Hello I	
	Detected card readers	С
	286	>

Confirm the connection to the card reader by comparing code and pressing the green button on the card reader.



Now your card reader is connected.



You are ready to accept card payments.

### 10.3.2 Processing Payments

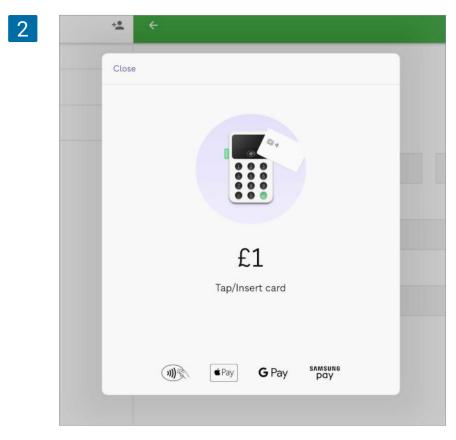
### 10.3.2.1 Payment

Add items to the ticket and press 'Charge'.

Tap the 'Zettle' button selecting payment type.

Coffee x 1 Total	1.00 1.00		<b>1.(</b> Total amo		
		Cash received 1.00			СНА
		2.00	5.00	10.00	20.
				CARD	
			⊟ z	ETTLE	

Loyverse POS will wait for a response from the card reader, and you will see an invitation to tap/insert card on the card reader.



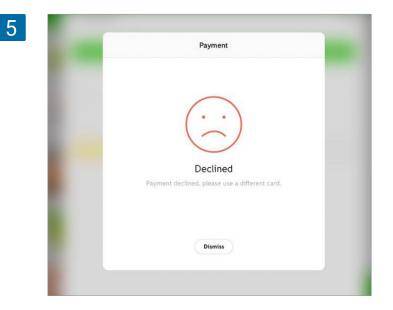
Insert your cards with a chip into the bottom slot of the card reader and give it to the customer to enter the PIN.

+•	÷				
		•	•••		
		Mai	£1		
			ting for File		_
			Cancel		
			Wai	e e e e £1 Waiting for PIN	e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e

If the transaction is successful, Loyverse POS will display the 'Transaction is successful' screen.

Ticket	+2			
Coffee x 1	1.00	1.00		
Total	1.00	Total paid		
	🗹 Enter email		SEND RECEIF	
		✓ NEW SALE		

In case of an error in the transaction, Loyverse POS will show an error message.



Tap the 'Dismiss' button, and you will return to the 'select payment type' screen. You can ask the customer to choose a different type of payment (for example 'Cash') or try another card.

### 10.3.2.2 Refund

You can refund the ticket fully or partially. The card reader is not used in the refund process.

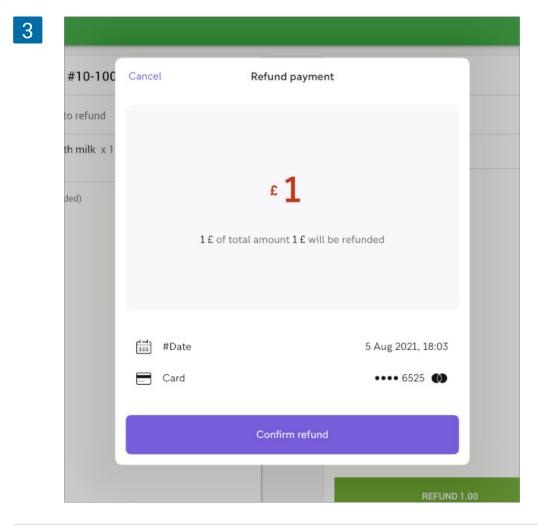
In the Loyverse POS, go to the 'Receipts' menu, and tap on the desired receipt. Then tap 'Refund'.

	earch		1.00	
Saturday	20 October 2011	3.	Total	
	.00 :53 pm	#1-1004	Cashier: Owner POS: POS 1	
	.00 :51 pm	#1-1003	Coffee 1 x 1.00	1.00
	. <b>64</b> :38 pm	#1-1002	Total	1.00
	. <b>09</b> :38 pm	#1-1001	MASTERCARD 7101 (Chip) Authorization code Beference #	1.00 947014 DOXAZW5G6P
	<b>5.49</b> :32 pm	#1-1000	AID TVR TSI	A0000000041010 0000008000 E800
		Signature	Not required	
			20/10/2018, 4:53 pm	#1-1004

Select all items on the receipt that were paid via card (on the left side) to move them to the 'Refund receipt' list (on the right side), and tap the 'Refund' button.

Receipt #1-1004			Refund receipt	
Tap item to refund			Tap item to cancel refund	e
Coffee x 1 Refund x 1	1.00		Coffee x 1	1.00
Total	1.00		Total	1.00
		+		

At the 'Refund payment' screen, check the refund details and type the 'Confirm refund' button.



#10-100 Cancel		S AA
o refund	Password	
h milk × 1	Confirm	
led)		
	Forgot password?	

Enter the password from the Zettle account in the 'Password' field and tap 'Confirm'.

# 10.3.2.3 Reports

You can view the total number of transactions performed with Zettle. In the Back Office, select the 'Sales by payment type' report.

θ	< 📋 Jul 7, 2021 - Aug 5,	2021 > 🕓 All day + 🚊	All employees 👻			
ш	EXPORT					
ŵ	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amou
)a	Card	5	4.00	4	2.00	2.0
<b>1</b>	Cash	61	183.83	51	110.33	73.5
	Cash rounding	1	-0.17	1	-0.17	0.0
*	Zettle	118	128.00	100	95.00	33.0
\$	Sumup	27	103.17	22	84.67	18.5
0	Total	211	419.00	177	292.00	127.0

# 10.4 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Yoco

#### This feature only works on iOS devices.

Loyverse POS merchants can accept credit card payments via Yoco, and it is available to customers in South Africa.

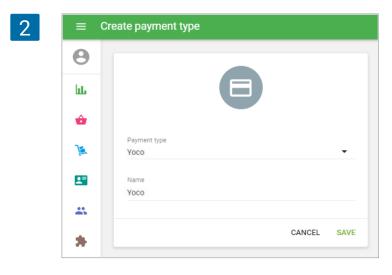
Before connecting a card reader, you need to create an account in Yoco and receive the device. Integration with Loyverse POS works on the card readers YOCO PRO, YOCO-GO, and YOCO-Neo.

# 10.4.1 Connecting the Card Reader

Log in to the Back Office, click the 'Settings' menu and then 'Payment types.' Click the 'Add payment type' button to add a new type of payment.

≡ Se	Settings	
<b>9</b>	Settings + ADD PAYMENT TYPE	
ŵ	Features Name	
TA.	Billing & subscriptions Cash	
8	Payment types Card	
	Coyalty	
*	Taxes	
	Receipt	
\$	G Stores Store & POS settings	
0	Stores	
	POS devices	

In the 'Create payment type' window, select the 'Yoco' payment type from the drop-down list. Save your changes when done.



Turn on your Yoco card reader. On your mobile device, go to the Settings and turn on the Bluetooth. You will see the Yoco card reader in the devices list. Tap on the Yoco device to connect.

3		Bluetooth
	Settings	
		Bluetooth
		Now discoverable as "Tablet 4".
	EB Apple ID, iCloud, iTunes & App Store	DEVICES $\beta_{i_1i_2}^{i_1i_2}$
	Review Apple ID phone number >	Miura 234516
	Airplane Mode	
	🛜 Wi-Fi	
	😵 Bluetooth On	

Tap the 'Pair' button on the mobile device and 'OK' on the card reader.

4	Miura 234516		
	"Miura 234516" wo	n that this code is Miura 234516″.	
SIM	Cancel	Pair	
$\square$			

The device will change its status to 'Connected'.

5			Bluetoot	h
	Settings			
			Bluetooth	
			Now discoverable as "Tablet 4".	
	EB		MY DEVICES	
		83.7	Miura 234516	Connected (i)
	Review Apple ID phone number	>		
			OTHER DEVICES	
	≻ Airplane Mode	$\bigcirc$		
	🛜 Wi-Fi			
	8 Bluetooth	On		

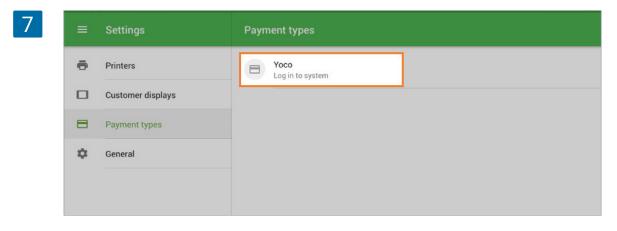
6 8 ô Sales E Beef and Receipts Banana Beer gl Chicken Sat 0 Shift := Items ¢ Settings ake with Capuccino Carrot trawberry ш Back office 鹊 Apps

Then launch the Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Payment Types.

Tap the 'Yoco' button for account settings.

Support

2



Chicken

esar Salad

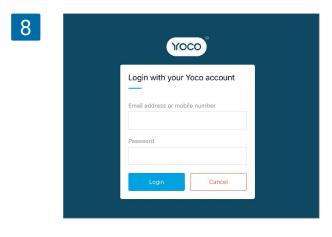
Chocolate

Eclair Desse

Choco

truffle d

Login in to your Yoco account by entering the Email and Password, then tap 'Login'.



Tap the 'Yoco' button for account settings.

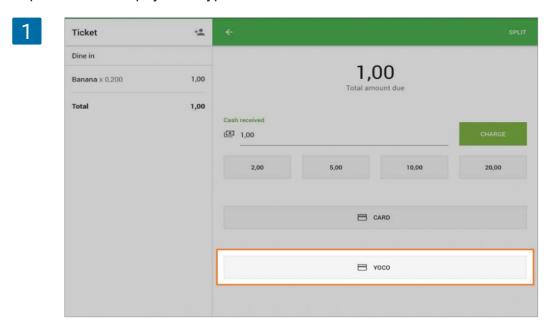
7	≡	Settings	Payment types
	ē	Printers	Yoco Already logged in
		Customer displays	
	8	Payment types	
	۵	General	

Now you are ready to accept card payments.

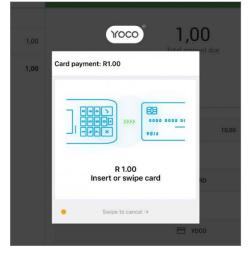
### 10.4.2 Processing Payments

#### Payment

Add items to the ticket and press 'Charge'. Tap 'Yoco' as the payment type.



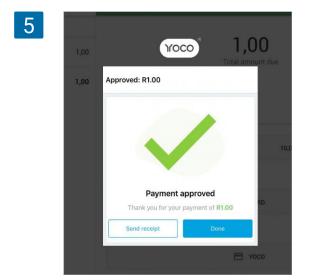




Loyverse POS will wait for a response from the card reader, and you will see an invitation to insert/swipe card on the card reader. Insert the card with a chip into the bottom slot or swipe at the top slot of the card reader and give it to the customer to enter the PIN.



If the transaction is successful, you will see the 'payment approved' window. Tap 'Done' to continue.

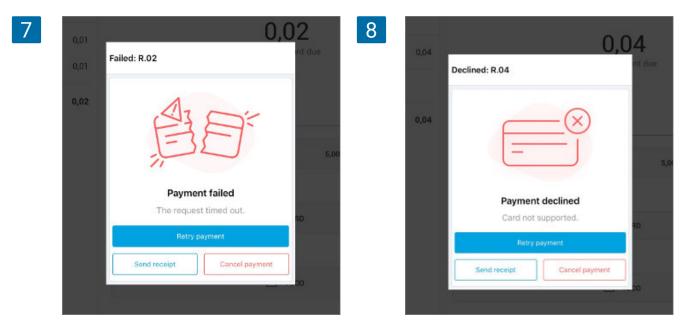


6

Loyverse POS will display the screen with 'Total paid amount'.

Ticket	+**			
Dine in				
Banana x 0,200	1,00		1,00 Total paid	
Total	1,00			
		Enter email		SEND RECEIP
			V NEW SALE	

In case of an error in the transaction, you will see an error message.



You can retry the payment or tap the 'Cancel payment' button. In this case, you will return to the 'select payment type' screen. You can ask the customer to choose a different type of payment (for example 'Cash') or try another card.

#### Refund

You can only refund the whole amount of the transaction. The card reader is not used in the refund process.

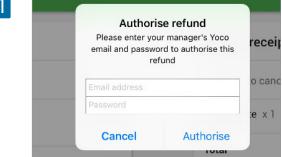
In the Loyverse POS, go to the 'Receipts' menu, and tap on the desired receipt.

Then tap 'Refund'.

		Receipts	#1-1001 REFUN	
0	λ	Search		
Th	nursd	lay, 21 February 2019	<b>1,00</b> Total	
۵	<u>.</u>	<b>10,00 #1-1004</b> 15:02	Cashier. Owner POS: POS 1	
۵	<u> </u>	<b>10,02 #1-1003</b> 15:02	Dine in	
1	<u> </u>	<b>30,00 #1-1002</b> 15:01	Banana 1,00 0,200 x 5,00	
E	3	<b>1,00 #1-1001</b> 15:01	Total         1,00           MasterCard 7711         1,00	
12	<u> </u>	0,01 #1-1000 14:39	21/02/2019, 15:01 #1-1001	

Select all items on the receipt that were paid via card (on the left side) to move them to the 'Refund receipt' list (on the right side), and tap the 'Refund' button.

Receipt #1-1001			Refund receipt	
Tap item to refund			Tap item to cancel refund	
Banana x 0,200 Refund x 0,200	1,00		Banana x 0,200	1,00
Total	1,00		Total	1,00
		+		
			REFUND 1,00	



At the 'Authorise refund' screen, type in the Yoco Email and password and tap 'Authorise'.

# 10.4.3 Reports

You can view the total number of transactions performed with Yoco. In the Back Office, select the 'Sales by payment type' report.

=	≡ Sales by payment type									
Θ	<         If Apr 2021 - 23 Apr 2021         >         ○         All day →         If All stores →         L All employees →									
ht.	EXPORT									
ŵ	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount				
)æ	Card	112	18,982.40	0	0.00	18,982.40				
-	Cash	193	23,715.12	1	8.24	23,706.88				
45	Cash rounding	30	0.76	0	0.00	690.76				
*	Yoco	19	459.52	1	44.49	415.03				
\$	Total	324	43,157.04	2	52.73	43,104.31				
0										

# 10.5 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Tyro

#### This feature only works on iOS devices.

Loyverse POS merchants can <u>accept credit card</u> payments via a provider of electronic funds transfer at point of sale (EFTPOS) - Tyro. Tyro is only available to merchants and customers in Australia.

Before connecting a terminal, you have to create an account in Tyro and receive the device. Integration with Loyverse POS works on the Yoximo terminal GSM 3G.

# 10.5.1 Connecting Tyro Terminal

Log in to the Back Office, click on the 'Settings' menu and then 'Payment types'. Click on the '+ Add payment type' button to add a new type of payment.

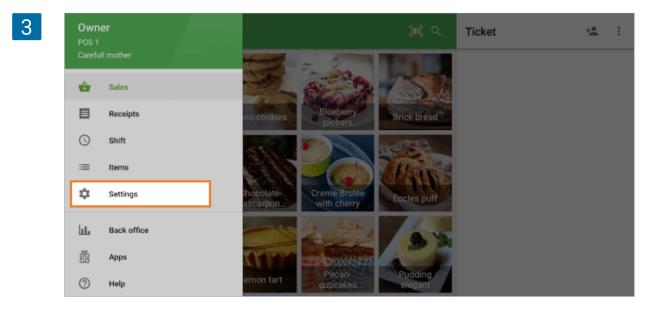
≡	Settings
0	System settings + ADD PAYMENT TYPE
ш. Ф	Features
)a	Billing & subscriptions Cash Payment types
8	Card Card SumUp
*	Taxes Receipt
\$	C Stores
0	Stores
	POS devices

In the Add Payment Type window, select 'Tyro' in the payment type drop-down list. Save your changes when done.

= A	dd payment type		
8			
	Payment type		
	Туго		•
հե	Name		
	Tyro		
ŵ			
BE		CANCEL	SAVE

Turn on your Tyro terminal. It should also be connected to the Internet.

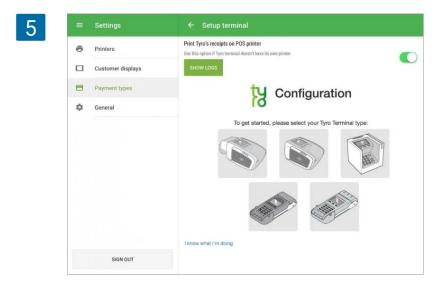
Then launch Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Payment Types.



Tap the 'Tyro' button for account settings.

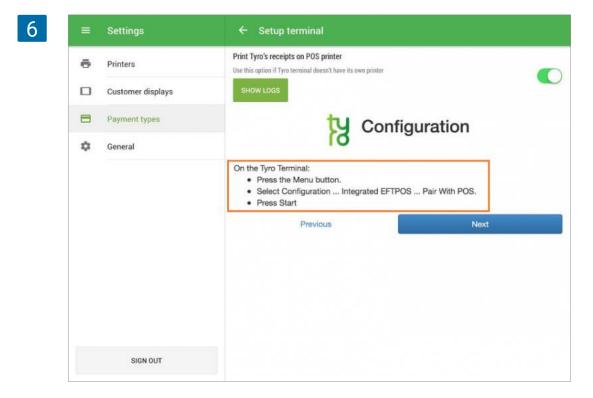
4	=	Settings	Payment types
	ē	Printers	Tyro Setup terminal
		Customer displays	
	8	Payment types	
	٥	General	

In the 'Tyro Configuration' window, select your Tyro Terminal type.



If your Tyro Terminal does not have a printer, you can choose the option 'Print Tyro's receipt on POS printer' to print card transaction receipts.

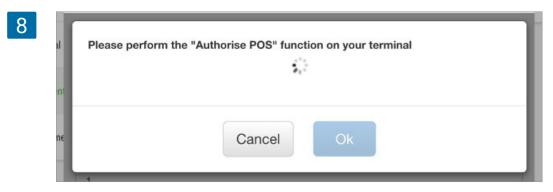
Follow the instruction on your Tyro Terminal and tap 'Next'.



Enter 'Merchant ID' and 'Terminal ID' displayed on your Tyro Terminal screen. Then tap 'Authorise'.

≡	Settings	← Setup terminal	
ē	Printers	Print Tyro's receipts on POS printer Use this option if Tyro terminal doesn't have its own printer	C
	Customer displays	SHOW LOGS	
8	Payment types	Configuration	
\$	General	lg comparation	
		Merchant ID	
		Enter MID shown on terminal	
		Terminal ID	
		Enter TID shown on terminal	
		Test Authorise	
		Help	

Follow the instructions on the dialog screen, perform the 'Authorise POS' function on your terminal, and then press 'OK'.



You will see a message indicating the successful connection of your terminal. Tap 'OK'.

Pairing successful.			
	Cancel	Ok	

Now you are ready to accept card payments.

# 10.5.2 Processing Payments

#### Payment

Add items to the ticket and press 'Charge'.

Tap the Tyro payment type.

Dine in		105.00	
ftem x 1	105,08	<b>105,08</b> Total amount due	
Total	105,08	Cash received	CHAR
		106,00 110,00 120,00	150,0
		🖻 CARD	
		🗄 ТУВО	

Loyverse POS will transfer the data to the terminal, and you will see an invitation to swipe the card.



Ticket	+0	Payment 105,08	
Dine in Ítem × 1	105,08	Purchase Amount: \$105.08	ĸ
Total	105,08	Swipe card. Purchase: \$105.08	
			Earcel Transaction

### 3

	chant 11	
	ress line	
Add	ress line	e z
Ту	ro EFTPO	S
Diners Club	b	
Card: XXXX	XXXXX968	6(s)
Purchase	AUD	\$105.08
Iotal	AUD	\$105.08
APPROVED W	SIGNAT	URE Ø8
Terminal II	0: 1	
Transaction	Ret: 1	18335
Authorisat.	ion No:	510075
10 Dec 201	7 at 03:	59 AM

After you swipe the card, if the transaction is successful, your printer will print the merchant copy of the payment receipt.

Hand it to the customer for their signature. If you approve the signature, tap the 'Yes' button on the Loyverse POS screen.

#### 4

Ticket	+ <u>•</u>	Payment 105,08	
Dine in		Purchase Amount: \$105.08	ĸ
Ítem × 1	105,08	APPROVED W/ SIGNATURE, Signature OK?	10
Total	105,08		
		YES NO	

If the card requires a PIN, hand the card reader to the customer for them to enter their PIN.

Then the customer copy of the payment receipt will be printed.

et	÷±.		
n			
:1	105,08	105,08 Total paid	
	105,08		
	6	Enter email	SEND RECEIF
		LINE CITER	SEND RECEI

Loyverse POS will display the screen with "Total paid" amount.

In case of an error in the transaction, Loyverse POS will show an error message.

6	Ticket	+•	← Payment 105,01	
	Dine in		Purchase Amount: \$106.01	ĸ
	Ítem x 1	105,01	Amount: \$105.01 DECLINED	מ
	Total	105,01		

Tap the back arrow to return to the selecting payment type screen. You can ask the customer to choose a different type of payment (for example 'Cash') or try another card.

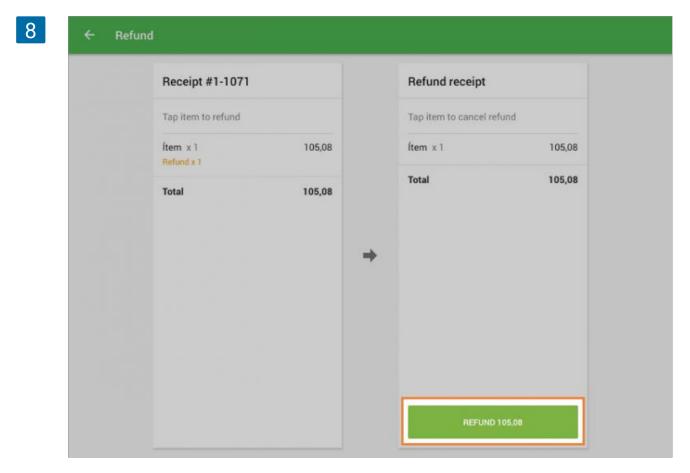
#### Refund

You can refund the ticket fully or partially.

In Loyverse POS, go to 'Receipts' menu, and tap on the receipt you would like to refund. Tap 'Refund'.

=	Receipts		#1-1071	REFUND
Q	Enter receipt numb	er		
Monday, 26 March 2018			105,08 Total	
۲	<b>105,01</b> 7:45 PM	#1-1072	Cashier. Owner	
8	105,08 5:51 PM	#1-1071	Dine in	
-	105,08	#1-1070	<b>Ítem</b> 1 x 105,08	105,08

Tap on the items you would like to refund from the left ticket to move them to the 'Refund receipt' list on the right side, and then tap the 'Refund' button.



Follow the instructions on the 'Refund' screen to complete the refund.

#### Reports

You can view the total number of transactions performed with the Tyro payment type. In the Back Office, select the 'Sales by payment type' report.

9 =	≡ Sales by payment type							
Θ	< 首 22 May 2021 - 2	8 May 2021 > 🕓 All da	y 👻 🖶 All stores 👻	🛓 All employees 👻				
late	EXPORT							
•	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amount		
)æ	Card	139	26,230.20	0	0.00	26,230.20		
<b>-</b>	Cash	187	25,630.84	3	62.24	25,568.60		
	Cash rounding	23	0.90	0	0.00	527.90		
*	Sumup	18	703.67	0	0.00	703.67		
\$	Туго	1	7.49	0	0.00	7.49		
0	Total	345	52,572.20	3	62.24	52,509.96		

# 10.6 How to Accept Credit Cards with Loyverse POS and Smartpay

#### This feature only works on iOS devices.

Loyverse POS merchants can <u>accept credit card payments via Smartpay</u>, and it is available to customers in

in Australia and New Zealand.

Before connecting a terminal, you need to create an account in Smartpay and receive the device. Integration with Loyverse POS works on the terminals S800 and S920 for New Zealand and D210e for Australia.

### 10.6.1 Connecting the terminal

Log in to the Back Office, click on the 'Settings' menu and then 'Payment types'. Click on the '+ Add payment type' button to add a new type of payment.

1	≡ Setti	ings
	0	Settings + ADD PAYMENT TYPE
	ht	7
	ŵ	Features Name
	1	Billing & subscriptions Cash
		Payment types Card
	. 1	Loyalty SumUp
		Taxes
	*/	Receipt
	\$	Stores Store & POS settings

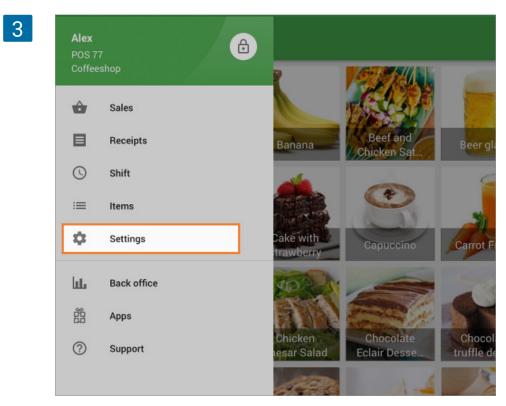
In the 'Add Payment Type' window, select the 'Smartpay' payment type from the drop-down list. Save your changes when done.

	Edit payment type	
0		
ш		
ŵ		
1	Payment type SmartPay	
	Name	
*	SmartPay	
\$	1	CANCEL SAVE
	€ ا ا	Payment type SmartPay  Name SmartPay

Turn on your Smartpay terminal and connect it to the Internet.

Get the pairing code from the terminal:

At the terminal, go to the section 'Smart Connect EFTPOS' - it should be in 'Online' mode. Press Menu and select option 3 CONFIG and enter 833767. Then press the Enter button. Select option 1 POS INTEGRATIONS and then 1 AUTHORISE POS. You will see a new pairing code.



Then launch the Loyverse POS and go to Settings > Payment Types.

Tap the 'Smartpay' button for account settings.

4	=	Settings	Payment types
	ē	Printers	SmartPay Setup terminal
		Customer displays	
	8	Payment types	
	\$	General	

Enter your pairing code from the terminal and tap 'Pair'.

Please enter the pairing code of your terminal	×	Pairing to your payment terminal
Code	Please	e enter the pairing code of your terminal
	Code	
PAIR		PAIR

Tap 'OK' to confirm pairing.

Terminal paired successfully
Ok

On the terminal, you have to return to the 'Smart Connect EFTPOS' section. It should be shown that the terminal is in 'Online' mode. Now you are ready to accept card payments.

## 10.6.2 Processing Payments

#### Payment

Add items to the ticket and press 'Charge'.

Tap the 'Smartpay' button as the payment type.

Dine in Cheesecake x 1 Tax	12.00		13.:	20	
	12.00		13.		
Тах			Total amo		
	1.20	Cash received			
Total	13.20	13.20			CHARGE
		14.00	15.00	20.00	50.00
			E CA	RD	
		ſ			
			SMAR	ITPAY	

Loyverse POS will wait for a response from the terminal, and you will see an invitation to insert/swipe card on the terminal.

Ticket	+2	Payment
Dine in		
Cheesecake x 1	12.00	13.20 Total amount due
Тах	1.20	
Total	13.20	
		Please follow the instructions on the terminal

If the transaction is successful, Loyverse POS will display the total paid amount on the screen, where you may then print the receipt, send the receipt to your email, or go to the new sale.

Ticket	+±		
Dine in		10.15	
Cheesecake x 1	12.00	<b>13.46</b> Total paid	
Тах	1.20	(13.20 + 0.26 surcharge)	
Total	13.20		
		Enter email	SEND RECEIP
		✓ NEW SALE	

In case of an error in the transaction, Loyverse POS will display an error message and print the receipt for the canceled transaction.

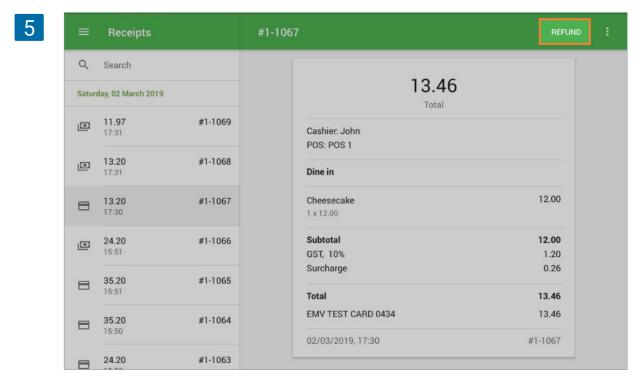
+2	← Payment
12.00	13.20 Total amount due
1.20	
13.20	
	Payment declined
	12.00

You can return to the 'select payment type' screen. You can ask the customer to choose a different type of payment (for example 'Cash') or try another card.

#### Refund

You can only refund the whole amount of the transaction. The terminal is not used in the refund process.

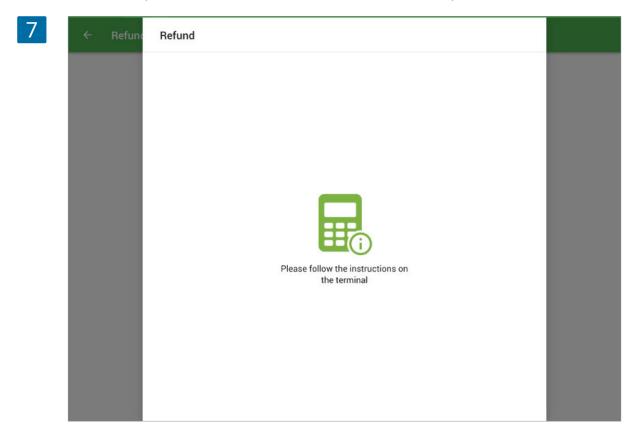
In the Loyverse POS, go to the 'Receipts' menu, and tap on the desired receipt. Then tap 'Refund'.



Select all items on the receipt that were paid via card (on the left side) to move them to the 'Refund receipt' list (on the right side), and tap the 'Refund' button.

Receipt #1-1	067		Refund receipt	
Tap item to refu	nd		Tap item to cancel refund	1
Cheesecake x 1 Refund x 1	12.00		Cheesecake × 1	12.00
Tax	1.20		Тах	1.20
Surcharge	0.26		Surcharge	0.26
0.26			Total	13.46
Total	13.46	+		

Follow the instructions on the terminal screen: swipe the manager card, enter the pin code, then insert the chip of the customer's card into the slot or swipe at the card reader.



#### Reports

You can view the total number of transactions performed with Smartpay. In the Back Office, select the 'Sales by payment type' report.

Θ						
~	< 🗎 4 Feb 2019 - 5 Mar 2019	🕓 All day 👻 🚨	, All employees *			
ш	EXPORT					
ŵ	Payment type	Payment transactions	Payment amount	Refund transactions	Refund amount	Net amou
)a	Card	6	129.48	0	0.00	129.
	Cash	16	252.57	4	42.00	210.
-	SmartPay	73	2 475.04	16	541.65	1 933.3
\$	Total	95	2 857.09	20	583.65	2 273.4

# 10.7 How to Add Tips to Payments Made through Card Readers

For some of the card processing systems integrated with Loyverse POS, there is the possibility to set up tips that the customers can add to the payments.

Currently, this functionality is available for SumUp, PayPal Zettle, Yoco, and KICC card readers. (For Yoco and KICC card readers currently only for iOS devices).

# 10.7.1 Setting up tips in the Back Office

You can configure the tips that will be displayed on the POS when you choose this payment method.

To do this, go to the Settings menu in the Back Office, click 'Payment Types' and then click on the desired card payment type.

1	≡	Settings	
	Θ	Settings + ADD PAYMEN	
	հե	System settings + ADD PAYMEN	
	ŵ	Features Name	
	7	Billing & subscriptions Cash	
		Payment types Card	
		Loyalty	
		Taxes	
		Receipt	
	۵	Open tickets	
	0	Kitchen printers	
		Stores Store & POS settings	

Turn on the selector 'Collect tip'. Enter the predefined percentage values of tips. You can also enable the option 'Allow custom tip amounts' that allows customers to choose the tip amount other than the predefined percentage values.

2	≡	Edit payment type
	Θ	
	ht.	Θ
	ŵ	
	)	Payment type SumUp
	<b>1</b>	Name SumUp
	*	Account 'loyverseuk@sumup.com' connected. Disconnect To configure card reader go to the settings menu in the Loyverse POS app.
	۵	Collect tip Available only with Loyverse POS for iOS v. 2.18 or newer
	0	Tip value 1, % * 10.00
		Tip value 2, % * 15.00
		Tip value 3, % * 20.00
		Allow custom tip amounts
		CANCEL SAVE

Save your changes when done.

# 10.7.2 Selecting Tips during Payments

At the POS after selecting the card payment type, you will see the tips selection screen. The cashier can select the tip amount desired by the customer by selecting one of the predefined tips amount in percentage (its actual value will be shown below the percentage).

Ticket	+2			
Fried chicken x 2	89.00			
Americano x 1	15.00		218.22	
Caesar Salad x 2	\$ 60.00		Total amount due	
Hamburger x 2	36.00		Add a tip	
Kiwi coctail x 1	12.00	<b>10%</b> 21.82	<b>20%</b> 43.64	<b>30%</b> 65.46
Discounts	9.00			
Tax	15.22		CUSTOM TIP AMOUNT	
Total	218.22			
			NO TIP	

If the 'Custom tip amount' is selected, the cashier can enter the tip value. Tap the 'Charge' button to continue payments through the card reader.

Ticket	+**	÷			
Fried chicken x 2	89.00			000.00	
Americano x 1	15.00			303.68	
Caesar Salad x 2	\$ 60.00			(283.68 + 20.00 tip)	
Hamburger x 2	36.00	Tip amount			
Kiwi coctail x 1	12.00	20.00			CHARG
Discounts	9.00				
Tax	15.22				
		1	2	3	
		4	5	6	
		7	8	9	
		$\propto$	0	Next	

After finishing the transaction, on the final screen, you will see the total amount paid with the receipt total and the tip value under it in parentheses. Tap the 'New sale' button to finish the sale.

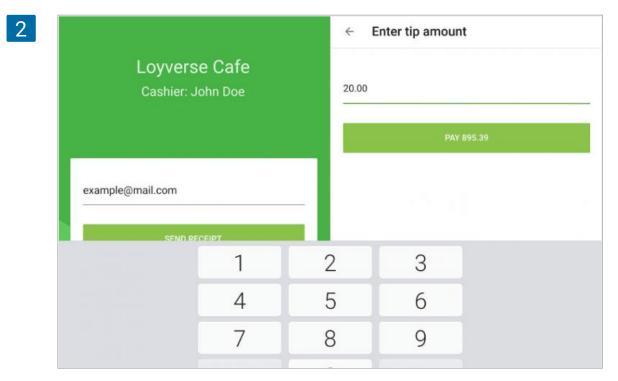
Ticket	+•	
Coca Cola x 2	30.00	000 (0
Americano x 1	15.00	303.68 Total paid
Chicken salad x 2	60.00	(283.68 + 20.00 tip)
Hamburger x 1	32.00	Points earned: 4.50
Cheeseburger x 1	35.00	
Discounts	10.00	Enter email SEND RECEIPT
Тах	16.24	PRINT RECEIPT
Total	283.68	
		V NEW SALE

# 10.7.3 Tips on the customer display

If you have customer display (CDS) connected to your POS, the customer will be able to choose the tips from the predefined percentage values or enter a custom amount on the screen. **Tips are currently shown only on CDS app on iOS devices.** It will be available for Android devices soon.

	Add a tip		
Loyverse Cafe Cashier: John Doe			
	<b>10%</b>	<b>20%</b> 43.64	<b>30%</b>
example@mail.com			00.10
SEND RECEIPT		CUSTOM TIP AMOUN	r -
		NO TIP	

If a customer selects the custom tip amount, he/she can enter the amount and then tap the 'Pay' button to continue the payment through the card reader.



After finishing the transaction, the receipt information with tips will be shown.

	Ticket	Takeout
Loyverse Cafe	Icecream sandwich x 1	15.00
Cashier: John Doe	Jelly bean × 1	15.00
	Ice cream × 1	15.00
	Pancake × 1	15.00
example@mail.com	Coffee x 1	15.00
SEND RECEIPT	Vanilla, Milk	
	Subtotal	75.00
	Taxes	4.88
	Тір	20.00
	Total	99.88
	Remaining	49.94

# 10.7.4 Tips at Reports

You can also see the total amount of tips per employee in the Sales by Employee Reports in the Back Office.

1	≡	Sales by employee								
	Θ	< 🛱 2 Oct 2019 - 3	1 Oct 2019 > ③ A	II day 👻 📅	All stores 👻 🔔	All employees 👻				
	ш	EXPORT								
	÷	Name	Gross sales	Refunds	Discounts	Net sales	Receipts	Average sale	Tip	Customers signed up
	74	Alice	45.00	0.00	0.00	45.00	1	45.00	0.00	0
	8	Louis	9,524.89	1,228.00	0.84	8,296.05	63	131.68	16.77	1
	*	Mike	83.13	0.00	0.00	83.13	1	83.13	0.00	0
	*	< > P	age: 1 of 1 Rows	perpage: 10	*					
	\$									

Also, tips will be shown in the exported files of Receipts and Payment types and also in the Shift report on POS.





loyverse.com